

# LATIN LESSONS FOR BEGINNERS



W. J. GAGE & COMPANY, LIMITED  
TORONTO



DISCARDED  
FROM  
LEGISLATIVE LIBRARY

Victoria, B.C.



*Education Department of B. C.*

Alfred Robinson

---

75















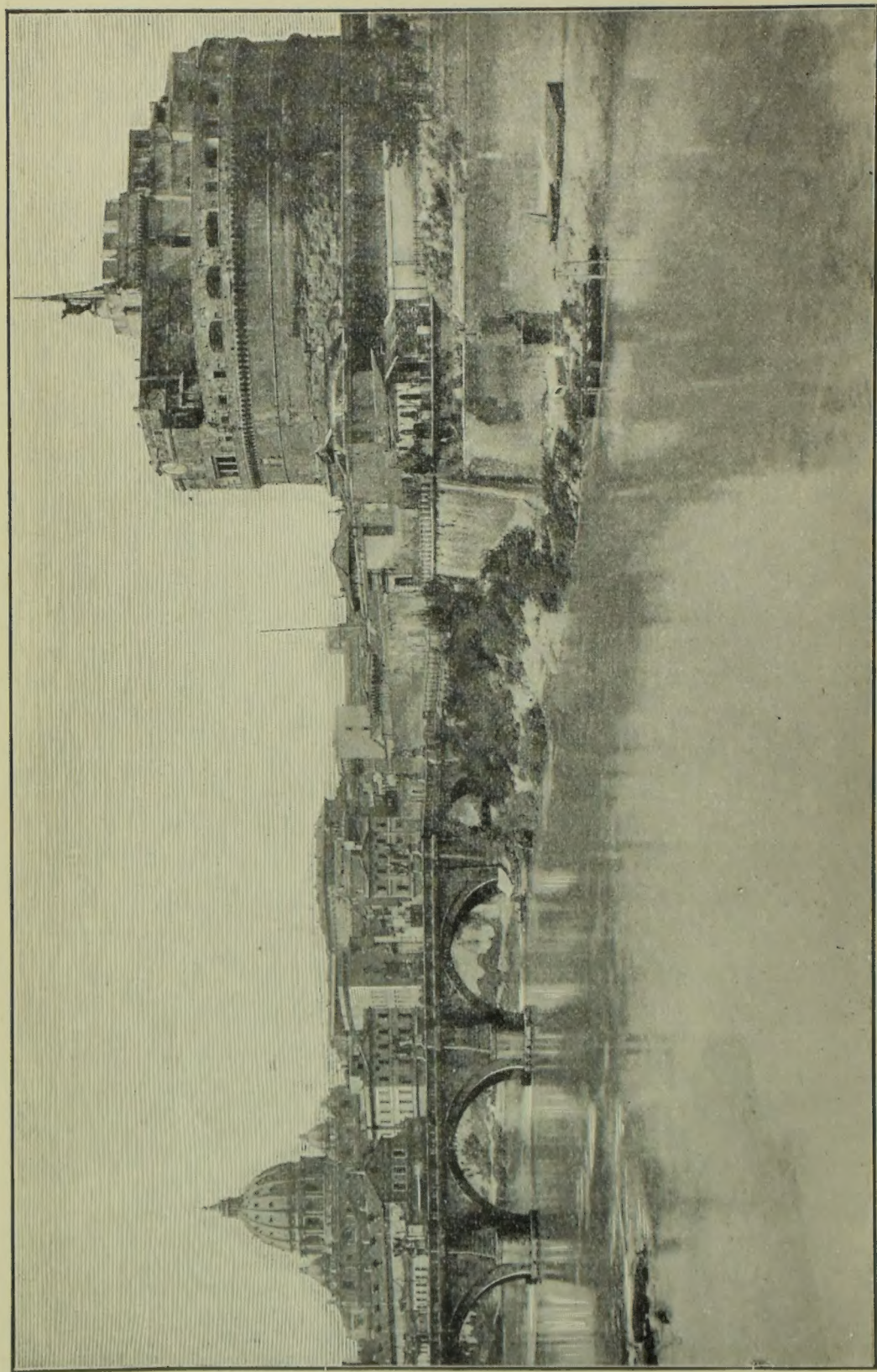












TOMB OF HADRIAN AND AELIAN BRIDGE. (*Now the Castle and Bridge of St. Angelo.*)



# LATIN LESSONS

## FOR BEGINNERS

BY

J. C. ROBERTSON, M.A.

VICTORIA COLLEGE, UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

AND

ADAM CARRUTHERS, M.A.

UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

AUTHORIZED FOR USE IN

NEW BRUNSWICK, MANITOBA, SASKATCHEWAN,  
ALBERTA, AND BRITISH COLUMBIA



TORONTO

W. J. GAGE & COMPANY LIMITED

1925

PROVINCIAL LIBRARY  
VICTORIA, B. C.

22  
475  
9651

---

---

Entered according to the Act of Parliament of Canada, in the Office of the  
Minister of Agriculture, by W. J. GAGE & Co. Limited, Toronto, in the  
year one thousand nine hundred and six.

---

---



## PREFACE

This book is the result of a revision of the PRIMARY LATIN BOOK which was published in 1892. The experience of the intervening years and, in part, the changed conditions in our schools, have led to a revision so thorough as to produce an altogether new book. Yet in some important respects the point of view of the earlier work has been retained. It is recognized throughout that the primary object of an introductory Latin book is to prepare pupils for the reading of Latin; that the acquiring of a vocabulary, the mastery of accidence and syntax, are to be regarded as means to that end; and, finally, that the only way to learn how to read Latin is by much practice in reading Latin. The temptation to dwell upon what is not essential for beginners, merely for the sake of completeness, has constantly to be resisted, and in an introductory Latin book merely to know what to omit is itself a great merit, if a negative one.

The improvements made in the order of the lessons do not involve any material change in principle. Most introductory Latin books published in the last two decades follow a plan which some theorists have criticized as disjointed and lacking in continuity. It is claimed that the unsystematic and piecemeal presentation of forms and syntax, which to-day directs attention to the verb, to-morrow to the noun, and the day after to some rule of syntax, is a violation of the laws of psychology and of pedagogy. Surely, however, there is no psychological necessity for our learning a language in the same order in which reflective analysis and systematized grammar present it; no law of the mind bids us learn all our nouns before we venture upon the verb, or prescribes that, after becoming acquainted with one pronoun, we shall forthwith master all the rest. On the other hand, experience, to which the final appeal must be made, has shown that there is a distinct gain when topics are varied according to a well-considered plan. If, for example, some lessons on the noun or adjective intervene between the lesson on the perfect indicative and that on the pluperfect, a much greater amount of drill in the perfect can be obtained than by the method in which practice in the perfect

in one lesson must of necessity give place to practice in the perfect immediately afterwards. The success of the method which is now usually followed depends, however, on having, first, a well-planned order of lessons which neither unduly separates matters that should be closely connected, nor presents too great and too varied an array of topics in one and the same lesson; and, secondly, a series of exercises that never allows what has been learned at any stage to be forgotten through having been too long neglected. This, with a proper amount of review work, will secure all the systematization that is necessary for the beginner.

To the vocabulary most careful attention has been given. Whether consciously or not, the authors of introductory books are, by their choice of vocabulary, really preparing the beginner to read some particular style of Latin. A selection being unavoidable, it has seemed best to prepare for the reading of Caesar, not so much by selecting sentences from the Gallic War, with little or no change, as by familiarizing the pupil from the first with words and phrases of frequent occurrence throughout Caesar's narrative. At the same time regard has been had to the usefulness of the vocabulary for other purposes. But on the whole the words that are frequent in Caesar are words that should form part of the vocabulary of every student of Latin. The absence of such words as *ancilla*, *corōna* and *stella* may be deplored, but *fuga*, *rīpa* and *cōpia* are quite as valuable from any point of view, and for Caesar are incomparably more useful.

The rule has been followed of giving not more than ten new words with each exercise. This has necessitated a careful selection of the words and phrases that would prove most valuable both for immediate and for later use. Especial care also has been taken that words once introduced shall not after a time be disused; it is within the mark to say that the exercises of any group of ten consecutive lessons employ more than ninety per cent. of all the words hitherto learned. Wherever possible, related words have been so grouped in one vocabulary as not only to help the memory but also to give some knowledge of the principles of composition and derivation.

At intervals of about five lessons are review word lists, given alternately in Latin and in English, and variously classified; each list thus contains the words that have been introduced in the preceding ten lessons. The topical classification of the English lists will be found especially useful, and will doubtless suggest to the teacher other groupings and combinations which can be readily made.



The exercises are so graded, and the sentences call for so constant an interweaving of old matter with new, that it is believed continuous and rapid progress will be possible, with no sudden increase of difficulty at any stage. In the latter part of the book the exercises are given in a double series, A and B, either of which is sufficient for a complete course. There is thus provided abundant matter for review, for oral or sight work, for examination purposes, for additional practice in difficult points, as well as for a change in the routine of work from year to year. If the exercises, as well as the whole book, seem longer by reason of the larger type used, that is a fault that will be readily forgiven. Much difference of opinion exists as to the respective value of translation from Latin and translation into Latin. In any case, sufficient material is provided in this book for those who hold the view that translation from English into Latin, when not too difficult, is an invaluable means of clinching the knowledge of forms and syntax alike.

In order to relate the work in Latin more closely and more profitably to what the pupil will already have learned of grammar, or may learn at a later stage, care has been taken in the explanations given, both to use the terminology already familiar from his study of English grammar, and to keep in view the statements of Latin grammar as they are given in more advanced books.

The constant translation of detached sentences may easily become a source of weariness to the pupil, who, after much toiling, does not seem to be arriving anywhere. To obviate this, a reading lesson in the form of a continuous story has been inserted after each word list. The stories are drawn from Roman legend, the order of chronology being observed, and for the most part illustrate the resolution, sense of duty and devotion to country so characteristic of the Romans. These lessons are, in the strictest sense, reviews; they are not adaptations of any existing narrative, but have been built up out of the material afforded by the previous vocabularies and exercises. They are sufficiently long to give the detail needed to make a story interesting, and yet are in such close relation to the work just completed that they can be read without a discouraging amount of labor, and even, by at least the better pupils, at sight. Apart from the question of interest and practice, it is no small thing for a pupil to have learned that he is able to apply successfully the knowledge he already has to the work of translating continuous narrative.

For classes in which it may be desirable to take up some easier Latin preparatory to the study of Caesar, there have been added a summary of Caesar's First Campaign in Gaul, and an adaptation of the Story of Ulysses from Ritchie's admirable *Fabulae Faciles*.

The illustrations in the book are intended in part to furnish through the eye more accurate ideas of the meaning of certain Latin words and expressions, and in part to interest the pupil in the great monuments of Rome, and thus in the achievements of that masterful people whose language he is learning and whose literature he is about to read. If the exercises are largely connected with military operations, the illustrations and the introductory sections will show that the Romans were architects, engineers, law-givers and administrators, as well as warriors.

It remains for the authors to express their indebtedness for valuable suggestions and criticisms both to their colleagues in the University and to many of the teachers of Latin in the secondary schools of Ontario, especially among the latter to Mr. H. I. Strang, Mr. H. J. Crawford, Mr. F. C. Colbeck and Mr. D. A. Glassey.

TORONTO, *March, 1906.*



# CONTENTS.

---

## INTRODUCTORY LESSONS.

LESSON		PAGE
	Introduction . . . . .	1
I.	First and Second Conjugations: Present Indicative Active . . . . .	13
II.	First and Second Declensions: Nominative Singular and Plural . . . . .	16
III.	First and Second Declensions: Accusative Singular and Plural . . . . .	18
IV.	First and Second Declensions: Genitive Singular and Plural . . . . .	20
V.	First and Second Declensions: Dative Singular and Plural. Accusative with <b>ad</b> . . . . .	22
VI.	First and Second Conjugations: Imperfect Indicative Active . . . . .	24
VII.	First and Second Declensions: Ablative Singular and Plural . . . . .	26
VIII.	First and Second Declensions Reviewed: Vocative Case. Predicate Nouns and Appositives . . . . .	28
	Word List I. Reading. Lesson I. ( <i>Romulus and Remus and the Founding of Rome</i> ) . . . . .	32
IX.	Second Declension: Nouns in <b>-um</b> . Gender . . . . .	34
X.	Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions . . . . .	37
XI.	Second Declension: Nouns in <b>-er</b> and <b>-ir</b> . Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions in <b>-er</b> . . . . .	40
XII.	Third and Fourth Conjugations: Present Indicative Active . . . . .	43
	Word List A. Reading Lesson II. ( <i>The Romans and their Neighbours</i> ) . . . . .	46
XIII.	Third Declension: Consonant Stems . . . . .	47
XIV.	Third and Fourth Conjugations: Imperfect Indicative Active . . . . .	52
XV.	Third Declension: Consonant Stems (continued) . . . . .	54
XVI.	Prepositions . . . . .	57

LESSON	PAGE
XVII. Perfect Indicative Active . . . . .	59
XVIII. Perfect Indicative Active (continued) . . . . .	61
Word List II. Reading Lesson III. ( <i>The Seizure of the Sabine Maidens</i> ) . . . . .	64
XIX. Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	67
XX. <b>Sum</b> : Present Indicative . . . . .	70
XXI. Present Infinitive Active. Complementary Infinitive . . . . .	73
XXII. Pluperfect Indicative Active . . . . .	76
XXIII. Fourth Declension . . . . .	79
Word List B. Reading Lesson IV. ( <i>The Battle of the Horatii and the Curiatii</i> ) . . . . .	81
XXIV. Principal Parts. Perfect Indicative Passive . . . . .	84
XXV. Ablative of Agent. Ablative of Means . . . . .	88
XXVI. Imperfect Indicative of <b>Sum</b> . Pluperfect Indicative Passive . . . . .	91
XXVII. Fifth Declension. Ordinal Numerals . . . . .	95
XXVIII. Accusative and Ablative of Time . . . . .	97
Word List III. Reading Lesson V. ( <i>The Battle of the Horatii and the Curiatii—concluded</i> ) . . . . .	99
XXIX. Present Indicative Passive . . . . .	101
XXX. Regular Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	104
XXXI. Dative with Adjectives. Partitive Genitive . . . . .	107
XXXII. First and Second Conjugations : Future Indicative Active . . . . .	110
Word List C. Reading Lesson VI. ( <i>The Seven Kings of Rome</i> ) . . . . .	113
XXXIII. Third Declension : I-Stems . . . . .	115
XXXIV. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	120
XXXV. Third and Fourth Conjugations : Future Indicative Active . . . . .	123
XXXVI. Irregular Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions . . . . .	126
XXXVII. Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive . . . . .	130
XXXVIII. Cardinal Numerals . . . . .	132
Word List IV. Reading Lesson VII. ( <i>How Horatius Kept the Bridge</i> ) . . . . .	135
XXXIX. Future Perfect Indicative, Active and Passive . . . . .	138
XL. <b>Mille</b> . Accusative of Extent of Space . . . . .	142

LESSON	PAGE
XXI. Present Infinitive Passive. Adverbs: Regular Formation and Comparison . . . . .	146
XLII. <b>Quam</b> with Comparatives. Ablative of Comparison . . . . .	149
XLIII. Adverbs: Irregular Formation and Comparison. <b>Quam</b> with Superlatives . . . . .	152
Word List D. Reading Lesson VIII. ( <i>The Story of Mucius Scaevola</i> ) . . . . .	155
XLIV. Relative Pronoun. <b>Quod</b> . . . . .	157
XLV. Perfect Participle Passive . . . . .	162
XLVI. Personal Pronouns . . . . .	166
XLVII. Present Participle Active. <b>Dum</b> . . . . .	170
XLVIII. Reflexive Pronoun. Possessives . . . . .	174
Word List V. Reading Lesson IX. ( <i>Camillus and the Schoolmaster of Falerii</i> ) . . . . .	179
XLIX. Third Conjugation: Verbs in <b>-iō</b> . . . . .	182
L. Demonstrative Pronouns: <b>Hic, Ille, Is</b> . . . . .	185
LI. Ablative Absolute . . . . .	189
LII. Perfect Participle Passive (continued). Demonstrative Pronouns: <b>Ipse, Idem</b> . . . . .	193
LIII. Deponent Verbs . . . . .	198
Word List E. Reading Lesson X. ( <i>Rome Taken by the Gauls</i> ) . . . . .	202
LIV. Accusative and Infinitive . . . . .	205
LV. Accusative and Infinitive (continued) . . . . .	209
LVI. Accusative and Infinitive (continued) . . . . .	212
LVII. Questions. Interrogative Pronoun . . . . .	216
LVIII. Active and Passive Periphrastic Conjugations . . . . .	221
Word List VI. Reading Lesson XI. ( <i>Rome Delivered from the Gauls</i> ) . . . . .	225
LIX. Dative of Agent. Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs. Ablative with <b>ūtor</b> . . . . .	228
LX. Subjunctive of <b>Sum</b> . Indirect Questions . . . . .	233
LXI. Subjunctive Active . . . . .	236
LXII. Subjunctive Passive. Subjunctive of Result . . . . .	240
LXIII. The Compounds of <b>Sum</b> . . . . .	244
Word List F. Reading Lesson XII. ( <i>Titus Manlius Torquatus</i> ) . . . . .	248
LXIV. Genitive and Ablative of <b>Quality</b> . . . . .	252



LESSON	PAGE
LXV. The Subjunctive in Clauses of Purpose . . .	254
LXVI. <b>Ferō</b> . . . . .	258
LXVII. Subjunctive with <b>Cum</b> . . . . .	261
LXVIII. <b>Volō, Nōlō, Mālō.</b> Dative of Purpose and Interest . . . . .	265
LXIX. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse . . .	270
Word List VII. Reading Lesson XIII. ( <i>The Self-Devotion of Decius</i> ) . . . . .	273
LXX. Ablative of Specification. Ablative of Manner . .	276
LXXI. <b>Eō, Fiō</b> . . . . .	279
LXXII. Substantive Clauses of Purpose . . . . .	284
LXXIII. Review of Genitive and Dative Cases . . . .	287
LXXIV. Review of Accusative and Ablative Cases . . .	291
Word List G. Reading Lesson XIV. ( <i>The Honor of Fabricius</i> ) . . . . .	296
LXXV. Gerund . . . . .	300
LXXVI. Gerundive Construction . . . . .	304
LXXVII. Indefinite Pronouns. Review of Pronouns . .	307
LXXVIII. Imperative. Subjunctive in Independent Clauses .	312
LXXIX. Supine. Review of Verb-forms . . . . .	315
LXXX. Conditional Sentences. Review of Subjunctive .	319
Word List VIII. Reading Lesson XV. ( <i>The Story of Regulus</i> ) . . . . .	324
SUPPLEMENTARY READING LESSONS—	
<i>Caesar's First Campaign in Gaul</i> . . . . .	328
<i>The Story of Ulysses</i> . . . . .	335
TABLES OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS . . . .	346
DESCRIPTION OF ILLUSTRATIONS . . . . .	362
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	366
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	385
INDEX . . . . .	397

## MAPS.

	PAGE
Italy and Gaul . . . . .	345
Rome . . . . .	362

## FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS.

(For description see page 362.)

Tomb of Hadrian . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece.</i>
Appian Way . . . . .	Facing 17
Tomb of Caecilia Metella . . . . .	" 32
Pantheon . . . . .	" 64
Colosseum . . . . .	" 81
Claudian Aqueduct and Cloaca Maxima . . . . .	" 113
Trajan's Column . . . . .	" 128
Arch of Severus . . . . .	" 160
Baths of Caracalla . . . . .	" 177
Forum, looking east . . . . .	" 209
Forum, looking west . . . . .	" 224
Forum, restored . . . . .	" 256
Arch of Constantine . . . . .	" 273
Basilica of Constantine . . . . .	" 321
Spoils of Jerusalem . . . . .	" 336

## ILLUSTRATIONS IN THE TEXT.

Roman Coins . . . . .	4
Roman Eagle . . . . .	12
Sword . . . . .	15
Soldier . . . . .	21
Spear . . . . .	25
The Wall of Romulus . . . . .	36
Remains of Roman Camp . . . . .	39
Standard . . . . .	45
Caius Julius Caesar. ( <i>Bust in the Louvre, Paris</i> ) . . . . .	51
Soldiers on the March . . . . .	62
Arms and Weapons . . . . .	66
Writing Implements and Materials. ( <i>Wall-painting at Pompeii</i> ) . . . . .	78
Porta Appia . . . . .	83
Rampart and Trench . . . . .	89
Military Standards . . . . .	94

	PAGE
Tomb of the Horatii and Curiatii near Alba . . . . .	101
War-galleys. ( <i>Wall-painting at Pompeii</i> ) . . . . .	119
War-ship. ( <i>Praeneste Relief</i> ) . . . . .	127
Roman Coin . . . . .	137
Statue of Augustus. ( <i>Vatican Museum, Rome</i> ) . . . . .	145
Transport Ship. ( <i>Ancient Relief</i> ) . . . . .	172
Cicero Addressing the Senate. ( <i>Fresco in Palace of the Senate, Rome</i> ) . . . . .	192
Soldier's Pack . . . . .	197
Attack on a Walled City . . . . .	232
Aqueduct at Nismes . . . . .	239
The Dying Gaul. ( <i>Museum of the Capitol, Rome</i> ) . . . . .	251
Soldiers Crossing a Bridge of Boats. ( <i>Trajan's Column</i> ) . . . . .	269
Coin of Hadrian . . . . .	283
Roman Fleet in Harbor . . . . .	303
Temple at Nismes . . . . .	327
Coin of Antoninus Pius . . . . .	344



# LATIN LESSONS FOR BEGINNERS.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

### THE LATIN LANGUAGE AND THE ROMAN PEOPLE.

1. Latin is the language that was spoken by the people of ancient Rome. The word *Latin* is derived from the adjective *Latinus*, meaning *belonging to Latium*. Latium was the district occupying the plain south of the river Tiber, and its inhabitants, the Latins, possessed several towns and strongholds, among which was Rome. In time Rome came to be the strongest of all these Latin towns, so that the other Latins, at first the kinsmen and allies of the Romans, became at length their subjects. Accordingly from a very early date the word Latin ceased to be applied to the people and city of Rome, and was used only of the other inhabitants of Latium, although it was always retained in speaking of the language common to Romans and Latins.

2. For several centuries after the founding of their settlement, the Romans were but an inconspicuous people, holding amid constant struggles a very small portion of Italian territory. From about 350 B.C., however, their power extended rapidly; within a century they had conquered the whole peninsula of Italy; and by the beginning of the Christian era,

Rome was mistress of all the lands bordering on the Mediterranean, virtually, that is, of the then known world. The Roman empire thus established lasted unbroken for over 400 years, and for more than 1,000 years thereafter the influence of Rome was paramount in Europe.

3. This supremacy of the Roman people was based on certain qualities which we find them possessing from the beginning of their history. The Romans were extremely resolute, daunted by no reverse or misfortune, strenuous and untiring; stern and ruthless, though on the whole honourable in their dealings; they were conspicuous for their self-denying patriotism and their high sense of duty; they lacked refinement and imagination, but were clear-headed, business-like and efficient; and finally they were not a mere fighting race, but one gifted above all other nations with the power of governing, framing laws and organizing. Roman law, Roman organization and Roman institutions persist to this day over most of continental Europe; and when in the middle ages the power of the Roman empire passed over to the Roman church, this genius for organization and government was not lost. Quite as important, too, as these contributions to modern civilization is the fact that Rome, after conquering the ancient world, gathered up into her own civilization all that Greece, Egypt and Asia had of value for mankind in science, literature, art, philosophy and religion, and preserved it for the modern world.

4. During the long centuries of Roman supremacy in Europe, Latin came to have a peculiar preeminence which no other language has ever enjoyed. French,

Italian, Spanish and Portuguese are merely the modern representatives of Latin as it was spoken in various parts of the Roman empire (whence they are known as the *Romance* languages). Moreover all through the middle ages and down to quite modern times, Latin was the language of learning and diplomacy; an educated man in any part of Europe knew Latin as well as his own language, and both wrote and spoke it freely. Partly for this latter reason, and partly because of England's close relations with France from the time of the Norman Conquest, the English language also has been profoundly influenced by Latin.\* Countless words, originally Latin, have been introduced from French, especially during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries; and innumerable words also have been taken directly from Latin during the whole period from the time of the Roman occupation of Britain to the present day, but particularly since 1500 A.D. It has been estimated that fully forty per cent. of our English vocabulary has thus come, directly or indirectly, from Latin.

#### THE ALPHABET.

5. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that **W** is never used. **K** occurs in but a few words and always as an initial letter; even here it is replaced by **C** in many books; as **Karthāgō** or **Carthāgō**, *Carthage*.

---

\* English belongs to a different group of languages from Latin and French, and is more akin to Dutch, German, Danish and Norse. This group of languages is called Teutonic, and the Teutonic and Latin groups seem to have descended from some still earlier common language. Hence there are resemblances between English and Latin words, even where it is certain that the English word has not come even indirectly from Latin; as e.g. *mother* and *mater*, *two* and *duo*. Such related words are called *cognates*; words which have come to us from Latin are called *derivatives*.



**Y** and **Z** began to be used in the first century B.C., in a few words borrowed from the Greeks, to represent sounds foreign to Latin. The Romans themselves used but one sign **V** for both the vowel **U** and the semi-consonantal **V** (pronounced *w*), and similarly one sign **I** for both the vowel **I** and the semi-consonantal **J** (pronounced *y*). For the sake of convenience and clearness, however, many modern books (especially those for beginners in Latin) follow the custom that arose in the middle ages, of using distinct signs for the different sounds.

Only the capital letters (*majuscles*) were used by the Romans; while the use of the smaller "Roman" letters (*minuscules*) dates from the eighth century A.D.



DIVVS IVLIVS



IVDAEA CAPTA

*Divus Julius: The Divine Julius. Judaea Capta: Judea Conquered.*

### Roman Coins.

## SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

### Vowels.

6. Each of the five\* vowels, **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, has but two sounds, a long and a short. The long sounds differ from the short chiefly in requiring a distinctly longer time to utter them.

---

\* **Y**, which rarely occurs, has a sound between *u* and *i* (French *u* or German *ü*).

ā is sounded like *a* in *father* or *amen* (pronounced as in singing), when these words are uttered slowly, or like the second *a* in *aha*.

a " " " *a* in *father* or *amen* when uttered briskly, or like the first *a* in *aha*.

ē " " " *e* in *they*, *veil*, or *a* in *fate*.

e " " " *e* in *met*, *end*.

ī " " " *i* in *machine*, *police*.

i " " " *i* in *sit*, *is*.

ō " " " the second *o* in *propose*, or like *o* in *heroic* or *holy*.

o " " " the first *o* in *propose*, or like *o* in *heroine* or *obey*.\*

ū " " " *u* in *rule*, or *oo* in *cuckoo*, *boot*, *poor*.

u " " " *u* in *pull*, *cuckoo*, or *oo* in *foot*, *good*.

N.B.—Latin does not appear to have had the common English short sounds of *a*, *o*, and *u* as in *hat*, *hot*, and *hut*, or the *you* sound of *u* as in *pure*, *use*.

7. It should also be observed that in Latin a long vowel often precedes a combination of consonants before which, in English, a single vowel is regularly short; as, *infēnsus*, *adēptum*, *crēscō*.

Many foreign geographical or biographical names illustrate the values of the Roman vowels; as *Tokio*, *Rio de Janeiro*, *Pisa*, *Upsala*, *Tripoli*, *Saloniki*, *Yenisei*, *Yokohama*, *Amur*, *Mikado*, *Iago*, *Galileo*, *Rossini*, *Hegel*, *Buddha*, *Hindu*; so also many musical terms borrowed from the Italian; as *trio*, *do*, *re*, *mi*, *fa*.

---

\* The open sound of short *o* does not occur in English in accented syllables, although found in other modern languages. A close approximation is the short *o* in *continent* or *popular*, pronounced with definitely rounded lips.

## Diphthongs.

8. The diphthongs in Latin have all arisen from two vowels sounded in their proper order, but slurred so that they occupy the time of a single long vowel. Latin has six diphthongs, of which only **ae** and **au** occur frequently.

**ae** is sounded like *ai* in *aisle*.

**au** " " " *ou* in *house*.

**oe** " " " *oi* in *boil*.

**ei** " " " *ei* in *vein*.

**eu** " " " *ě-oo* in rapid succession.

**ui** " " " *oo-i* in rapid succession.

Among the Romans themselves in Imperial times, there was a tendency to replace the diphthongal sound of **ae** by the long sound of **e** (like *ai* in *pain*), and this from about 300 A.D. became the regular pronunciation.

## Consonants.

9. The consonants have each a single sound, which in most cases is that usual in English. The following points deserve special attention :

**c** is sounded as in *come*, *sceptic*, never as in *cent*, *sceptre*.

**g** " " " " *get*, *give*, never as in *gem*, *gin*.

**s** " " " " *this*, *gas*, never as in *his*, *has*.

**t** " " " " *mightiest*, never as in *righteous*.

**x** " " " " *exercise* (*x* = *ks*), never as in *exert*  
(*x* = *gz*).

**j** " " " *y* in *yet*, or as *j* in *Hallelujah*.

**v** " " " *w* in *wet*, *beware*.

**r** is distinctly sounded in all positions.



**n** before **c**, **g**, **qu**, **x**, is sounded as *ng*, or as *n* in *ankle*.

**b** " **s** or **t**, is sounded as *p*.

**u** in the combinations **qu** and **ngu**, as also in the words **suādeō**, **suāvis** and **suēscō**, has the sound of *w*.

**ch** is sounded as *k*.\*

10. A consideration of the following may help to throw some light on the sounds of certain of the consonants as pronounced in Latin :

**c**, *Kaiser* from *Caesar*; *Acilēs* and *pulcer*, the older spelling of *Achillēs* and *pulcher*; the variant spellings *recuperō* and *reciperō*.

**g**, *Nōn Anglī sed Angelī* (the exclamation of Pope Gregory); related words like *genu*, *gonu* and *knee* or *genus*, *gonos* and *kin*.

**j**, related words like *jugum* and *yoke*; *juvenis*, *jūnior* and *young*; the identity of *major* and *mayor*; *Jan* and *Ian*; *yawl* and *jolly boat*; *Yiddish* and *Jüdisch*; the pronunciation of such foreign words as *Jena*, *Jungfrau*, *Pompeii*.

**s**, *caussa* and *hiemps*, variant spellings for *causa* and *hiems*.

**v**, related words like *vīcus* and *-wick* (as in *Berwick*, *Wickham*); *ventus* and *wind*; *vāllum* and *wall*; *vīnum* and *wine*; *volō* and *will*; *vespa* and *wasp*; *vāstus* and *waste*; *vir* and *wer* (in *werwolf*); *prūdēns* shortened from *prōvidēns*, *jūnior* from *juvenior*, *auspex* from *avispex*, *nōlō* from *ne-volō*; the confusion of *Cauneās* with *cavē nē eās* (Cicero), or of the cawing of a crow with *Avē* (Phaedrus).

---

\* It is properly not a Latin combination, but being borrowed from the Greek to represent a character in the Greek alphabet, it came to be used in a few Latin words in place of an earlier **c**.

## SYLLABLES.

11. In dividing written or printed Latin words into syllables, the rule is to place at the beginning of each syllable all the consonants that could be pronounced at the beginning of a word ; \* as, **su-pe-ri-or**, **su-prē-mus**, **sē-pa-rā-te**, **mōn-strum**, **ser-vō**, **mit-tō**. In compounds, however, the several parts are kept distinct ; as **ab-est**, **dis-turbō**, **di-stant**.

12. When a consonant is doubled in a Latin word, the sound of the consonant is heard in each syllable ; as, **ap-pel-lō**, **com-mit-tō** (contrasted with the English words *appellant*, *committee*, in which the consonant, though occurring twice, is pronounced but once).†

13. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*, the one next to the last the *penult*, and the last syllable but two the *antepenult*.

## ACCENT.

14.

## Illustrative Examples.

de'-dit,	va'-dō,	an'-nus,	su'-ō,
dē'-dit,	rī'-pās,	cōn'-sul,	nau'-tae.

These representative words will show on which syllable (penult or ultimate) the accent falls in Latin words of two syllables.

15.

## Illustrative Examples.

spē-rā'-mus,	Rō-mā-nō'-rum,	cōn-sēn'-sū,
re-lī'-quī,	sa-lū'-tem,	po-ten'-tis.
ge'-ne-ra,	ex-cel'-si-or,	cōn-sēn'-se-rās,
re'-li-quī,	i-dō'-ne-us,	cī'-vi-tās.

\* Some authorities hold that in the case of two or more consonants the division comes before the last consonant, except in the case of a mute followed by a liquid, and would divide thus, **mōns-trum**, **cas-tra**.

† So in English contrast tattoo with tatter, sorless with solace, pen-knife with penny, unknown with unowned, missent with missing.

These representative words of more than two syllables are arranged in two groups. In the words in the two upper lines the vowel of the penult is either a long vowel, or a short vowel followed by two consonants; in the two lower lines the vowel of the penult is a short vowel not followed by two consonants.

On which syllable (penult or antepenult) does the accent fall in these two classes respectively?

N.B.—In the matter of accent, **x** is treated as a double consonant, **qu** as a single consonant. So also when the two consonants consist of **r** or **l**, preceded by a different consonant, the word is accented as though there were but one consonant: for example, **ar'bitror**, **mul'tiplex**, **ten'ebræ**; but **impul'sus**, **vexil'lum**, **adver'tō**, **incur'rō**, according to the general rule.

For the purposes of accentuation a diphthong is treated as a long vowel.

16. There are no silent letters in Latin; it follows that there are as many syllables in each Latin word as there are vowels and diphthongs.

Pronounce accordingly the following Latin words:

**Miles**, **fīne**, **cōnsūmēs**, **furōre**, **beātus**, **excelsior**, **dēsīgnō**,  
**honor**, **legiōnis**, **scēna**, **salvē**, **ōrātiō**, **aliēnus**, **mīlitia**.

17. Practice in the pronunciation of Latin may be obtained from the measured and careful reading of the following lines, which are a portion of the version by Professor R. Y. Tyrrell, of Dublin, of Hood's "Bridge of Sighs," in the metre of the original:

Ā! misera sortis  
Pondere fessa!  
Ā! temerē mortis  
Viam ingressa!



Tollite facile  
Onus tam bellum,  
Onus tam gracile  
Tamque tenellum.

Nē fastīdientēs  
Corpus attingite,  
Sed flēbilem flentēs  
Animō fingite ;  
Quod fēcerit male  
Dōnāte tam bellae ;  
Nīl restat nī quāle  
Decōrum puellae.

Ā ! hūmānārum  
Quam rārō homullōs  
Miseriārum  
Miseret ūllōs !  
Ēheu, quam flēbilis,  
Urbe tam plēnā,  
Jacuit dēbilis,  
Tēctī egēna.

#### THE ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

18. The pronunciation of Latin in use in ancient times came to be gradually modified in certain respects, but in all its essential features it was retained for centuries; and as Latin was a constant medium for oral communication between various parts of Europe throughout the middle ages, the pronunciation was practically uniform over Europe. By the sixteenth century, however, England had become so isolated from continental Europe, through her separate political

and religious development, that the traditional pronunciation of Latin was abandoned, and Latin words were treated as if they were English.

As a result of this, in our English speech Roman names and many familiar expressions and phrases borrowed from the Latin have long been pronounced according to the English method, e.g. *Caesar, Julius, Augustus, Horātius, sine diē, et cētera, prīmā faciē, vivā vōce, excelsior, ē plūribus ūnum, vōx populī*. In such cases even those who do not follow the English method of pronunciation in reading Latin, yet retain the English pronunciation when these names or phrases are used in English.\*

19. (a) In the English method of pronouncing Latin, the vowels are given the common long or short English sounds:

ā as in *cane*, a as in *can*.

ē " *me*, e " *met*.

ī " *pine*, i " *pin*.

ō " *no*, o " *not*.

ū " *use*, u " *us*.

But very often vowels really long are sounded as short, and vowels really short as long, either through the influence of similar English words or for ease of utterance. No absolutely fixed rules can be given for these exceptions, but some of the more regular variations are as follows:

---

\*Exactly the same thing occurs in the case of such modern foreign names as Paris, Napoleon, Pyrenees; Luther, Berlin, Munchausen; Madrid, Manila, Don Quixote. We give each of these words one pronunciation when we are reading or speaking English, and quite another when we are reading or speaking the foreign language to which it belongs.

Long vowels are sounded as short (*a*) before two consonants or **x**; (*b*) in most final syllables ending with a consonant; e.g. **dēnsus, dūxit, brevitās**.

Short vowels are sounded as long (*a*) before another vowel or diphthong or **h**; (*b*) in the first syllable of dissyllabic words before a single consonant, e.g. **aluit, nihil, senex, caput**.

(b) The diphthongs **ae** and **oe** are sounded as *e* in *me*; **au** as in *author*; **eu** as in *feud*; **ei** and **ui** as *i* in *pine*.

(c) Of the consonants, **c** and **g** are given the soft sound of *s* and *j* respectively before *e* and *i* sounds (that is before **e, i, y, ae, oe**); e.g. **Cicerō, rēgīna**; **s** when final is often sounded like *z*, as it is occasionally in other places also through the analogy of some English word, e.g. **pars, causa**; and **c, s,** and **t** are often sounded as *sh* before *i* (unaccented) followed by another vowel, e.g. **socius, ratiō**; **j** is sounded as in *jar*, and **v** as in *vine*.

N.B.—The rules for accent in the English method are the same as are given above in 14 and 15.



Roman Eagle.



## LESSON I.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS : PRESENT  
INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

## 20. Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnat, <i>he fights.</i>	Pūgnant, <i>they fight.</i>
Vocat, <i>he calls.</i>	Vocant, <i>they call.</i>
Habet, <i>he has.</i>	Habent, <i>they have.</i>
Videt, <i>he sees.</i>	Vident, <i>they see.</i>

- a. Notice (1) that in these English sentences the subject of the verb is expressed by a *separate word*.  
(2) that in the Latin equivalent the change of subject is indicated by a change in the *final letters* of the verb.\*

## 21. Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnāmus, <i>we fight.</i>	Vidēmus, <i>we see.</i>
Vocās, <i>you call.</i>	Habēs, <i>you have.</i>
(addressed to one person)	
Vocātis, <i>you call.</i>	Habētis, <i>you have.</i>
(addressed to more than one person)	

- a. What final letters in these Latin words serve to express the idea of *we* and *you* (singular and plural) ?

Such final letters, indicating changes of person and number in the subject of the verb, are called *Personal Endings*.

---

\* This change in the form of a word to show its grammatical relation is called inflection. Latin is an inflected language, while English is almost wholly an uninflected one.

- b. In two of these Latin verbs the personal endings, it should be noticed, are preceded by the vowel *ā*, and in the other two verbs by the vowel *ē*. This common part (e.g. *vocā-*, *habē-*) to which the various personal endings are attached is known as the *Present Stem*.

Before which personal endings are these vowels *ā* and *ē* shortened?

## 22. Illustrative Examples.

*Pūgnō, I fight.*

*Videō, I see.*

*Vocō, I call.*

*Habēō, I have.*

- a. What personal ending expresses *I* in these verbs?

Notice that before this ending, *ā* is dropped, while *ē* is shortened.\*

23. These two classes of verb (the *ā*- verbs and the *ē*- verbs) are ordinarily called verbs of the First and Second Conjugations respectively.† In Latin vocabularies or dictionaries *āre* is added to indicate a verb of the First Conjugation, *ēre* a verb of the Second Conjugation.‡

## 24. Paradigms.

### PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

#### *First Conjugation.*

#### *Second Conjugation.*

#### SINGULAR.

1. <i>amō (I love)</i>	<b>-ō</b>	<i>moneō (I advise)</i>	<b>-e-ō</b>
2. <i>amās</i>	<b>-ā-s</b>	<i>monēs</i>	<b>-ē-s</b>
3. <i>amat</i>	<b>-a-t</b>	<i>monet</i>	<b>-e-t</b>

\* It is a rule of Latin that a vowel immediately preceding another vowel or diphthong is short.

† There are in all four conjugations in Latin, that is, four divisions of verbs according to the form of the present stem.

‡ For the further significance of these endings *āre* and *ēre* see Lesson XXI.

PLURAL.

1. amāmus	-ā-mus	monēmus	-ē-mus
2. amātis	-ā-tis	monētis	-ē-tis
3. amant	-a-nt	monent	-e-nt

25.

VOCABULARY.

habeō, ēre, <i>have.</i>	pūgnō, āre, <i>fight.</i>
moveō, ēre, <i>move.</i>	teneō, ēre, <i>hold.</i>
necō, āre, <i>kill, slay.</i>	vāstō, āre, <i>lay waste.</i>
pāreō, ēre, <i>be obedient.</i>	videō, ēre, <i>see.</i>
parō, āre, <i>prepare, procure.</i>	vocō, āre, <i>call</i>

EXERCISES.

26.

I.

1. Vāstat, necat, tenet, movet. 2. Necant, tenent, movent, vāstant. 3. Vocāmus, vocātis, vocō. 4. Habēs, habēmus, habētis. 5. Movēs, vident, vāstātis. 6. Videt, pūgnāmus, moveō. 7. Necātis, pūgnant, videō. 8. Parō, pārēs, pārent, parāmus.

II.

1. They call, they prepare, they have, they see. 2. He sees, he fights, he holds, he slays. 3. You (sing.) hold, you (plur.) fight, we lay waste. 4. He is obedient, he prepares, I am obedient. 5. We slay, I hold, you lay waste. 6. We move, he calls, I fight.



Gladius : Sword.



## LESSON II.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: NOMINATIVE  
SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

## 27. Illustrative Examples.

<b>Pūgnāmus,</b>	<i>we fight or we are fighting.</i>
<b>Vocō,</b>	<i>I call or I am calling.</i>
<b>Movent,</b>	<i>they move or they are moving.</i>
<b>Parat,</b>	<i>he (she or it) prepares or is preparing.</i>
<b>Tenet,</b>	<i>he (she or it) holds or is holding.</i>

- a. Notice (1) the twofold translation of each form in the present tense.  
(2) the use of the personal ending **-t** to indicate also *she* or *it*.

## 28. Illustrative Examples.

<b>Rōmānus,</b>	<i>a Roman, the Roman.</i>
<b>Rōmānī,</b>	<i>Romans, the Romans.</i>
<b>Fīlius,</b>	<i>son, a son, the son.</i>
<b>Fīlii,</b>	<i>sons, the sons.</i>
<b>Nauta,</b>	<i>a sailor, the sailor.</i>
<b>Nautae,</b>	<i>sailors, the sailors.</i>
<b>Fīlia,</b>	<i>a daughter, the daughter.</i>
<b>Fīliae,</b>	<i>daughters, the daughters.</i>

- a. By what change of the endings **-us** and **-a**, is the plural of these Latin nouns formed? Form similarly the plurals of the nouns in the following vocabulary.
- b. Notice that, as Latin has no article, the words *a* or *the* may be added or omitted in translating a Latin noun, according to the requirements of the context.





THE APPIAN WAY AND RUINS OF THE CLAUDIAN AQUEDUCT.



29.

Illustrative Examples.

<b>Filius</b> parat,	<i>the son prepares.</i>
<b>Filiī</b> parant,	<i>the sons prepare.</i>
<b>Filia</b> pāret,	<i>the daughter is obedient.</i>
<b>Filiae</b> pārent,	<i>daughters are obedient.</i>
<b>Filius et filia</b> pārent,	<i>the son and the daughter are obedient.</i>

*a.* Notice that the personal ending of these Latin verbs is retained when a noun is the subject, and when in the English sentence *he, she* or *they* is no longer found.

**Rules.** — (1) The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

(2) Two singular subjects may take the verb in the plural.

30.

VOCABULARY.

<b>Belga,</b>	<i>Belgian.</i>	<b>Gallus,</b>	<i>Gaul.</i>
<b>Britannus,</b>	<i>Briton.</i>	<b>Germānus,</b>	<i>German.</i>
<b>et,</b>	<i>and.</i>	<b>nauta,</b>	<i>sailor.</i>
<b>filia,</b>	<i>daughter.</i>	<b>Rōmānus,</b>	<i>Roman.</i>
<b>filius,</b>	<i>son.</i>	<b>servus,</b>	<i>slave.</i>

EXERCISES.

31.

I.

1. Rōmānus pūgnat; Rōmānī pūgnant. 2. Nauta videt; nautae vident. 3. Britannī habent; Belga habet. 4. Gallī et Germānī necant et vāstant. 5. Filius et filiae movent. 6. Nauta et servī parant. 7. Vocās, tenēmus, movētis, vocō.

II.

1. He holds; the Briton is holding; the Britons hold. 2. She is calling; the daughter calls; the daughters are calling. 3. A sailor is slaying; slaves

prepare. 4. The Gaul and the German are fighting.  
 5. The Belgians are laying waste; the Germans see.  
 6. It has; we move; you (sing.) are obedient; you (plur.) are preparing.

### LESSON III.

#### FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

#### 32. Illustrative Examples.

<b>Rōmānus nautam videt,</b>	<i>the Roman sees the sailor.</i>
<b>Rōmānī nautās vident,</b>	<i>the Romans see the sailors.</i>
<b>Nauta Rōmānum videt,</b>	<i>the sailor sees the Roman.</i>
<b>Nautae Rōmānōs vident,</b>	<i>the sailors see the Romans.</i>
<b>Filiōs et filiās habet,</b>	<i>he has sons and daughters.</i>
<b>Belgam et Gallum necant,</b>	<i>they slay a Belgian and a Gaul.</i>

- a. What differences are found in the endings of these Latin nouns, in the singular and the plural, when they are used as the subject, and when they are used as the object of the verb?
- b. The form used as the subject of a finite verb is said to be in the *Nominative* case, that used as the object, in the *Accusative* case.\*
- c. How does the order of these Latin sentences differ from that of the English?

33. The order followed in the sentences of 32 (subject, object, verb) is the normal, but by no means the

---

\* These correspond to the English nominative and objective cases. For similar changes in the form of English words compare the pronouns *him*, *them*, *whom*.

invariable, order in Latin, and should be retained by the beginner as being the general rule. It is most important to observe that in Latin, unlike English, a change of order will not involve a change of syntactical relation. The first sentence in 32 will have the same meaning (with slight differences of emphasis only) if it be written **Nautam Rōmānus videt** or **Nautam videt Rōmānus** or **Videt Rōmānus nautam**.

34.

VOCABULARY.

cōpia (in singular), <i>plenty,</i>	nūntiō, āre, <i>announce.</i>
<i>supply, abundance;</i>	nūntius, <i>messenger.</i>
(in plural) <i>forces, troops.</i>	prōvincia, <i>province.</i>
dō, are,* <i>give.</i>	terreō, ēre, <i>frighten,</i>
equus, <i>horse.</i>	<i>terrify.</i>
fuga, <i>flight.</i>	vulnerō, āre, <i>wound.</i>
locus, <i>place.</i>	

EXERCISES.

35.

I.

1. Filium et fīliam habet. 2. Belgās et Germānōs terrētis. 3. Cōpiae locum vāstant. 4. Germānī cōpiās et equōs parant. 5. Fugam nūntiāmus; equum dās; cōpiam habēs. 6. Nūntiōs et nautās vulnerant.

II.

1. You have horses; we have plenty. 2. I see the place; they lay waste the provinces. 3. The messenger is wounding the horse. 4. The forces hold the province. 5. The flight terrifies the forces. 6. They give a slave; a slave is announcing the flight.

---

\*The verb **dō** is exceptional, in having short **a** in the stem, except in the forms **dās**, **dāns** (271) and **dā** (463).



## LESSON IV.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: GENITIVE  
SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

## 36. Illustrative Examples.

<b>Filium nautae videt,</b>	<i>he sees the sailor's son ; or, he sees the son of the sailor.</i>
<b>Filium servī videt,</b>	<i>he sees the slave's son.</i>
<b>Fugam cōpiārum nūntiat,</b>	<i>he announces the flight of the forces.</i>
<b>Fugam Rōmānōrum nūntiat,</b>	<i>he announces the flight of the Romans.</i>

- a.* What endings in these Latin nouns indicate the relation expressed by the English preposition *of* or the English possessive case?
- b.* Nouns with these endings are said to be in the *Genitive* case.

The genitive is placed more frequently after than before the noun it modifies.

- c.* If the first sentence above were written in the order **Nautae filium videt**, could it mean, *The sailors see the son*? What two meanings could **Servī filium vident** have?

## 37. VOCABULARY.

<b>animus,</b>	<i>spirit, heart.</i>	<b>porta,</b>	<i>gate.</i>
<b>cōfirmō, āre,</b>	<i>encourage,</i>	<b>portō, āre,</b>	<i>carry, bear.</i>
	<i>arouse.</i>	<b>praeda,</b>	<i>plunder, booty.</i>
<b>imperō, āre,</b>	<i>give orders.</i>	<b>socius,</b>	<i>ally.</i>
<b>lēgātus,</b>	<i>ambassador,</i>	<b>superō, āre,</b>	<i>conquer.</i>
	<i>envoy ; lieutenant.</i>	<b>victōria,</b>	<i>victory.</i>

## EXERCISES.

38.

## I.

1. Cōpiam servōrum habet; socii cōpiam equōrum habent. 2. Victōria animum Belgae cōfirmat; victōriae animōs Belgārum cōfirmant. 3. Cōpiās lēgātī superat; lēgātī imperant. 4. Praedam portās; portās vidēmus. 5. Fīlius lēgātī cōpiās sociōrum superat. 6. Animōs cōpiārum terret. 7. Belgae cōpiās parant; cōpiae Belgārum pārent. 8. Fīlii nautae nūntium vocant.

## II.

1. He is announcing the victory of the lieutenant. 2. The horse is carrying the ambassador's son. 3. The troops conquer the allies of the Belgians. 4. He conquers the forces of the allies. 5. The forces of the province are fighting. 6. The victory arouses the Britons' spirits. 7. They give a horse; he is giving orders. 8. You are wounding the sons of the sailor and of the messenger. 9. The slaves have the plunder; I see the slave's booty; they kill the envoys' slaves.



Miles : Soldier.

## LESSON V.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: DATIVE SINGULAR  
AND PLURAL. ACCUSATIVE WITH **ad**.

## 39. Illustrative Examples.

**Lēgātō victōriam nūntiat,** *he announces the victory to the lieutenant.*

**Praedam servīs dat,** *he gives the plunder to the slaves.*

**Prōvinciae imperat,** *he gives orders to the province.*

**Belgīs pārent,** *they are obedient to the Belgians.*

- a. What endings in the Latin nouns indicate the relation expressed in the English sentences by the preposition *to*?
- b. Nouns with these endings are said to be in the *Dative* case.

The dative expressing the indirect object is more frequently placed before than after the direct object of the verb.

## 40. Illustrative Examples.

**Ad locum cōpiās movet,** *he moves the forces to the place.*

**Ad portam servōs vocat,** *he calls the slaves to the gate.*

**Ad cōpiās et sociōs praedam portant,** *they are carrying the plunder to the forces and the allies.*

- a. When the preposition *to* is used in an English phrase implying motion or direction, the dative should not be used in the corresponding Latin. In what way is *to* expressed in these sentences?



## 41.

## VOCABULARY.

ad,	<i>to, towards.</i>	reportō, āre,	<i>carry back,</i>
aqua,	<i>water.</i>		<i>bring back</i>
īnsula,	<i>island.</i>	respondeō, ēre,	<i>reply.</i>
mūrus,	<i>wall.</i>	retineō, ēre,	<i>hold back,</i>
ōceanus,	<i>the ocean.</i>		<i>restrain.</i>
removeō, ēre,	<i>move back,</i>	revocō, āre,	<i>call back,</i>
	<i>remove, withdraw.</i>		<i>recall.</i>
		spectō, āre,	<i>look, face.</i>

N.B.—Observe that *re-* is used in compounds to denote *back* or *again*; so *renūntiō*, *bring back word, report.*

## EXERCISES.

## 42.

## I.

1. Lēgātus nautīs imperat; nautae lēgātō pārent.  
 2. Sociōs ad īnsulam vocat; ad mūrōs cōpiās revocāmus.  
 3. Lēgātus ad prōvinciās cōpiās reportat. 4. Lēgātis servōs et equum datis. 5. Belgae respondēs; equum Belgae removet; Belgae pūgnant. 6. Ad ōceanum prōvinciae spectant.

## II.

1. The slaves reply to the sailor; the sailor is replying to the slaves. 2. They are recalling the ambassador to the island. 3. We announce to the lieutenant the flight of the forces. 4. She is carrying a supply of water to the place. 5. He moves the troops back to the walls; it restrains the allies. 6. The island faces\* towards the province; I give orders to the provinces.

---

\*The English verb *face* is more commonly used transitively, with the preposition omitted, "faces the province."

## LESSON VI.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: IMPERFECT  
INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

## 43. Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnābant, *they were fighting* or *they used to fight.*Movēbat, *he was moving* or *he used to move.*Tenēbāmus, *we were holding* or *we used to hold.*Spectābat, *it was facing* or *it used to face*

- a. What new element is found in these Latin verbs between the present stem and the personal ending?
- b. Notice that these new forms may be translated in two ways, past time being indicated in both cases.\*

## 44. Paradigms.

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

*First Conjugation.**Second Conjugation.*

## SINGULAR.

1. amābam	-ā-ba-m	monēbam	-ē-ba-m
2. amābās	-ā-bā-s	monēbās	-ē-bā-s
3. amābat	-ā-ba-t	monēbat	-ē-ba-t

## PLURAL.

1. amābāmus	-ā-bā-mus	monēbāmus	-ē-bā-mus
2. amābātis	-ā-bā-tis	monēbātis	-ē-bā-tis
3. amābant	-ā-ba-nt	monēbant	-ē-ba-nt

- a. What new personal ending is used instead of -ō in the first person singular of this tense?
- b. What is the quantity of the final **a** or **e** of the stem? Before which endings is the **a** in **ba** short, and before which is it long?

---

\* *To the teacher.* The translation of the Imperfect by the English simple past tense should not be referred to at this stage; see 109.

## 45.

## VOCABULARY.

Britannia, <i>Britain.</i>	gladius, <i>sword.</i>
fīrmō, āre, <i>strengthen.</i>	hasta, <i>spear.</i>
fossa, <i>trench, moat.</i>	hiemō, āre, <i>winter, pass the</i>
Gallia, <i>Gaul (the coun-</i>	<i>winter.</i>
try now called France).	Ītalia, <i>Italy.</i>
Germānia, <i>Germany.</i>	pūgna, <i>battle, fighting.</i>

## EXERCISES.

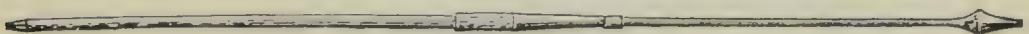
## 46.

## I.

1. Fīrmābant, fīrmābāmus, fīrmābat. 2. Tenēbās, tenēbam, tenēbātis. 3. Pārēbant, parābat, pāret, parant. 4. Gladiōs et hastās reportābat. 5. Ad Germāniam et Ītaliā cōpiās removēbam. 6. Nautae gladium dabās; nautīs respondēbant. 7. Britannia ad Galliam spectat; pūgnam Germānīs nūntiat. 8. Hiemant; cōpiae hiemābant.

## II.

1. He was giving; they used to give; they give. 2. They were terrifying; it used to terrify; she terrifies. 3. You were strengthening the place; I was wintering. 4. It used to have walls and trenches. 5. We were procuring an abundance of swords and spears. 6. The lieutenant was holding Gaul and Britain; the Gauls and Britons were fighting. 7. We were replying to the messenger; the slave used to carry water to the trench.



Hasta : Spear.



## LESSON VII.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: ABLATIVE  
SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

## 47. Illustrative Examples.

Servum hastā necat, *he kills the slave with a spear.*

Servum gladiō necat, *he kills the slave with a sword.*

Nūntium cum nautā et servō necat, *he kills the messenger together with the sailor and the slave.*

Locum mūrīs et fossīs fīrmat, *he strengthens the place with walls and trenches.*

Cum cōpiīs hiemat, *he is wintering with the forces.*

Cum Gallīs pūgnant, *they are fighting with the Gauls.*

a. What endings in these Latin nouns indicate the relations expressed in the English sentences by the preposition *with*?

Notice where, in these examples, this new case (known as the *Ablative*) has forms identical with the dative. Notice also the difference in the quantity of *a* in the ablative and in the nominative.

b. Observe that in some of these sentences *with* has the force of *by means of*,\* in others of *together with* or *along with*. In which sense is the Latin preposition *cum* used with the ablative case?

## 48. Illustrative Examples.

In Galliā hiemat, *he is wintering in Gaul.*

In mūrō pūgnant, *they are fighting on the wall.*

Cōpiās ab Italiā revocat, *he recalls the troops from Italy.*

Cōpiās ā pūgnā revocat, *he recalls the troops from battle.*

Ab lēgātō et sociīs equōs parat, *he procures horses from the lieutenant and the allies.*

---

\* Often *by means of* may be replaced by the preposition *by* instead of *by with*; as, *to perish by (means of) the sword*; *to restrain by (means of) force*.

- a.* What ideas does the ablative case express in these sentences? What prepositions are used with the ablative to express these ideas?\*
- b.* Notice that, while **ab** is found before vowels and consonants alike, **ā** is not used before a vowel.

49.

VOCABULARY.

collocō, āre,	<i>place together,</i>	contineō, ēre,	<i>hold together,</i>
	<i>station.</i>		<i>confine, restrain.</i>
comparō, āre,	<i>get together,</i>	convocō, āre,	<i>call together,</i>
	<i>procure.</i>		<i>summon.</i>
compleō, ēre,	<i>fill full, fill.</i>	injūria,	<i>wrong-doing,</i>
comportō, āre,	<i>bring together,</i>		<i>wrong.</i>
	<i>collect.</i>	nātūra,	<i>nature.</i>
cōnfirmō, āre,	<i>strengthen</i>	silva,	<i>wood, forest.</i>
	<i>(fully), encourage.</i>		

N.B.—In Latin compounds **com**, **con** or **col**, representing **cum**, denotes (a) *together* or (b) *completely*.

EXERCISES.

50.

I.

1. Cum cōpiis in Italiā hiemābāmus. 2. Belgae locum mūrō et fossā cōnfirmābant. 3. Rōmānōs ā silvā revocābam. 4. Gallōs in portis et in mūrō collocat; equōs gladiis vulnerant. 5. Fossās aquā complēmus; cōpiās cum sociis ā locō removēs. 6. Sociōs ab insulā convocātis; sociōs ad insulam revocō. 7. Lēgātus cōpiās ab injūriā continēbat. 8. Praedam ad locum comportābant.

---

\* The Latin Ablative case represents three main ideas (at one time represented by three distinct cases): that of *from*, which gives it the name *ablative*; that of *with*, called the *instrumental* use; and that of *in*, *on* or *at*, called the *locative* use. The prepositions **ab**, **cum** and **in**, are used with the ablative to make clearer the particular use intended.

## II.

1. The slave was fighting with the sailor ; he wounds the sailor with a spear. 2. He used to procure troops and horses from the provinces. 3. We see islands in the ocean ; I see a forest on the island. 4. He fills the walls and the gates with troops ; they fight with swords on the walls. 5. You used to winter in Britain with the lieutenant and the allies. 6. The nature of the place restrains the Britons from fighting. 7. From the walls they announce the victory to the ambassador. 8. They were summoning the messengers to the wall.

---

## LESSON VIII.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS REVIEWED : VOCATIVE CASE. PREDICATE NOUNS AND APPOSITIVES.

51. To give all the forms of a Latin noun in the order in which the cases are usually arranged is called *declining* the noun, and the different series of endings found in Latin nouns are called the *Declensions*. These are five in number ; the nouns already learned which in the nominative singular end in **-a** belong to the First Declension, those which end in **-us** to the Second Declension.

As it happens that no two of the declensions have the same ending in the genitive singular, in Latin vocabularies and dictionaries the nominative and genitive singular of each noun are regularly indicated, in order to show to which of the five declensions the noun belongs. (Compare 56.)



## 52.

## Paradigms.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nominative</i>	mēnsa ( <i>table</i> )	-a	mēnsae	-ae
<i>Genitive</i>	mēnsae	-ae	mēnsārum	-ārum
<i>Dative</i>	mēnsae	-ae	mēnsīs	-īs
<i>Accusative</i>	mēnsam	-am	mēnsās	-ās
<i>Vocative</i>	mēnsa	-a	mēnsae	-ae
<i>Ablative</i>	mēnsā	-ā	mēnsīs	-īs

## SECOND DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	servus ( <i>slave</i> )	-us	servī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	-ī	servōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	-ō	servīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	-um	servōs	-ōs
<i>Voc.</i>	serve	-e	servī	-ī
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	-ō	servīs	-īs

53. The Vocative case (like the nominative of address in English) is used in speaking to a person ; as, *Victōriam, Rōmānī, nūntiāmus, we announce a victory, Romans.*

Except in the singular of nouns of the second declension ending in **-us**, the vocative is in form always identical with the nominative, and is accordingly often omitted in giving the paradigms of declension.

## 54.

## Illustrative Examples.

Britannia est īnsula,	<i>Britain is an island.</i>
Īnsulam Britanniam vocant,	<i>they call the island Britain.</i>
Nūntium, filium lēgātī, vident,	<i>they see the messenger, a son of the lieutenant.</i>



## 56.

## VOCABULARY.

amīcitia, ae, <i>friendship</i> .	incola, ae, <i>inhabitant</i> .
amīcus, ī, <i>friend</i> .	Rhēnus, ī, <i>Rhine</i> .
fluvius, ī, <i>river</i> .	rīpa, ae, <i>bank</i> (of a river).
habitō, āre, <i> dwell</i> .	vīcus, ī, <i>village</i> .

est, *he (she or it) is*; sunt, *they are*; nōn, *not*.

Phrase: amīcitiam cōfīrmō, *establish friendship*.

## EXERCISES.

## 57.

## I.

1. Britannī sunt incolae Britanniae. 2. In Galliā, prōvinciā Rōmānōrum, habitāmus. 3. Cōpiās ā rīpā fluvīi revocat. 4. Gallia nōn est īnsula; Rōmānī Galliam prōvinciam vocābant. 5. Filiōs et filiās in silvīs collocant. 6. Amīcitiam cum Gallīs, Rōmānī, cōfīrmātis. 7. Germānōs, sociōs Belgārum, superat. 8. Gallī sunt Rōmānōrum amīcī; Rōmānī Gallōs amīcōs vocant. 9. Vīcus mūrōs habet; vīcum mūrīs fīrmāmus. 10. Cōpiae in rīpā fluvīi pūgnābant.

## II.

1. We call the inhabitants of the island Britons; an inhabitant of the island is a Briton. 2. The Romans used to dwell in Italy. 3. They call the Belgians friends; we summon (our) friends, the Belgians. 4. The flight of the Germans, (their) allies, terrifies the inhabitants. 5. We are establishing friendship with the province. 6. You used to have friends, lieutenant. 7. They used to call the ocean a river; the ocean is not a river. 8. You were not obedient to (your) lieutenant. 9. They lay waste the villages from the banks of the Rhine to the ocean. 10. He stations (his) troops on the banks.



## 58.

## WORD LIST I.

## NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION.

amīcitia	fossa	injūria	praeda
aqua	fuga	īnsula	prōvincia
Belga	Gallia	Ītalia	pūgna
Britannia	Germānia	nātūra	rīpa
cōpia	hasta	nauta	silva
fīlia	incola	porta	victōria

## NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION.

amīcus	fluvius	locus	Rōmānus
animus	Gallus	mūrus	servus
Britannus	Germānus	nūntius	socius
equus	gladius	ōceanus	vīcus
fīlius	lēgātus	Rhēnus	

## VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION.

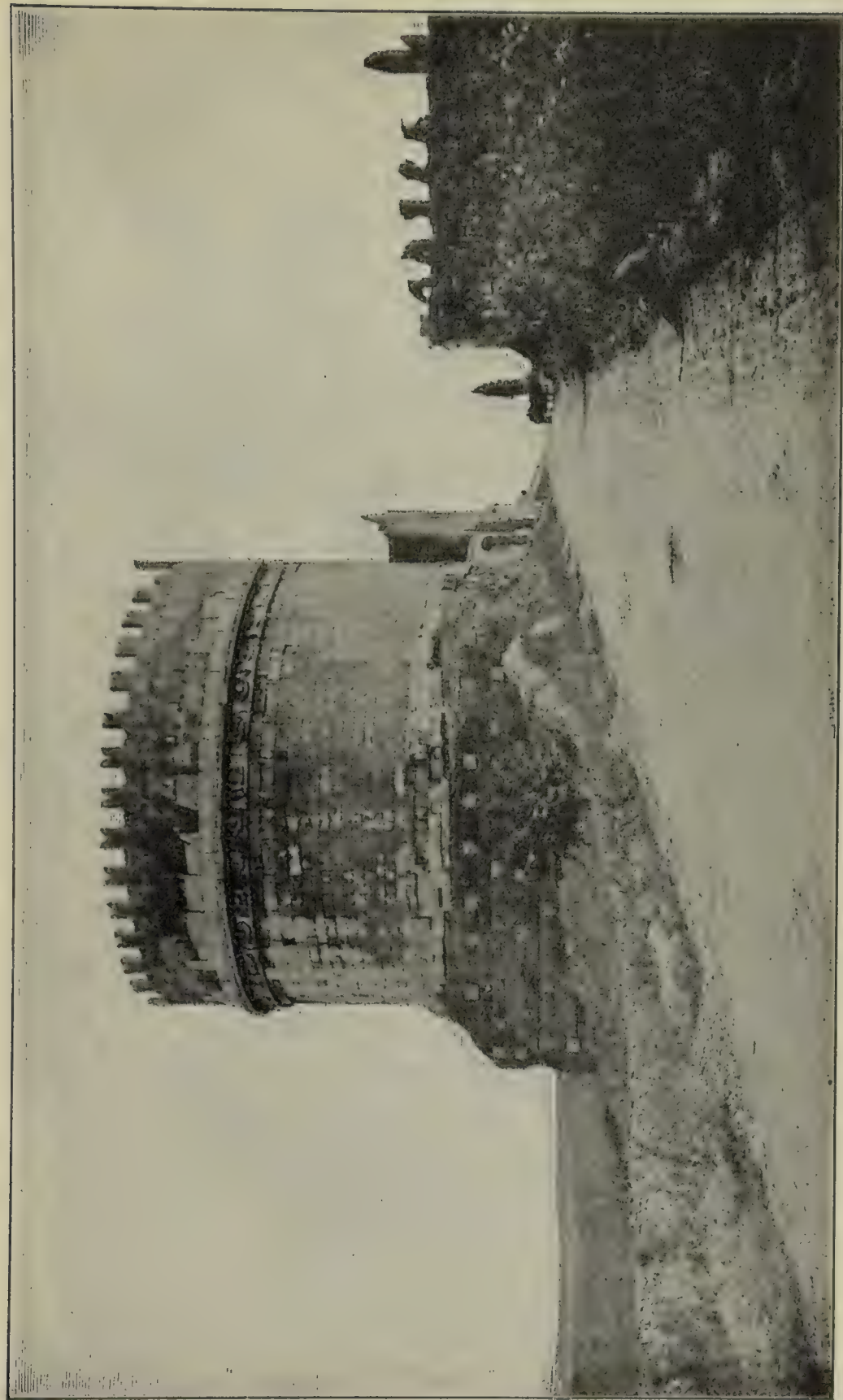
collocō	fīrmō	parō	spectō
comparō	habitō	portō	superō
comportō	hiemō	pūgnō	vāstō
cōnfīrmō	imperō	reportō	vocō
convocō	necō	revocō	vulnerō
dō	nūntiō		

## VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION.

compleō	moveō	removeō	teneō
contineō	pāreō	respondeō	terreō
habeō		retineō	videō

## MISCELLANEOUS.

et	nōn	est	sunt
----	-----	-----	------



TOMB OF CAECILIA METELLA ON THE APPIAN WAY.





## READING LESSON I.

ROMULUS AND REMUS AND THE FOUNDING OF ROME.  
(753 B.C.)

59. (Numitor, the rightful king of Alba, an ancient town of Latium in Italy, was supplanted by his brother Amulius. To secure himself on his throne, Amulius slew the sons of Numitor, and when twin sons were born to his daughter Rhea Silvia, he ordered them to be thrown into the river Tiber. As it turned out, the children were not drowned, but being cast ashore were found and suckled by a she-wolf as if they had been her own young. Soon they were discovered by a shepherd, who brought up the children in his own home, until they became hardy youths and leaders among their comrades. At last their parentage was revealed; and, slaying the usurper Amulius, the brothers placed their grandfather once more upon his rightful throne, and then set out to found a city upon the spot where they had so wonderfully been preserved.)

## VOCABULARY.

**Rōma**, *Rome*.**Socius**, *comrade*.

In Ītaliā habitābat Rhēa Silvia. Rhēa duo (*two*) filiōs habet,\* Rōmulum et Remum. Rōmulus et Remus, filiī Rhēae, amīcōs et sociōs convocat. Locum in ripā fluvii occupant (*they seize*). Dum (*while*) locum mūrīs firmant, Rōmulus et Remus contrōversiam (*dispute*) habent, et pūgnant. In pūgnā Rōmulus Remum necat. Tum (*then*) Rōmulus rēgnat (*is king*), et amīcī et sociī filiōrum Rhēae Rōmulō pārent. Itaque (*and so*) locum Rōmam ex (*from, with abl. case*) Rōmulō vocāmus, et incolās vocāmus Rōmānōs.

---

\* In Latin, as in English, the present may be used to represent vividly past events or situations. This is known as the *Historical Present*.

## LESSON IX.

SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN **-um**. GENDER.

60. In the Second Declension are found not only nouns like **servus**, ending in the nominative singular in **-us**, but others also which end in **-um** and which differ from **servus** in certain other case-endings.

## Paradigm.

## SECOND DECLENSION (continued).

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	templum ( <i>temple</i> )	<b>-um</b>	templa	<b>-a</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	templī	<b>-ī</b>	templōrum	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	templō	<b>-ō</b>	templīs	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	templum	<b>-um</b>	templa	<b>-a</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	templum	<b>-um</b>	templa	<b>-a</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	templō	<b>-ō</b>	templīs	<b>-īs</b>

N.B.—**Castra**, *camp*, a plural noun with singular meaning, is declined like the plural of **templum**; viz., *Nom. castra, Gen. castrōrum, Dat. castrīs, Acc. castra, Voc. castra, Abl. castrīs.*

61. Gender in Latin has certain peculiarities not found in English. As in English, all names of males are masculine, and all names of females are feminine. But the gender of what is neither male nor female is not always neuter, as we regard it in English grammar, but, as a rule, is determined by the ending of the noun. This is sometimes called *Grammatical Gender* as distinguished from *Natural Gender*.

In the First Declension the nouns ending in **-a** are feminine, with the exception of words like **incola**, **nauta** and **Belga** which, as they usually refer to males, are masculine.

In the Second Declension the nouns ending in **-us** are masculine, and those ending in **-um** are neuter.

In Latin vocabularies and dictionaries the gender is regularly indicated by the letters *m.*, *f.* and *n.*

## 62.

## VOCABULARY.

bellum, ī, n.	war.	oppidum, ī, n.,	town.
castra, ōrum, n.,	camp.	oppūgnō, āre,	attack,
expūgnō, āre,	storm,		assault.
	take by storm.	praesidium, ī, n.,	garrison.
frūmentum, ī, n.,	grain,	proelium, ī, n.,	battle.
	corn.	-que,	and.
imperium, ī, n.,	command,	renovō, āre,	renew.
	control, rule.		

N. B. — **-que** never stands alone, but is always appended to the second of the two words grouped together; as **Rōmānus Gallusque** (= **Rōmānus et Gallus**) *a Roman and a Gaul*.\*

## 63.

## EXERCISES.

## I.

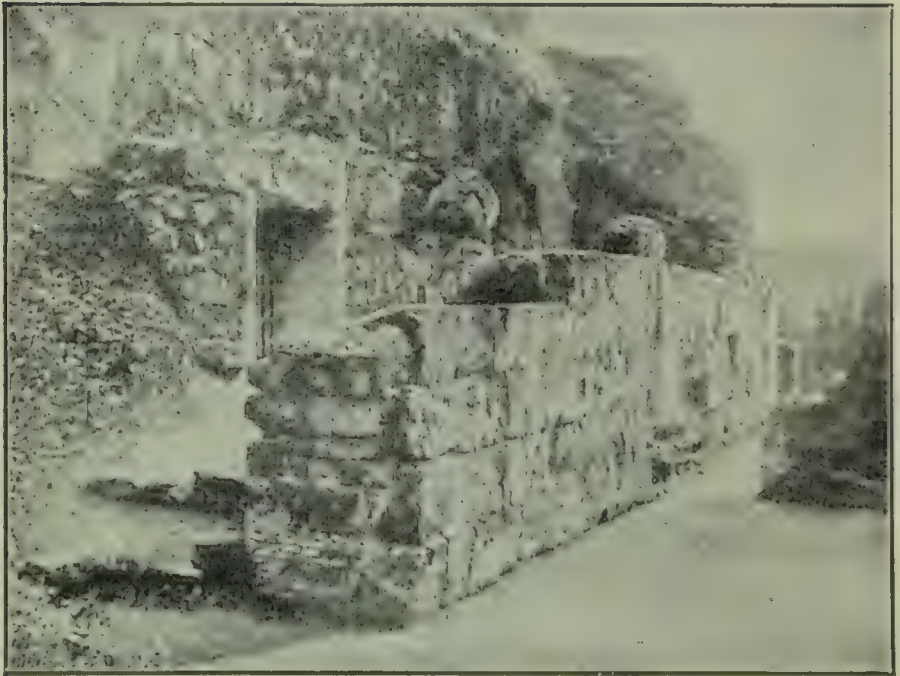
1. Frūmentum comportābant; cōpiam frūmentī comportant. 2. Portam castrōrum vidēmus; portās oppidī vidētis. 3. Praesidium in oppidō collocat. 4. Castra fossā fīrmābat. 5. Oppida vicōsque habēmus. 6. Cōpiās ā proeliō continet. 7. Praesidiō imperō. 8. Cōpiae pūgnant; mūrum oppidī oppūgnant; cōpiae oppidum castraque expūgnant. 9. Imperium prōvinciae filiō dat. 10. In castrīs Rōmānōrum hiemātis. 11. Imperium in bellīs habent.

---

\* When a word has **-que** appended, the accent is shifted to the syllable preceding **-que**; e.g. **Gallus** but **Gallus'que**.

## II.

1. They renew the war with the Romans. 2. We hold the towns with garrisons. 3. He recalls the Romans from battle. 4. They were killing the garrisons of the towns. 5. We station the troops in the camp. 6. You are obedient to the rule of the Romans. 7. He summons (his) allies, the Britons, to the town. 8. The Gauls move (their) camp. 9. We used to fight with the Britons ; we were attacking the place ; we take the village by storm. 10. An abundance of water and grain is in the town. 11. He recalls the troops from the camp to the towns.



The Wall of Romulus.



## LESSON X.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

## 64. Illustrative Examples.

Māgnus vīcus,	<i>a large village.</i>
Māgnus est vīcus,	<i>the village is large.</i>
Māgna īnsula,	<i>a large island.</i>
Māgnum oppidum,	<i>a large town.</i>
In māgnō vīcō,	<i>in a large village.</i>
Māgnae īnsulae,	<i>large islands.</i>
Ad māgna oppida,	<i>to the large towns.</i>

a. Notice how the Latin adjective, unlike the English, changes its forms when used with nouns differing in gender or in number or in case.

**Rule.**—The adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number and case.

## 65. Paradigm.

## ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus ( <i>good</i> )	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

Notice that the masculine of **bonus** is declined like **servus**, the feminine like **mēnsa** and the neuter like **templum**.

66. The position of the adjective is freer in Latin than in English. Very frequently the adjective follows its noun; so regularly, **populus Rōmānus**, *the Roman people*, while *a good slave* is either **bonus servus** or **servus bonus**. When emphatic or when denoting size, the adjective commonly precedes; as **māgnae cōpiae**, *large forces*.

## 67.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>altus</b> , a, um, <i>high, deep.</i>	<b>numerus</b> , ī, m., <i>number.</i>
<b>lātus</b> , a, um, <i>broad, wide.</i>	<b>parvus</b> , a, um, <i>small.</i>
<b>longus</b> , a, um, <i>long.</i>	<b>paucī</b> , ae, a, <i>few</i> (used in the plural only).
<b>māgnus</b> , a, um, <i>great, large.</i>	<b>perīculum</b> , ī, n., <i>danger.</i>
<b>multus</b> , a, um, <i>much;</i> (in plural) <i>many.</i>	<b>populus</b> , ī, m., <i>people, nation.</i>
<b>Rōmānus</b> , a, um (as adjective), <i>Roman.</i>	

## EXERCISES.

## 68.

## I.

1. The island (sword, garrison) is large. 2. The islands (swords, garrisons) are small. 3. The swords (wars, spears) are long. 4. The trench (river, gate) is wide. 5. The danger (number, abundance) is great. 6. The river (trench) is deep; the walls are high. 7. Many (few) provinces (towns, villages.)

## II.

1. Parvās īnsulās et māgnū oppidū habent. 2. Multa oppida oppūgnat; paucōs vicōs expūgnat. 3. Locū fossā lātā et mūrō altō fīrmant. 4. Perīculū

populī Rōmānī vidēmus. 5. Māgnīs cum cōpiīs\* bellum renovant. 6. Multae prōvinciae populō Rōmānō pārēbant. 7. Longās hastās et parvōs gladiōs habēbātis. 8. Multa oppida mūrōs et portās habent. 9. Māgnum numerum longārū hastārū parat. 10. Fluvii altī lātique Rōmānōs continent.

## III.

1. We have many provinces and few allies. 2. They were strengthening the camp with broad and deep trenches. 3. They establish friendship with the Roman people. 4. It encourages the hearts of many Gauls. 5. To many friends he gives a large number of slaves. 6. The camp has a wide gate. 7. He recalls the troops from the small camp to the large camp. 8. The Roman people is in great danger. 9. In (*literally*, by means of) a long war he conquers many nations. 10. He stations a large garrison in the small island.

---

\*This order (adjective, preposition, noun) is very frequent. Translate as if the order were **cum māgnīs cōpiīs**.



Remains of Roman Camp.

## LESSON XI.

SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN **-er** AND **-ir**. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS IN **-er**.

69. Besides the nouns ending in **-us** or in **-um**, the second declension has others which in the nominative singular end in **-er** or **-ir**. These nouns are all masculine, and are declined as follows :—

70.

## Paradigms

## SECOND DECLENSION (continued).

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	puer ( <i>boy</i> )	ager ( <i>field</i> )	vir ( <i>man</i> )
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	ager	vir
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
<i>Voc.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

- a.* Notice that these nouns have the same case-endings as the nouns in **-us** (52), except that in the nominative and vocative singular, case-endings are omitted.
- b.* Most nouns in **-er** are declined like **ager** (having **e** before **r** only in the nominative and vocative singular), rather than like **puer** (with **e** retained throughout).



71. There are also adjectives of the first and second declensions which end in **-er** in the nom. sing. masc.; of these some are declined like **puer** and retain **e** before **r** in all genders throughout; others are declined like **ager** and have **e** before **r** in the nominative and vocative singular masculine only.

72.

Paradigms.

ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS IN **-er**.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber ( <i>free</i> )	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Voc.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Voc.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	aeger ( <i>sick</i> )	aegra	aegrum
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
<i>Voc.</i>	aeger	aegra	aegrum
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō

PLURAL.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
<i>Voc.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

73. A Latin vocabulary or dictionary shows whether a noun ending in **-er** is declined like **puer** or **ager**, by indicating the form of the genitive singular; and also shows whether an adjective ending in **-er** is declined like **liber** or like **aeger**, by indicating the form of the feminine and neuter nominative; as, **faber**, **-brī**, *a workman*; **vesper**, **-erī**, *evening*; **asper**, **era**, **erum**, *rough*; **pulcher**, **chra**, **chrom**, *beautiful*.\*

74. When an adjective agrees with its noun, it does not necessarily follow that the adjective ends with the same letters as the noun, as may be seen in such combinations as **puer bonus**, *a good boy*; **ager parvus**, *a small field*; **multī nautae**, *many sailors*; **paucōrum Belgārum**, *of a few Belgians*. In what, then, does the agreement consist? See 64.

## 75.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>ager</b> , <b>agrī</b> , m., <i>land, field, territory.</i>	<b>liberī</b> , <b>ōrum</b> , m. (in plural only), <i>children.</i>
<b>crēber</b> , <b>bra</b> , <b>brum</b> , <i>numerous, frequent.</i>	<b>puella</b> , <b>ae</b> , f., <i>girl.</i>
<b>integer</b> , <b>gra</b> , <b>grum</b> , <i>fresh.</i>	<b>puer</b> , <b>erī</b> , m., <i>boy.</i>
<b>liber</b> , <b>era</b> , <b>erum</b> , <i>free.</i>	<b>reliquus</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> , <i>remaining.</i> †
	<b>vir</b> , <b>virī</b> , m., <i>man.</i>

\* Neither the nouns nor the adjectives of the second declension ending in **-er** are nearly so numerous as those ending in **-us**.

† Usually **reliquus** may be best translated by "the rest of"; for example, **reliquī Belgae**, *the remaining Belgians*, or better, *the rest of the Belgians*.

## EXERCISES.

76.

I.

1. Periculum viri vidētis. 2. Pueri puellam terrent.  
 3. Oppida expūgnant agrōsque vāstant. 4. Integrīs  
 cum cōpiis mūrum oppūgnābat. 5. Liberī virīs nōn  
 pārēbant. 6. Paucī Belgae multōs nautās superant.  
 7. Reliquīs Germānīs agrōs dant. 8. Crēbra praesidia  
 agrum Rōmānum tenent. 9. Imperium reliquae prō-  
 vinciae tenēbam. 10. Ad parvum agrum reliquam  
 praedam comportant. 11. Puerōs puellāsque liberōs  
 vocāmus. 12. Liberum populum superābāmus.

II.

1. The Germans were laying waste the lands of the  
 Belgians. 2. He announces numerous victories. 3. The  
 slaves are obedient to the man, not to the boy. 4. With  
 the rest of the troops we winter in the camp. 5. He  
 gives fresh horses to the men. 6. He was calling  
 together the rest of the Belgians. 7. You were  
 announcing the flight of many sailors. 8. They call  
 the man a slave, not free. 9. He recalls (his) troops  
 from the Roman territory. 10. They reply to the  
 frequent messengers. 11. He stations fresh forces  
 in the town. 12. The boy he calls (his) son, the girls  
 (his) daughters.

## LESSON XII.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS: PRESENT  
 INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

77. Latin has in all four conjugations of the verb.  
 In the first and second conjugations the present stem  
 ends in -ā and -ē respectively (21. b); in the third

conjugation in **-e** (preceded by a consonant or **u**)\*; in the fourth conjugation in **-ī**. In vocabularies, verbs of the third conjugation are indicated by **ere** (not **ēre** as in the second conjugation); verbs of the fourth conjugation by **īre**.

## 78.

## Paradigms.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

<i>Third Conjugation.</i>		<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>	
SINGULAR.			
1. regō ( <i>I rule</i> )	-ō	audiō ( <i>I hear</i> )	i-ō
2. regis	i-s	audīs	ī-s
3. regit	i-t	audit	i-t
PLURAL.			
1. regimus	i-mus	audīmus	ī-mus
2. regitis	i-tis	audītis	ī-tis
3. regunt	u-nt	audiunt	iu-nt

*a.* Notice (1) that in the third conjugation, as given above, the stem vowel **-e** is lost before **-ō**, becomes **-u** before **-nt** and elsewhere becomes **-i**; and (2) that in the fourth conjugation, **-ī** becomes **-iu** before **-nt**.

*b.* In all four conjugations long stem vowels (**-ā**, **-ē**, **-ī**) are shortened before **-t** and **-nt**, and are either shortened or omitted before **ō**. See also 24.

## 79.

## VOCABULARY.

audiō, īre,	hear.	mittō, ere,	send.
cōgō, ere,	bring together,	mūniō, īre,	fortify,
	collect.		protect.
conveniō, īre,	come together,	redūcō, ere,	lead back.
	assemble.	relinquō, ere,	leave behind,
dūcō, ere,	lead.		leave.
gerō, ere,	conduct.	veniō, īre,	come.
Phrase: bellum gerō, wage war.			

\* There are also a few verbs of the third conjugation in **-īō**. See 287.



## EXERCISES.

80.

I.

1. Cōpiās cōgit ; cōpiās dūcis ; cōpiās mittunt ; cōpiās redūcimus ; cōpiās relinquitis. 2. Cōpiae conveniunt ; bellum gerunt ; castra mūniunt ; agrōs vāstant ; incolās terrent. 3. Nūntius venit ; nūntium audīmus. 4. Castra lātā fossā mūnit. 5. Bellum longum in Galliā gerimus. 6. Cōpiās ā proeliō redūcō. 7. Lēgātī ā reliquīs Britanniīs veniunt. 8. Māgnum numerum amīcōrum cōgis. 9. Crēbrōs nūntiōs ad castra mittunt. 10. Lēgātōs Germanōrum audītis. 11. Paucī liberī ad locum conveniunt. 12. Praedam in silvā relinquit.

II.

1. They fortify ; they send ; they leave ; they give ; they see. 2. You hear ; you lead ; you call ; you hold. 3. We come ; you assemble ; he collects ; we lead ; I lead back. 4. They come with the plunder to the camp. 5. We are fortifying the place with a wall. 6. He sends the lieutenant to the province with a large number of Gauls. 7. I collect the rest of the men. 8. She is leading a small horse to the bank. 9. The boys and girls come from the fields to the gate of the camp. 10. You are leaving a large garrison in the camp. 11. They wage wars with the Roman people. 12. He leads the rest of the allies back to (their) lands.



Signum : Standard.

## 81.

## WORD LIST A.

## PERSONS.

boy	man	ally	lieutenant
girl	children	ambassador	inhabitant
son	slave	messenger	people
daughter	friend	sailor	(= nation)

## LANDSCAPE.

place	wall	water	forest
village	gate	ocean	river
town	field	island	bank

## WAR.

## NOUNS.

## VERBS.

troops	war	fight	wage (war)
camp	battle	kill	renew (war)
trench	fighting	wound	summon (troops)
garrison	danger	conquer	procure (troops)
spear	flight	lay waste	station (troops)
sword	victory	fortify	restrain (troops)
command	plunder	attack	collect (troops)
		take by storm	pass the winter

## MISCELLANEOUS NOUNS.

horse	grain	province	abundance
-------	-------	----------	-----------

## MISCELLANEOUS VERBS.

have	lead	call	collect
give	move	carry	assemble
hold	see	fill	give orders
come	hear	prepare	be obedient
send	reply	frighten	strengthen
leave	announce	recall	establish
remove	carry back	face	dwell

## READING LESSON II.

## THE ROMANS AND THEIR NEIGHBOURS.

82. Prīmō (*at first*) Rōma parvus est vīcus, et paucōs incolās habet. Multī populī in Ītaliā habitant, et bella proeliaque sunt crēbra. Oppida mūrōs portāsque habent; incolae parvīs gladiīs et longīs hastīs pūgnant. Rōmānī parvōs agrōs habent et multōs fīnitimōs (*neighbours*). Saepe (*often*) fīnitimī agrum Rōmānum vāstant et Rōmānōs servōsque in agrīs necant. Nūntius ad reliquōs Rōmānōs venit; perīculum populō nūntiat; Rōmānī cōpiās cōgunt; paucōs virōs in mūrīs relinquunt et cum reliquīs cōpiīs fīnitimōs oppūgnant.

Rōmānī fortiter (*bravely*) pūgnant et victōriae sunt crēbrae. Etiam (*also*) saepe oppida fīnitimōrum expūgnant, et multōs liberōs populōs superant. Postrēmō (*at last*) populus Rōmānus imperium Ītaliae habet; ad pauca oppida praesidia mittit; agrōs Rōmānīs dat et oppida māgnīs praesidiīs tenet. Haec (*these, neut. acc.*) oppida Rōmānī colōniās (*colonies*) vocant. Cum reliquīs fīnitimīs amīcitiam cōfirmant et incolās sociōs vocant.

## LESSON XIII.

## THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT STEMS.

83. Nouns of the third declension have their genitive singular ending in **-is**, and the great majority have their stem ending in a consonant. This consonant stem may be obtained by omitting the genitive ending **-is**. The regular endings of masculine and feminine nouns are shown in the following paradigm.

## Paradigm.

## THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT STEMS.

*Masculine and Feminine Nouns.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	hiems ( <i>winter</i> )	-s	hiemēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hiemis	-is	hiemum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	hiemī	-ī	hiemibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hiemem	-em	hiemēs	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	hiems	-s	hiemēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	hieme	-e	hiemibus	-ibus

84. Very few nouns of this declension, however, are declined exactly like **hiems**. The combination of a stem ending in a consonant with the **-s** of the nominative singular leads to various changes, among which the following are the most important and frequent :—

- I. Stems ending in **g** or **c** have their nominative singular in **x** (= **gs** or **cs**); as, **rēx**, **rēgis** (stem **rēg-**); **dux**, **ducis** (stem **duc-**).
  - II. Stems ending in **t** or **d** omit these letters before **-s** of the nominative singular; as, **virtūs**, **virtūtis** (stem **virtūt-**); **pēs**, **pedis** (stem **ped-**).
  - III. Stems ending in **l** or **r** omit **s** in the nominative singular; as, **cōsul**, **cōsulis** (stem **cōsul-**); **agger**, **aggeris** (stem **agger-**).
- N.B.—**Pater** (*father*), **māter** (*mother*), and **frāter** (*brother*), whose stems end in **tr**, insert **e** before **r** in the nominative and vocative singular; as, **pater**, **patris** (stem **patr-**).
- IV. Stems ending in **n** omit both **n** and **s** in the nominative singular and change the vowel preceding **n** to **ō**; as, **legiō**, **legiōnis** (stem **legiōn-**); **homō**, **hominis** (stem **homin-**).



v. Further, with very few exceptions, the words of more than one syllable whose stem ends in **p**, **g**, **c**, **t**, or **d**, and which have short **e** in the final syllable of the nominative and vocative singular, have in the other cases short **i**; as, **prīnceps**, **prīncipis** (stem **prīncip-**); **mīles**, **mīlitis** (stem **mīlit-**); **obses**, **obsidis** (stem **obsid-**).

85. It follows, therefore, that in order to decline a masculine or feminine noun of the third declension, it will be necessary to know both the nominative and the genitive singular, both of which are clearly indicated in Latin vocabularies and dictionaries.

## 86.

## Paradigms

## THIRD DECLENSION: MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

*Mute\* Stems.*

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	virtūs	prīnceps	mīles
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	virtūtis	prīncipis	mīlitis
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	virtūtī	prīncipī	mīlitī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	virtūtem	prīncipem	mīlitem
<i>Voc.</i>	rēx	virtūs	prīnceps	mīles
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	virtūte	prīncipe	mīlite

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	virtūtēs	prīncipēs	mīlitēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	virtūtum	prīncipum	mīlitum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	virtūtibus	prīncipibus	mīlitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	virtūtēs	prīncipēs	mīlitēs
<i>Voc.</i>	rēgēs	virtūtēs	prīncipēs	mīlitēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	virtūtibus	prīncipibus	mīlitibus

\* Consonants are classed as *mutes*, including **b**, **d**, **g**, **p**, **t**, **c**; *liquids* (**r**, **l**); *nasals* (**m**, **n**); and *spirants* (**s**, **f**).

*Liquid and Nasal Stems.*

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsul	pater	legiō	homō
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulis	patris	legiōnis	hominis
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulī	patri	legiōnī	hominī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulem	patrem	legiōnem	hominem
<i>Voc.</i>	cōsul	pater	legiō	homō
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsule	patre	legiōne	homine

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	patrēs	legiōnēs	hominēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulum	patrum	legiōnum	hominum
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	patribus	legiōnibus	hominibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	patrēs	legiōnēs	hominēs
<i>Voc.</i>	cōsulēs	patrēs	legiōnēs	hominēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	patribus	legiōnibus	hominibus

## 87.

## VOCABULARY.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., *Caesar*. obses, obsidis, m., *hostage*.  
 contendō, ere, *hasten*. prīnceps, prīncipis, m., *lead-*  
 eques, equitis, m., *horse- ing man, chief man, chief*.  
*soldier ; plural, cavalry*. rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.  
 legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion*. sīgnum, ī, n., *signal ;*  
 mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier*. *standard*.  
 mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, f., *fortification*.

## EXERCISES.

## 88.

## I.

1. Militēs equitēsque mittit ; legiōnem mīlitum cum equitibus mittit. 2. Militēs ā rēge veniunt ; ad Caesarem conveniunt. 3. Praedam legiōnī dat ; reliquam praedam equitibus dabat. 4. Amīcitiam cum prīncipibus cōfirmant ; bellum cum Caesare gerunt. 5. Perīculum legiōnis videō ; legiō sīgnum videt. 6. Militēs cum

equitibus castra mūniunt; castra mūnitiōnibus firmāmus. 7. Rēx obsidēs Caesarī dat; prīcipēs māgnū numerum obsidum ad Caesarem mittunt. 8. Caesar multās legiōnēs cōgit; paucōs equitēs in prōvinciā cōgunt. 9. Sīgnū proeliī (literally *of*, freely *for*) dat; cōpiae ad mūnitiōnēs contendunt.

## II.

1. The king is waging war with the chief men; the chiefs are waging war with the king. 2. He is recalling the legion from the fortifications; he is leading back the soldiers of the legion. 3. We are sending hostages to Caesar; we give the control of the legions to Caesar. 4. He hastens with a legion to the camp; he fills the camp with soldiers. 5. A few soldiers were fighting with a large number of cavalry; we conquer the soldiers. 6. He gives orders to the chief men; the chief men are not obedient to the king. 7. We see the king's standard; we hasten to the standard. 8. The cavalry have a large number of horses; he gives the horses of the cavalry to the hostages. 9. He is wintering in the camp with the cavalry; the rest of the soldiers he leaves in (their) fortifications.



Caius Julius Caesar. (100-44 B.C.)

## LESSON XIV.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS: IMPERFECT  
INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

89.

## Paradigms.

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

*Third Conjugation.**Fourth Conjugation.*

## SINGULAR.

1. regēbam	-ē-ba-m	audiēbam	-iē-ba-m
2. regēbās	-ē-bā-s	audiēbās	-iē-bā-s
3. regēbat	-ē-ba-t	audiēbat	-iē-ba-t

## PLURAL.

1. regēbāmus	-ē-bā-mus	audiēbāmus	-iē-bā-mus
2. regēbātis	-ē-bā-tis	audiēbātis	-iē-bā-tis
3. regēbant	-ē-ba-nt	audiēbant	-iē-ba-nt

- a. Compare these forms with the imperfect indicative active of the first and second conjugations (44), and observe that in the third conjugation the final -e of the stem is lengthened to -ē, and that in the fourth conjugation the final -ī of the stem is replaced by -iē. Thus in all four conjugations the tense-sign -ba- is preceded by a long vowel.

90.

## Illustrative Examples.

**Agrōs nōn habent,** *they have not lands, or they do not have lands.*

**Nōn regēbat,** *he was not ruling, or he did not rule.*

- a. The present and imperfect indicative may be translated also by means of *do* and *did* respectively, chiefly with a negative or in a question, but sometimes also for the sake of emphasis.



91.

VOCABULARY.

arma, ōrum, n.,	(in plural only) <i>arms.</i>
auxilium, ī, n.,	<i>aid, help</i> ; in plural, <i>auxiliaries, reinforcements.</i>
dēfendō, ere,	<i>defend.</i>
discēdō, ere,	<i>depart, withdraw.</i>
hīberna, ōrum, n.,	(in plural only) <i>winter camp; winter quarters.</i>
impedīmentum, ī, n.,	<i>hindrance</i> ; in plural, <i>baggage.</i>
impediō, īre,	<i>hinder, impede.</i>
petō, ere,	<i>ask, seek.</i>
pōnō, ere,	<i>place.</i>
trādō, ere,	<i>give up, surrender.</i>

*Phrase*: **castra pōnō**, *pitch a camp.*

N.B.—Review the declension of **castra** (60).

EXERCISES.

92.

I.

1. Portam castrōrum dēfendēbāmus; castra mūniēbāmus. 2. Castra pōnēbant, locumque mūnitiōnibus firmābant. 3. Ab hībernīs discēdit; ad Caesarem venit. 4. Auxilium ā Caesare nōn petēbam. 5. Obsidēs populō Rōmānō trādunt. 6. Silva equitēs nōn impediēbat. 7. Amīcōs ad arma vocābās. 8. Legiōnēs cum impedimentīs veniēbant. 9. Virī liberōs Caesarī trādēbant. 10. Auxilia māgnō in periculō sunt. 11. Rēgem ab injūriā dēfendēbātis. 12. Legiōnēs in silvā pōnit. 13. Ab agrīs discēdēbant et ad hīberna contendēbant. 14. Impedimenta armīs dēfendunt. 15. Impediēbam; pōnitis; petēbās; nōn audiunt.

## II.

1. They surrender (their) arms and baggage. 2. We were seeking the friendship of the king and the leading men. 3. A deep trench hinders the flight of the auxiliaries. 4. They were withdrawing from the war. 5. You were not waging war; we do not wage war. 6. We were pitching (our) camp. 7. They were fortifying (their) winter camp. 8. The legions with the auxiliaries defend the fortifications. 9. It did not hinder the war. 10. They used to leave (their) baggage in the woods. 11. We place a garrison in the island. 12. She announces the victory of the legion to the cavalry. 13. They were withdrawing from Britain to their winter quarters. 14. Few\* defend the king; many seek flight; the rest give up (their) arms.

## LESSON XV.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT STEMS (continued).

93. In the third declension, as in the second, neuter nouns have the nominative, accusative and vocative cases alike in each number, and in the plural these cases end in **-a**. In the nominative singular, neuter nouns of the third declension have no case-ending, but consist merely of the stem, generally with some change in the vowel of the final syllable; as, **caput**, **capitis** (stem **capit-**); **flūmen**, **flūminis** (stem **flūmin-**); **jūs**, **jūris** (stem **jūr-**); **tempus**, **temporis** (stem **tempor-**); **opus**, **operis** (stem **oper-**).† Especially irregular is **iter**, **itineris** (stem **itiner-**).

---

\*The adjective is often used with the force of a noun; *few*=*few men*.

†The stems of **jūs**, **tempus** and **opus** really ended in **-s**, but it was the rule in Latin for **s** between vowels to become **r**.

## 94.

## Paradigms.

## THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT STEMS.

*Neuter Nouns.*

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmen	corpus	iter	—
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminis	corporis	itineris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminī	corporī	itinerī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmen	corpus	iter	—
<i>Voc.</i>	nōmen	corpus	iter	—
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmine	corpore	itinere	-e

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmina	corpora	itinerā	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminum	corporum	itinerum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminibus	corporibus	itineribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmina	corpora	itinerā	-a
<i>Voc.</i>	nōmina	corpora	itinerā	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	nōminibus	corporibus	itineribus	-ibus

## 95.

## VOCABULARY.

ag-men, -minis, n., <i>line of</i>	pal-ūs, -ūdis, f., <i>marsh.</i>
<i>march, column.</i>	pec-us, -oris, n., <i>cattle,</i>
flū-men, -minis, n., <i>river.</i>	<i>herd.</i>
iter, itineris, n., <i>road, march.</i>	sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., <i>safety.</i>
lat-us, -eris, n., <i>side, flank.</i>	virt-ūs, -ūtis, f., <i>valour.</i>
op-us, -eris, n., <i>work.</i>	vuln-us, -eris, n., <i>wound.</i>

*Phrases : māgnīs itineribus, by forced marches.*

*in itinere, on the march.*

*ā latere, on the flank.\**

---

\* Latin tends to look upon many actions as proceeding or as viewed from a certain quarter, where in English they would be considered as happening in that quarter; as, *ex equō pūgnābat*, he was fighting on horseback.

N.B.—Nouns of the third declension are regularly neuter when they end in **-men**, or in **-us** with genitive in **-ris**. Those ending in **-ūs** with the genitive in **-dis** or **-tis** are regularly feminine. Feminine also are nouns ending in **-tās**, **-tūdō**, **-iō**, **-x**, or in **-s** preceded by a consonant. Nouns ending in **-or**, **-er**, or in **-es** are regularly masculine. (But nouns referring to males are of course masculine, as **rēx**, *a king*, and nouns referring to females are feminine, as **mulier**, *a woman*. See 61.)

## EXERCISES.

96.

I.

1. Ab opere discēdunt. 2. Salūtem nōn petēbant. 3. Palūdēs iter agminis impediēbant. 4. Māgnā cum virtūte in flūmine pūgnat. 5. In palūdibus silvīsque pecora relinquunt. 6. Multa vulnera habent; multī vulnera habent. 7. Agmen ā latere oppūgnant. 8. Britannī māgnū pecoris numerum habēbant. 9. Māgnīs itineribus ad rīpam flūminis contendimus. 10. Flūmen palūdēsque reliqua latera castrōrum mūniunt.

II.

1. They see the long columns. 2. The rivers did not hinder the march of the soldiers. 3. On the march they come to a river and a large marsh. 4. The herds and the rest of the plunder he gives to the soldiers. 5. In valour is safety. 6. They see the great works of the Romans. 7. He has a wound in (his) side. 8. The remaining side of the island looks towards Gaul. 9. They were leading the cattle to the marshes. 10. The columns did not have an abundance of grain, horses, and cattle.



## LESSON XVI.

## PREPOSITIONS.

97. Besides the four prepositions **ab**, **ad**, **cum** and **in**, Latin has many others, some governing the accusative case, some the ablative, and a few both accusative and ablative. No prepositions govern the genitive or the dative case.

98.

## Illustrative Examples.

<b>Ā flūmine contendunt,</b>	<i>they hasten from the river.</i>
<b>Ad rīpam veniunt,</b>	<i>they come to the bank.</i>
<b>Ante pūgnam discēdit,</b>	<i>he withdraws before the battle.</i>
<b>Contrā Gallōs pūgnat,</b>	<i>he fights against the Gauls.</i>
<b>Cum legione contendit,</b>	<i>he hastens with a legion.</i>
<b>Dē proeliō audit,</b>	<i>he hears about the battle.</i>
<b>Ex agrīs conveniunt,</b>	<i>they assemble out of (or from) the fields.</i>
<b>In prōvinciā hiemat,</b>	<i>he winters in the province.</i>
<b>In prōvinciam venit,</b>	<i>he comes into (or to) the province.</i>
<b>Inter silvās est flūmen,</b>	<i>the river is between the forests.</i>
<b>Per silvam venit,</b>	<i>he comes through the forest.</i>
<b>Post pūgnam discēdit,</b>	<i>he withdraws after the battle.</i>
<b>Propter palūdēs discēdit,</b>	<i>he withdraws on account of the marshes.</i>
<b>Sine periculō venit,</b>	<i>he comes without danger.</i>
<b>Trāns Rhēnum contendunt,</b>	<i>they hasten across the Rhine.</i>

a. The meaning of each of these prepositions should be learned, and also the case which follows it. Notice especially the difference between **in** with the accusative, and **in** with the ablative; **ab** and **ex** with the ablative; and **ad** and **in** with the accusative.

## 99.

## VOCABULARY.

cōgnōscō, ere, *learn, find out, ascertain.* inopia, ae, f., *want, scarcity.*  
 cōnsilium, ī, n., *plan, design.* māgnitū-dō, -dinis, f., *greatness, extent.*  
 explōrā-tor, -tōris, m., *scout.* pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

*Phrase:* dē pāce (with veniō or mittō) *to treat for peace, to seek peace.*

## EXERCISES.

## 100.

## I.

1 Sine impedimentis per provinciam in Italiam contendebamus. 2. Post proelium legati ad Caesarem de pace et amicitia veniunt. 3. Auxilia ex hibernis et a Caesare conveniunt. 4. Propter magnitudinem munitio-num castra non oppugnant. 5. Copias trans Rhenum contra Germanos ducis. 6. Ante proelium equites inter legiones et auxilia collocat. 7. Propter periculum in insula cum copiis non hiemabat. 8. In itinere per exploratores de salute legionis cognoscit. 9. Frumentum ex agris in castra comportabatis. 10. Sine equibus a Caesare ad legatum veniunt. 11. Ex obsidibus iter cognoscimus. 12. Crebros exploratores trans flumina mittebat.

## II.

1. We used to have lands across the river Rhine in Gaul. 2. On account of the scarcity of corn he leads the troops back from Britain into Gaul. 3. They come without danger through the woods and marshes to Caesar. 4. He stations the auxiliaries on the bank of the river. 5. Envoys come from the Britons to treat for peace. 6. They were fighting between the rivers against the cavalry. 7. Before the war they ask aid

from the Roman people. 8. After the victory we were ascertaining from scouts the plans of the leading men. 9. On account of the greatness of the danger they strengthen the place with extensive (*māgnus*) fortifications. 10. Out of a large number few surrender (their) arms to Caesar. 11. Without a wound we defend the camp against the legions. 12. On account of the wounds of the soldiers he leads the column back across the marsh into the land of (his) allies, the Belgians.

---

## LESSON XVII.

### PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

#### 101. Illustrative Examples.

<i>Pūgnāvī,</i>	<i>I have fought,</i>	or	<i>I fought.</i>
<i>Pūgnāvistī,</i>	<i>you (s.) have fought,</i>	or	<i>you fought.</i>
<i>Pūgnāvit,</i>	<i>he has fought,</i>	or	<i>he fought.</i>
<i>Pūgnāvimus,</i>	<i>we have fought,</i>	or	<i>we fought.</i>
<i>Pūgnāvistis,</i>	<i>you (pl.) have fought,</i>	or	<i>you fought.</i>
<i>Pūgnāvērunt,</i>	<i>they have fought,</i>	or	<i>they fought.</i>

a. The personal endings of this tense, known as the Perfect Indicative Active, are **-ī, -istī, -it, -imus, -istis, -ērunt**. Observe the twofold translation, both by the present perfect tense (with *have*) and by the simple past tense of English.

102. In the same way as *pūgnāvī* is formed from *pūgnō*, may be formed the perfect indicative active of *collocō*, *fīrmō*, *nūntiō*, *parō*, *superō*, *vāstō*, *vocō*, *vulnerō*, and their compounds. Similarly the perfect of *compleō* is *complēvī*; of *petō*, *petīvī*, and of *mūniō*, *munīvī*.

The personal endings of all perfects in **-vī** are identical, no matter to which conjugation the verb belongs.



## 103.

## VOCABULARY.

appellō, āre, āvī, <i>name, call.</i>	multitū-dō, -dinis, f.,
dēspērō, āre, āvī, <i>despair ;</i>	<i>large number, amount.</i>
(with <i>dē</i> and abl., = <i>of</i> ).	obtineō, ēre, <i>hold, possess.</i>
expectō, āre, āvī, <i>await.</i>	occupō, āre, āvī, <i>seize.</i>
homō, hominis, m., <i>man.</i>	postulō, āre, āvī, <i>demand.</i>

## EXERCISES.

## 104.

## I.

1. Frūmentum in oppidum comportāvērunt. 2. Castra oppugnāvit. 3. Principēs convocāvistī. 4. Locum hominibus complēvimus. 5. Imperium occupāvī. 6. Contrā populum Rōmānum pugnāvistis. 7. Praedam postulant. 8. Armīs Galliam obtinēmus. 9. Locum mūniēbās. 10. Auxilium petimus. 11. Auxilia petivimus. 12. Dē salūte dēspērāvit. 13. Multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs convocāvērunt. 14. Cōpiās exspectāvimus. 15. Insulam Britanniam appellant. 16. Agrōs vāstāvistis. 17. Locum mūnitiōnibus fīrmāvērunt.

## II.

1. They have not despaired of victory. 2. We have seized the town. 3. You conquered the Belgians. 4. He recalled the soldier. 5. He has taken the town by storm. 6. They wounded a man. 7. He was ascertaining the number of men. 8. They seek safety. 9. They have sought safety by flight. 10. We have called the king friend. 11. We fortified the camp. 12. They demanded aid. 13. They hold control of the province. 14. You announced the battle. 15. We have laid waste the rest of the island. 16. He summoned the soldiers. 17. They filled the trench with water.



## LESSON XVIII.

## PERFECT INDICATIVE (continued).

105. There are in all, four ways of forming the perfect tense in Latin.

(1) The perfect in **-vī** (101).

(2) The perfect in **-uī**, as :—

vetō, āre, vetuī (*forbid*).      habecō, ēre, habuī (*have*).

colō, ere, coluī (*till*).      aperio, ire, aperuī (*open*).

(3) The perfect in **-sī** (often with euphonic changes through combination with a consonant immediately preceding), as :—

manecō, ēre, mānsī (*remain*).      jubeō, ēre, jussī (*order*).

scribō, ere, scripsī (*write*).      dūcō, ere, dūxī (*lead*).

mittō, ere, misi (*send*).      regō, ere, rēxī (*rule*).

gerō, ere, gessi (*conduct*).      sentiō, ire, sēnsī (*feel*).

(4) The perfect in **-ī**, as :—

dēfendō, ere, dēfendī      cōstituō, ere, cōstitutī  
(*defend*).      (*determine*).

Sometimes accompanied by reduplication, as :—

dō, dare, dedī (*give*).      cadō, ere, cecidī (*fall*).

Sometimes accompanied by vowel lengthening, as :—

juvō, āre, jūvī (*aid*).      moveō, ēre, mōvī (*move*).

videō, ēre, vidī (*see*).      legō, ere, lēgī (*read*).

agō, ere, ēgī (*do*).      veniō, ire, vēnī (*come*).

106. Notice especially that—

α. No one of the four methods of forming the perfect is restricted to one conjugation ; nor does any conjugation use only one method. It will be found, however, that in the first and fourth conjugations, the perfect in **-vī** is most frequent ; in the second conjugation, the perfect in **-uī** ; in the third conjugation, the perfect in **-sī** or in **-ī**.

- b. Though the methods of formation are so various, yet all perfects have the same personal endings, viz.,

-ī	-imus
-istī	-istis
-it	-ērunt

107.

Paradigms.

## PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

*First Conj.   Second Conj.   Third Conj.   Fourth Conj.*

## SINGULAR.

1. amāvī	monuī	rēxī	audīvī
2. amāvistī	monuistī	rēxistī	audīvistī
3. amāvit	monuit	rēxit	audīvit

## PLURAL.

1. amāvimus	monuimus	rēximus	audīvimus
2. amāvistis	monuistis	rēxistis	audīvistis
3. amāvērunt	monuērunt	rēxērunt	audīvērunt



Agmen : Soldiers on the March.

108.

VOCABULARY.

cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, <i>learn.</i>	mittō, ere, mīsī, <i>send.</i>
cōgō, ere, coēgī, <i>collect.</i>	moveō, ēre, mōvī, <i>move.</i>
compleō, ēre, complēvī, <i>fill.</i>	petō, ere, petīvī, <i>ask, seek.</i>
contendō, ere, contendī, <i>hasten.</i>	pōnō, ere, posuī, <i>place.</i>
dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, <i>defend.</i>	relinquō, ere, relīquī, <i>leave.</i>
discēdō, ere, discessī, <i>withdraw.</i>	respondeō, ēre, respondī, <i>reply.</i>
dō, dare, dedī, <i>give.</i>	trādō, ere, trādidī, <i>surrender.</i>
dūcō, ere, dūxī, <i>lead.</i>	veniō, īre, vēnī, <i>come.</i>
gerō, ere, gessī, <i>wage.</i>	videō, ēre, vīdī, <i>see.</i>

N.B.—The perfect active stem is got by omitting *-ī* of the first person singular as given in the vocabulary.

EXERCISES.

109.

I.

1. Gessimus, gessērunt. 2. Trādidit, trādidistī.  
3. Mīsī, mīsistī. 4. Mōvit, relīquit, relinquit. 5. Con-  
vēnērunt, vīdērunt. 6. Coēgimus, cōgimus, disces-  
simus, discēdimus. 7. Respondet, respondit. 8. Movē-  
mus, mōvimus. 9. Venīmus, vēnimus. 10. Dēfenditis,  
contendistis, dēfendistis.

II.

1. He has sent, we sent. 2. They have sought, you  
have sought. 3. I placed, you have placed. 4. We  
have given, we have filled. 5. You left, you have  
learned. 6. They surrendered, they withdrew. 7. He  
sees, he saw. 8. We defend, we have defended.  
9. They are collecting, they have collected. 10. They  
have lands, they have had lands.

## 110.

## WORD LIST II.

## NOUNS: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

ager ✓	frūmentum	liberī	praesidium
arma	hīberna	numerus	proelium
auxilium	impedimentum	oppidum	puella
bellum	imperium	periculum	puer
castra	inopia ✓	populus	signum
cōsilium			vir

## NOUNS: THIRD DECLENSION.

agmen ✓	iter	mūnitiō	prīnceps
Caesar	latus ✓	obses	rēx
eques	legiō ✓	opus	salūs
explōrātor	māgnitūdō	palūs	virtūs
flūmen	mīles ✓	pāx ✓	vulnus ✓
homō	multitūdō	pecus	

## ADJECTIVES.

altus	lātus	māgnus	parvus
crēber	liber	multus	paucī
integer	longus		reliquus

## VERBS: FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

appellō	expūgnō	obtineō	oppūgnō
dēspērō	exspectō	occupō	postulō

## VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

audiō	dēfendō	mittō	redūcō
cōgnōscō	discēdō	mūniō	relinquō
cōgō	dūcō	petō	trādō
contendō	gerō	pōnō	veniō
conveniō	impediō		





THE PANTHEON.



INTERIOR OF THE PANTHEON.



## READING LESSON III.

## THE SEIZURE OF THE SABINE MAIDENS.

111.

## VOCABULARY.

**mulier**, -eris, f., *woman*.**Sabīnī**, ōrum, m., *the Sabines*, a tribe living near Rome.

Prīmō (*at first*) Rōma māgnūm numerum virōrum habēbat sed (*but*) paucās mulierēs. Propter inopiam mulierum Rōmulus, rēx Rōmānōrum, hōc (*this*) cōnsilium cēpit (*adopted*). Incolās multōrum oppidōrum ad lūdōs (*games*) convocāvit. Māgna multitudō Sabīnōrum cum mulieribus liberisque convēnit. Dum (*while*) Sabīnī in agrīs lūdōs spectant (*are watching*), subitō (*suddenly*) Rōmulus signum Rōmānīs dat. Rōmānī ad mulierēs contendunt, et multās filiās Sabīnōrum in mūnitiōnēs portant. Tum (*then*) prīncipēs Sabīnōrum lēgātōs ad Rōmulum mīsērunt et filiās postulāvērunt, sed Rōmānī praedam nōn trādidērunt. Itaque (*therefore*) propter māgnitudinem injūriae, Sabīnī bellum cum populō Rōmānō gessērunt, et auxilium ab reliquīs incolīs Italiae petīvērunt.

Prīmō cōpiae Rōmānōrum Sabīnōs superāvērunt; multōs hominēs necāvērunt, et pecora frūmentumque abripuērunt (*carried off*), et multa oppida expūgnāvērunt. Sed post multa proelia, Tarpeia, puella Rōmāna, portam explōrātōribus Sabīnōrum prōdidit (*betrayed*). Sabīnī per portam māgnās cōpiās in mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum mīsērunt. Rōmānī et Sabīnī ācritēr (*fiercely*) pūgnant, et proelium diū (*for a long time*) est dubium (*undecided*). Subitō filiae Sabīnōrum inter mīlitēs contendunt; nōn sine māgnō periculō cōpiās ā proeliō retinent; Sabīnōs et Rōmānōs ad pācem et amicitiam vocant. Itaque

militēs arma dēposuērunt (*laid aside*) ; et Rōmulus pācem et amicitiam cum principibus Sabīnōrum cōfirmāvit. Sabīnī ex suis (*their own*) oppidīs vicisque discēdunt et cum Rōmānīs habitant. Ita (*thus*) Rōma numerum incolārum duplicat (*doubles*).

(Tarpeia was punished for her treachery. She bargained with the Sabine leader that for reward she should receive what the soldiers wore on their left arms, meaning their gold bracelets. They, however, either mistaking her meaning or despising her treason, threw upon her the heavy shields which also they wore on their left arms. The weight of these soon crushed her to death.)



Arma : Arms.



## LESSON XIX.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

112. Adjectives of the third declension are classified as adjectives of one, two or three terminations, according to the number of forms used in the nominative singular for the different genders.

Adjectives of three terminations end in **-er**, m., **-ris**, f., **-re**, n., and are all declined like **ācer**; adjectives of two terminations end in **-is**, m. and f., **-e**, n., and are all declined like **fortis**; adjectives of one termination for the most part end in **-s** or in **-x**, m., f., n., and are declined like **prūdēns** and **fēlix** respectively.

## 113. Paradigms.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

(a) *ācer*, sharp.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

(b) *fortis, brave.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MAS. & FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortium</i>	<i>fortium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fortem</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fortēs</i>	<i>fortia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortī</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>

(c) *fēlix, happy.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>

(d) *prūdēns, prudent.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdentēs</i>	<i>prūdentia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>prūdentis</i>	<i>prūdentis</i>	<i>prūdentium</i>	<i>prūdentium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>prūdentī</i>	<i>prūdentī</i>	<i>prūdentibus</i>	<i>prūdentibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>prūdentem</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdentēs</i>	<i>prūdentia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdentēs</i>	<i>prūdentia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>prūdentī</i>	<i>prūdentī</i>	<i>prūdentibus</i>	<i>prūdentibus</i>

114. (a) Observe carefully the case-endings of these adjectives as compared with the case-endings of the nouns of the third declension, given in 86 and 94. In which cases are the endings identical in noun and adjective? In which cases are the endings different?

(b) Notice, further, that Latin vocabularies give the nominative only of adjectives of two or three terminations, but the nominative and genitive of adjectives of one termination. See 115.

115.

VOCABULARY.

commūnis, e,	<i>common, general, public.</i>
du-plex, -plicis,	<i>twofold, double.</i>
eques-ter, -tris, -tre,	<i>of cavalry, cavalry.</i>
incolumis, e,	<i>safe, unharmed, intact.</i>
omnis, e,	<i>all.</i>
pār, paris,	<i>equal.</i>
ped-es, -itis, m.,	<i>foot-soldier; in plur., infantry.</i>
pedes-ter, -tris, tre,	<i>of infantry, infantry.</i>
pēs, pedis, m.,	<i>foot.</i>
rec-ēns, -entis,	<i>new, recent.</i>

EXERCISES.

116.

I.

1. Translate the following phrases\* : — Commūnis salūs, commūne cōsilium, duplex fossa, duplex mūrus, equestre proelium, omnēs Gallī, omnis Gallia, omnia arma, omnēs peditēs, omnēs pedēs, incolumis legiō, pār numerus, pedestrēs cōpiae, recēns injūria, recēns victōria.

II.

1. Animōs omnium sociōrum cōfīrmat. 2. Peditēs omnia arma equitibus trādidērunt. 3. Dē commūnī salūte dēspērāvimus. 4. Cum pedestribus cōpiīs salūtem fugā † petīvit. 5. Parem numerum pedum omnēs hominēs habent. 6. Omnēs peditēs trāns duplicem fossam dūcēbat. 7. Propter recentēs injūriās Gallōrum

---

\* These phrases all occur in Exercises II. and III. These and similar combinations should be given the pupil for practice in declension.

† Translate **fugā** here by *in flight* (literally, *by means of flight*).

obsidēs postulāvit. 8. Cum incolumī legiōne ex oppidō discessī. 9. Ante equestre proelium auxilium ā prīncipibus petīvit. 10. Pedestrēs cōpiās in omnibus oppidīs collocat.

## III.

1. They have fortified the camp with a double wall. 2. He does not see the danger of a cavalry battle. 3. He has learned the common plan of all the Gauls. 4. All came safe through the marshes. 5. Caesar has terrified all Gaul by (his) recent victory. 6. With an equal number of foot-soldiers and auxiliaries he was laying waste all the lands. 7. He hastens into Italy without (his) forces of infantry. 8. He replied to all the messengers. 9. They wounded the soldier's foot and side. 10. After the cavalry battles they sent envoys to treat for peace.

## LESSON XX.

## Sum: PRESENT INDICATIVE.

117.

## Paradigm.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *sum*.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

1. *sum*, *I am*.1. *sumus*, *we are*.2. *es*, *thou art, you are*.2. *estis*, *you are*.3. *est*, *he (she or it) is*.3. *sunt*, *they are*.

- a. How far do the personal endings agree with those already learned? (The stem is *es-*, from which, in certain forms, *e* is omitted.)
- b. Review 54 and 64 on the agreement of a predicate noun or adjective with the subject.



118.

## Illustrative Examples.

*Iter est per prōvinciam, there is a road through the province.*  
*Sunt itinera per silvam, there are roads through the forest.*  
*Nōn est cōpia frūmentī, there is not a supply of grain.*

- a. Note that Latin has no equivalent for the unemphatic introductory word *there*; the subject (which in English is transposed) is, of course, in the nominative case.

119. Hitherto the imperfect indicative has been translated quite differently from the perfect indicative; as,

*dūcēbat, . he was leading, he used to lead;*

*dūxit, he led, he has led;*

*appellābat, he was calling, he used to call;*

*appellāvit, he called, he has called.*

But in such a sentence as *He led his forces annually against the enemy*, it is clear that *he led* has the force of *he used to lead*, and the Latin equivalent would therefore be *dūcēbat*, not *dūxit*.

So in the sentence *They called the island Britain*, if the meaning is that they were in the habit of so calling it, we should use *appellābant*, but *appellāvērunt* should be used if the sentence refers to the first naming of the island.

The English past tense, therefore, when used to express what was habitual or repeated, will be translated by the Latin imperfect indicative; when used merely to state that something happened in past time, by the Latin perfect indicative.

## 120.

## VOCABULARY.

aequus, a, um, <i>fair, right.</i>	inimicus, a, um, <i>unfriendly,</i>
amicus, a, um, <i>friendly.</i>	<i>hostile.</i>
certus, a, um, <i>fixed, certain.</i>	iniquus, a, um, <i>unfair,</i>
fortis, e, <i>brave.</i>	<i>unjust.</i>
gravis, e, <i>heavy, severe,</i>	jubeō, ēre, jussī, <i>order.</i>
<i>serious.</i>	levis, e, <i>light, slight,</i>
idōneus, a, um, <i>fit, suitable.</i>	<i>unimportant.</i>

N.B.—Notice the use of the prefix **in-** to negative the meaning of the adjective to which it is joined ; so also **incertus**, *uncertain*, and **impār**, *unequal*.

## EXERCISES.

## 121.

## I.

1. Belgae sunt fortēs. 2. Amīcī sumus. 3. Nōn inimicus es. 4. Locus nōn est idōneus. 5. Acquum est. 6. Māgnō in periculō estis. 7. Castra parva sunt. 8. Flūmen est inter equitēs et castra. 9. Īnsula ad Galliam spectābat. 10. Oppidum occupāvimus ; oppida tenēbāmus. 11. Jubēmus, jubēbāmus, jussimus. 12. Equestria proelia sunt levia. 13. Grave est bellum. 14. Rēx sum. 15. Oppida mūrīs et fossīs mūniēbant. 16. Certum numerum mīlitum mīsistī. 17. Fossa est ante oppidum. 18. Imperium Caesarī, virō fortī et idōneō, dedērunt. 19. Cōsilium est inīquum. 20. In Galliā sunt vicī et oppida. 21. Imperium obtinēbat.

## II.

1. The men are brave and free. 2. The danger is slight. 3. The wounds are serious. 4. you are brave soldiers. 5. You are the king's daughter. 6. There is

great danger. 7. You are a leading man of the Britons. 8. You are leading. 9. They had lands across the river in Gaul. 10. The Britons dwelt in villages. 11. He ordered ; he orders. 12. They were hastening. 13. There is a scarcity of grain. 14. The troops are fresh. 15. Victory is certain. 16. The camp is in a suitable place. 17. They brought their grain into the towns. 18. He named the town Rome ; they called the inhabitants Romans. 19. There are brave men in the legion. 20. It is unfair. 21. The garrisons are equal.

---

## LESSON XXI.

### PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

122. The formation of the present infinitive in each of the four conjugations and in the irregular verb **sum** may be learned from the following paradigms.

#### Paradigms.

##### PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

<i>First Conjugation.</i>	<b>amāre,</b> <i>to love.</i>
<i>Second Conjugation.</i>	<b>monēre,</b> <i>to advise.</i>
<i>Third Conjugation.</i>	<b>regere,</b> <i>to rule.</i>
<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>	<b>audīre,</b> <i>to hear.</i>
<i>Irregular Verb sum.</i>	<b>esse,</b> <i>to be.</i>

a. Notice that it is the present infinitive endings that are given in vocabularies, in order to show to which of the conjugations a verb belongs.

## 123.

## Illustrative Examples.

- Locum oppugnāre contendit, *he hastens to attack the place.*  
 Cōpiās locum tenēre jubet, *he orders the troops to hold  
 the place.*  
 Discēdere contendunt, *they hasten to depart.*  
 Sociōs jubent convenīre, *they order the allies to as-  
 semble.*

- a.* In each of these sentences notice how one verb completes the meaning of the other. The form so used is in Latin, as in English, the infinitive.  
*b.* In the first and third sentences the infinitive has the same subject as the principal verb. In the second and fourth sentences the subjects of the two verbs are different, and that of the infinitive is in the accusative case.  
*c.* The infinitive used in this way is called the *Complementary Infinitive*. Usually it precedes the governing verb, and is itself preceded by its subject and object (if expressed).

**Rule.**—The subject of the infinitive, when separately expressed, is put in the accusative.

## 124.

## Illustrative Examples.

- Aequum est respondēre, *it is right to reply.*  
 Nōn aequum est Gallōs bellum gerere, *it is not right for  
 the Gauls to wage war.*

- a.* In these sentences notice (1) that the infinitive is used as the subject of the verb **est**, (2) that neither the introductory *for* nor the representative subject *it* is expressed in Latin by a separate word, and (3) that the predicate adjective modifying the subject infinitive is neuter.



125.

## VOCABULARY.

audeō, ēre,	venture, dare.
coepī* (used in the perfect tenses only),	began.
cōgō, ere, coēgī,*	compel, force.
cōstit-uō, ere, -uī,	determine.
cotīdiē (adverb),	daily, every day.
difficilis, e,	difficult, hard.
facilis, e,	easy.
per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī,	influence; alarm.
perterreō, ēre, uī,	terrify, frighten.
per-veniō, īre, -vēnī,	come.

*Phrases :* perveniō ad or in with acc., arrive at, reach.  
discēdō ab with abl., leave.

N.B.—In compounds **per** has the force of (1) *through*, and (2) more frequently of *thoroughly, completely*.

## EXERCISES.

126.

## I.

1. Bellum gerere cōstituunt; bellum cum populō Rōmānō gerere nōn audēmus. 2. Ab signīs discēdebant; milītēs ab signīs discēdere coepērunt. 3. Difficile est Rōmānōs perterrere. 4. Frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra comportābant. 5. Ad flūmen pervenīmus; ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnimus. 6. Nōn aequum est Gallōs agrōs sociōrum vāstare. 7. Lēgātum cum omnibus equitibus locum tenere iussit. 8. Britannōs arma trādere coēgit et obsidēs dare. 9. Nōn facile est Caesarem permovere. 10. Prīcipēs cotīdiē ad Caesarem veniēbant.

---

\* In **coepī**, **oe** is a diphthong; in **coēgī**, **o** and **e** belong to different syllables.

## II.

1. The cavalry began to lay waste the lands of the allies. 2. Daily, with all (his) cavalry, Caesar laid waste the lands of the Britons. 3. They determined to send ambassadors to treat for peace; the envoys reached the camp. 4. I determined to hasten to seek safety by flight. 5. It is difficult for the scouts to find out the road. 6. He ordered the soldiers to leave the fortifications. 7. It is not easy to compel the legions to be obedient. 8. We began to be in great danger. 9. It terrifies the chief men; it does not influence the king. 10. They did not venture to pitch (their) camp on the bank of the river.

## LESSON XXII.

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

127.

## Illustrative Examples.

<b>Pūgnāvī,</b> <i>I have fought.</i>	<b>Pūgnāveram,</b> <i>I had fought.</i>
<b>Mīsī,</b> <i>I have sent.</i>	<b>Miserās,</b> <i>you (s.) had sent.</i>
<b>Jussī,</b> <i>I have ordered.</i>	<b>Jusserat,</b> <i>he had ordered.</i>
<b>Vēnī,</b> <i>I have come.</i>	<b>Vēnerāmus,</b> <i>we had come.</i>
<b>Dedī,</b> <i>I have given.</i>	<b>Dederātis,</b> <i>you (pl.) had given.</i>
<b>Tenuī,</b> <i>I have held.</i>	<b>Tenuerant,</b> <i>they had held.</i>

a. In the forms given in the second column of Latin words, notice (1) the personal endings, (2) the new element **-era-** added to the perfect stem in each form, (3) the translation by means of *had*. This tense is known as the Pluperfect Indicative Active.\*

---

\* The Latin pluperfect is equivalent to the English past perfect (or pluperfect), and is used to mark an act as completed or taking place before some point in past time mentioned or implied.

128.

Paradigms.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

*First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.*  
SINGULAR.

1.	amāveram	monueram	rēxeram	audīveram
2.	amāverās	monuerās	rēxerās	audīverās
3.	amāverat	monuerat	rēxerat	audīverat

PLURAL.

1.	amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rēxerāmus	audīverāmus
2.	amāverātis	monuerātis	rēxerātis	audīverātis
3.	amāverant	monuerant	rēxerant	audīverant

129.

Paradigms.

PERFECT OF <b>sum.</b>		PLUPERFECT OF <b>sum.</b>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
1. fuī	fuimus	fueram	fuerāmus
2. fuistī	fuistis	fuerās	fuerātis
3. fuit	fuērunt	fuerat	fuerant

130.

VOCABULARY.

altitū-dō, -dinis, f., *height, depth.*

com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, *send or bring together.*

dexter, tra, trum, *right.*

fortitū-dō, -dinis. f., *bravery.*

lātītū-dō, -dinis, f., *width.*

littera, ae, f., *letter* (of alphabet); in plural, *a despatch, a letter, or despatches, letters.*

longitū-dō, -dinis, f., *length.*

māgnitū-dō, -dinis, f., *greatness, extent, size.*

multitū-dō, -dinis, f., *large number, amount.*

sinister, tra, trum, *left.*

*Phrase: proelium committō, join (or begin) battle, engage.*

N.B.—The suffix -tūdō is used to form from adjectives abstract nouns denoting quality or condition. It appears in English in the form *-tude*.

## EXERCISES.

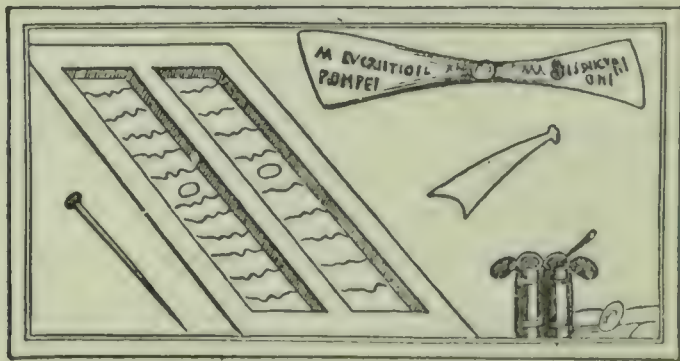
131.

I.

1. Iter cōgnōverant. 2. Litterās mīseram. 3. Cotīdiē litterās ad Caesarem mittēbāmus. 4. Cōpiās proelium committere jusserat. 5. Proelium equestre commiserātis. 6. Legiōnem ā dextrō latere oppugnāverant. 7. Sinistrum latus vulnerās ; dextrum latus vulnerāverās. 8. Cum fortitūdine pugnāvērunt ; māgnā cum fortitūdine pugnāverant. 9. Propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem oppidum oppugnāre nōn audēbāmus. 10. Māgnā cum multitūdine equitum bellum gesserās. 11. Cōpiīs cotīdiē imperat ; prīncipibus imperāverat. 12. Ex nūntiīs litterisque māgnitudinem periculī cōgnōverant. 13. Rēx fuerat ; amīcī fuistis.

II.

1. He has hastened ; he had hastened. 2. They were pitching (their) camp ; they had pitched (their) camp. 3. We had collected a large number of men. 4. You had compelled the men to surrender (their) arms. 5. On account of the depth of the river we had not reached the island. 6. The chief man we called king. 7. They



Writing Implements and Materials.



had grain and cattle; they had had an abundance of grain and cattle. 8. They had begun to join battle on the left flank. 9. The scouts had learned the length of the right side of the camp. 10. It is not right to surrender (one's) arms; we had surrendered (our) arms. 11. From despatches I had found out about the width of the river Rhine. 12. On account of the extent of the marshes we had determined to leave the place.

### LESSON XXIII.

#### FOURTH DECLENSION.

132. Nouns of the fourth declension have their genitive singular in **-ūs**. Most nouns of this declension end in **-us** in the nominative singular and are masculine; a few end in **-ū** and are neuter.

#### 133. Paradigms.

##### FOURTH DECLENSION.

##### SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	frūctus ( <i>fruit</i> )	<b>-us</b>	cornū ( <i>horn</i> )	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	frūctūs	<b>-ūs</b>	cornūs	<b>-ūs</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	frūctui	<b>-ui</b>	cornū	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	frūctum	<b>-um</b>	cornū	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	frūctus	<b>-us</b>	cornū	<b>-ū</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	frūctū	<b>-ū</b>	cornū	<b>-ū</b>

##### PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	frūctūs	<b>-ūs</b>	cornua	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	frūctuum	<b>-uum</b>	cornuum	<b>-uum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	frūctibus	<b>-ibus</b>	cornibus	<b>-ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	frūctūs	<b>-ūs</b>	cornua	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	frūctūs	<b>-ūs</b>	cornua	<b>-ua</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	frūctibus	<b>-ibus</b>	cornibus	<b>-ibus</b>

## 134.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>adventus</b> , ūs, m., <i>arrival,</i> <i>approach.</i>	<b>exercitus</b> , ūs, m., <i>army.</i>
<b>cornū</b> , ūs, n., <i>horn</i> ; (of an army), <i>wing.</i>	<b>lacus</b> , ūs, m., <i>lake.</i>
<b>discessus</b> , ūs, m., <i>departure,</i> <i>withdrawal.</i>	<b>peditātus</b> , ūs, m., <i>infantry.</i>
<b>equitātus</b> , ūs, m., <i>cavalry.</i>	<b>portus</b> , ūs, m., <i>harbour.</i>
	<b>prīncipātus</b> , ūs, m., <i>leader-</i> <i>ship.</i>
	<b>senātus</b> , ūs, m., <i>senate.</i>

N.B.—**Equitātus** and **peditātus** are collective nouns, used in the singular with the same meaning as the plurals **equitēs** and **peditēs**.

## EXERCISES.

## 135.

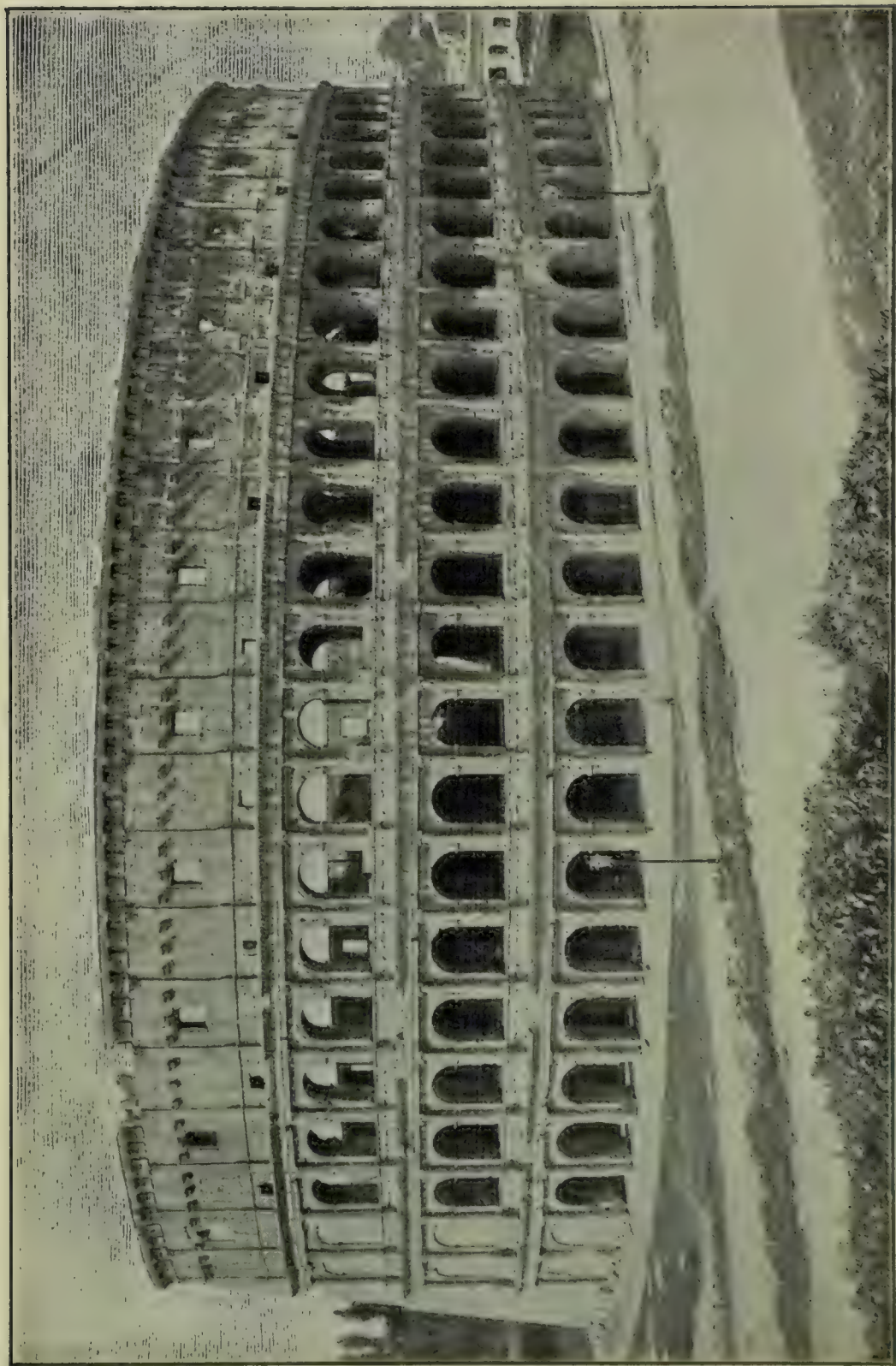
## I.

1. Omnem senātum convenīre jussit. 2. Lēgātōs ab omnibus exercitibus convenīre jusserat. 3. In dextrō cornū omnem equitātum collocat. 4. Ā lacū ad ōceanum contenderāmus. 5. Caesarī prīncipātum et imperium trādunt. 6. Cum omnibus cōpiis peditātus equitātusque ad portum pervēnī. 7. Dē adventū Caesaris cōgnōverāmus. 8. Post discessum exercitūs litterās ad senātum mīsit. 9. Cum equitātū proelium commiserant. 10. Dē māgnitūdine portuum cōgnōscit.

## II.

1. We hastened from the harbour to the lake. 2. The plunder he had given to the cavalry. 3. With the rest of the infantry he hastened to the right wing. 4. Few harbours are suitable. 5. We had determined to await Caesar's arrival. 6. He slew the leading men and all the senate. 7. He holds the leadership of Gaul. 8. He found out through scouts about the departure of the armies. 9. He gave orders daily to the armies. 10. All had come safe to the harbours.





THE COLOSSEUM OR FLAVIAN AMPHITHEATRE.



## 136.

## WORD LIST B.

## ABSTRACT NOUNS.

plenty	number	safety	bravery
scarcity	extent	peace	valour
length	amount	friendship	spirit
width	arrival	wrongdoing	leadership
height	departure	nature	design
depth			aid

## MISCELLANEOUS NOUNS.

river	marsh	king	man
lake	road	chief	cattle
harbour	territory	senate	work

## WAR : NOUNS.

army	scout	baggage
legion	auxiliaries	standard
soldier	right wing	arms
foot-soldier	left wing	fortification
horse-soldier	flank	winter quarters
infantry	column	cavalry battle
cavalry	march	wound

## MILITARY PHRASES.

pitch a camp	send despatch	ask aid
leave (a place)	await reinforcements	seize
reach (a place)	demand hostages	hold command
hinder the march	surrender hostages	defend
learn the plans	come to treat for	join battle
give the signal	peace	lead back
by forced marches	establish friendship	fresh troops

## VERBS WITH COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

order	venture	determine
began	compel	hasten

## ADJECTIVES.

large	many	easy	safe
small	few	hard	suitable
high	all	heavy	brave
long	remaining	light	free
wide	frequent	fair	double
deep	fixed	unfair	new

## READING LESSON IV.

## THE BATTLE OF THE HORATII AND THE CURIATII.

137.

## VOCABULARY.

Albānī, ōrum, m., *the Albans*, the people of Alba.

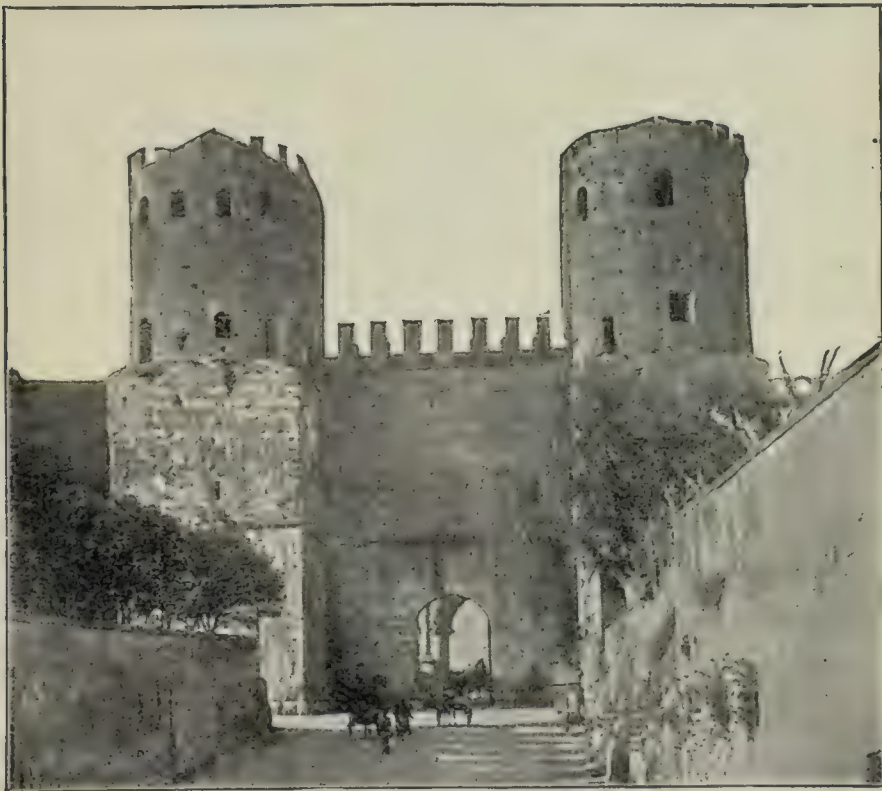
frā-ter, -tris, m., *brother*.

sed, conjunction, *but*.

Diū (*for a long time*) fuerant Albānī et Rōmānī amīcī. Sed Tullus Hostīlius, tertius (*third*) rēx Rōmānōrum, propter levēs injūriās bellum cum Albānīs gerere cōstituit, et māgnās cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque contrā Albānōs mīsīt. Prīncipēs Albānōrum, ubi (*when*) dē cōsiliō rēgis cōgnōvērunt, cōpiās omnēs convenīre jussērunt et sociōs cōgere coepērunt. Exercitūs nōndum (*not yet*) proelium commiserant, cum (*when*) nūntius ā senātū Albānōrum ad rēgem Tullum vēnit. “Tulle,” inquit (*said*) nūntius, “mē (*me*) mīsērunt Albānī. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī petimus, sed adventus exercitūs Rōmānī nōn nōs (*us*) perterret. Nōn dē victōriā dēspērāmus. Difficile est liberum populum superāre; māgnās cōpiās equestrēs pedestrēsque habēmus, et milītēs Albānōrum fortēs integrīque sunt. Sed nōn aequum est multōs amīcōs necāre propter injūriās paucōrum inimicōrum (*enemies*).”

Tullus nūntium audīvit et respondit, “ Inīquum est, et omnēs incolae Ītaliae amīcī esse dēbent (*ought*). Sed populus Rōmānus prīncipātum et imperium omnis Italiae obtinēre cōstituit, et Albānī liberī esse cōstituērunt neque (*and not*) imperiō populī Rōmānī pārēre. Sed facile est exercitūs ā procliō revocāre et parvum numerum mīlitum jubēre prō (*on behalf of, prep. with abl. case*) reliquīs dē prīncipātū pūgnāre.” Hōc (*this*) cōnsilium Albānī probāvērunt (*approved*). In exercitū Rōmānōrum fuērunt trēs (*three*) fortēs frātēs, quōs (*whom*) appellābant Horātiōs. Hōs (*these*) Tullus jussit prō reliquīs Rōmānīs pūgnāre. Albānī parem numerum frātrum dēlēgērunt (*chose*), quōs appellābant Cūriātiōs.

(Concluded in 163.)



**Murus et Porta : City Wall and Gate.**  
*The Porta Appia in the Aurelian Wall, Rome.*

## LESSON XXIV.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS. PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

138. (a) The Principal Parts of a Latin verb are certain forms from which, as starting points, the whole verb may be inflected. In the regular Latin verb the Principal Parts are four in number, three of which have already been met with in the preceding lessons (namely, the present indicative active, the present infinitive active and the perfect indicative active).

(b) The four Principal Parts of the model verbs of the several conjugations are as follows :—

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<b>amō</b>	<b>amāre</b>	<b>amāvī</b>	<b>amātum</b>
<i>Conj. II.</i>	<b>moneō</b>	<b>monēre</b>	<b>monuī</b>	<b>monitum</b>
<i>Conj. III.</i>	<b>regō</b>	<b>regere</b>	<b>rēxī</b>	<b>rēctum</b>
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	<b>audiō</b>	<b>audīre</b>	<b>audīvī</b>	<b>audītum</b>

The first and second of these principal parts give the *present* stem and the conjugation; the third gives the *perfect* stem, from which the perfect active system is formed; the last gives the *participial* stem (or, as it is also called, the *supine* stem), from which the perfect passive system is formed.

## 139.

## Illustrative Examples.

<b>Amātus sum,</b>	<i>I have been loved,</i>	or	<i>I was loved.</i>
<b>Amātus es,</b>	<i>you (s.) have been loved,</i>	or	<i>you were loved.</i>
<b>Amātus est,</b>	<i>he has been loved,</i>	or	<i>he was loved.</i>
<b>Amātī sumus,</b>	<i>we have been loved,</i>	or	<i>we were loved.</i>
<b>Amātī estis,</b>	<i>you (pl.) have been loved,</i>	or	<i>you were loved.</i>
<b>Amātī sunt,</b>	<i>they have been loved,</i>	or	<i>they were loved.</i>

Similarly,

<b>Monitus sum,</b>	<i>I have been advised,</i>	or	<i>I was advised.</i>
<b>Rēctus sum,</b>	<i>I have been ruled,</i>	or	<i>I was ruled.</i>
<b>Audītus sum,</b>	<i>I have been heard,</i>	or	<i>I was heard.</i>



a. In these compound forms (known as the Perfect Indicative Passive) observe (1) the relation of the first element in each to the principal parts in 138; (2) the use of the present indicative of **sum** to complete the form; (3) the twofold translation. Compare the twofold translation of the perfect indicative active (101).

140.

Illustrative Examples.

*Fīlia monita est, the daughter was advised.*  
*Auditum est, it has been heard.*  
*Cōpiaē collocātae sunt, the troops were stationed.*  
*Oppida fīrmāta sunt, the towns have been strengthened.*

a. Observe how the form (known as the Perfect Participle Passive) which is combined with the verb **sum** to make the perfect indicative passive, changes in gender and number to agree with the subject.

141. There are no uniform or regular ways of forming the perfect indicative passive from either the present or the perfect stem, and recourse must be had to the fourth of the principal parts. But, as a rule, verbs whose perfect active ends in **-āvī** have **-ātus sum**,

"	"	"	"	"	"	<b>-īvī</b>	"	<b>-ītus sum</b> ,
"	"	"	"	"	"	<b>-uī</b>	"	<b>-itus sum</b> ,
"	"	"	"	"	"	<b>-sī or -ī</b>	"	<b>-tus* sum</b> .

The vocabulary which follows gives the principal parts of the most important verbs which have occurred in the previous lessons. Compounds (like **redūcō** and **committō**) are like the simple verbs. For other words the pupil is referred to the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

---

\* Where the verb stem ends in a consonant, **-tus** often becomes **-sus** or **-xus**.

## 142.

## VOCABULARY.

*First Conjugation.*

The verbs hitherto used, like **amō**, have **-ō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**.

But **dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, **datum**.

*Second Conjugation.*

**Habeō** and **terreō**, like **moneō**, have **-eō**, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum**.

But **compleō**, **ēre**, **complēvī**, **complētum**,

**jubeō**, **ēre**, **jussī**, **jussum**,

**moveō**, **ēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**,

**videō**, **ēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsum**.

*Third Conjugation.*

**Cōgnōscō**, **ere**, **cōgnōvī**, **cōgnitum**,

**cōgō**, **ere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum**,

**dūcō**, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**,

**gerō**, **ere**, **gessī**, **gestum**,

**mittō**, **ere**, **mīsī**, **missum**,

**petō**, **ere**, **petīvī**, **petitum**,

**pōnō**, **ere**, **posuī**, **positum**,

**relinquō**, **ere**, **relīquī**, **relictum**,

**trādō**, **ere**, **trādidī**, **trāditum**.

*Fourth Conjugation.*

**Mūniō** and **impediō**, like **audiō**, have **-iō**, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-itum**.

But **veniō**, **īre**, **vēnī**, **ventum**.

## EXERCISES.

143. (a) *On Conjugations I. and II.*

## I.

1. Oppidum occupātum est. 2. Agrī vāstātī sunt.
3. Militēs perterritī sunt. 4. Signum datum est. 5. Belgae superātī sunt. 6. Fossa complēta est. 7. Vulnerātus sum. 8. Servī venīre jussī sunt. 9. Servōs

venire jussī. 10. Revocātī estis ; territa es. 11. Convocātī sumus. 12. Proelia nūntiāta sunt. 13. Hiberna expūgnāta sunt. 14. Equus vulnerātus est. 15. Eques vulnerātus est. 16. Virī vīsī sunt. 17. Castra mōta sunt. 18. Britannī permōtī sunt. 19. Remōtae sumus. 20. Oppida oppūgnāta sunt.

## II.

1. The province has been laid waste. 2. The leading men have been called together. 3. The legions were recalled. 4. The army was terrified. 5. Hostages have been given. 6. The camp was filled. 7. We were seen. 8. You have been ordered. 9. The lands were seized. 10. They have been wounded. 11. The camp was moved. 12. The allies were alarmed. 13. The horse has been removed. 14. The cavalry were stationed. 15. The place (the town, the camp) was attacked. 16. The armies (the troops, the reinforcements) have been conquered.

(b) *On Conjugations III. and IV.*

## III.

1. Cōnsilia cōgnita sunt. 2. Bellum gestum est. 3. Hiberna mūnita sunt. 4. Cōpiae reductae sunt. 5. Multitūdō coācta est. 6. Missus sum ; missī estis. 7. Proelium commissum est. 8. Reducta es ; reductae sumus. 9. Audītum est ; hominēs audītī sunt. 10. Praesidium relīctum est ; legiōnēs relīctae sunt. 11. Rīpa mūnita est. 12. Obsidēs trāditī sunt. 13. Auxilium petītum est. 14. Exercitus ductus est ; exercitūs reductī sunt. 15. Iter impeditum est. 16. Auxilia missa sunt ; impedimenta missa sunt.

## IV.

1. Peace was sought. 2. The place has been fortified.  
 3. Scouts have been sent. 4. It has been ascertained.  
 5. Troops were collected. 6. The legions have been  
 led; I was led. 7. A letter was sent; letters were  
 sent; we were sent. 8. Wars have been waged. 9.  
 The plunder was left; the baggage was left. 10. The  
 arms have been surrendered. 11. The envoys were  
 heard. 12. You have been compelled. 13. The foot-  
 soldiers have been hindered. 14. Messengers were  
 sent. 15. The column was led back; the camp was  
 pitched. 16. The children were surrendered.

## LESSON XXV.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

144.

Illustrative Examples.

*Cōpiae agrōs vāstāvērunt, troops have laid waste the fields.*  
*Agrī ā cōpiīs vāstātī sunt, the fields have been laid waste by*  
*troops.*

*Caesar Gallōs superāvit, Caesar conquered the Gauls.*

*Gallī ā Caesare superātī sunt, the Gauls were conquered by*  
*Caesar.*

*a.* Observe that in changing to the passive voice (1) the *object* of the active verb becomes the *subject* of the passive verb, and (2) the *subject* of the active verb is expressed by the ablative case governed by the preposition *ā* (or *ab*).

This ablative is called the Ablative of the Agent.

*b.* In what other way also is the preposition *ā* or *ab* translated? (48).



145.

## Illustrative Examples.

Fossa aquā complēta est, *the trench was filled with water.*

Locus fossā mūnītus est, *the place was protected by a trench.*

Māgnitūdine periculī permōtī sunt, *they were influenced by the greatness of the danger.*

*a.* Observe how the ablative without a preposition is used to express that *by means of which* something is done. This is called the Ablative of the Means or Instrument. In English sometimes *by* and sometimes *with* is the preposition used.

*b.* In what other ways may *with* and *by* be translated into Latin? (47 and 144).

146.

## Illustrative Examples.

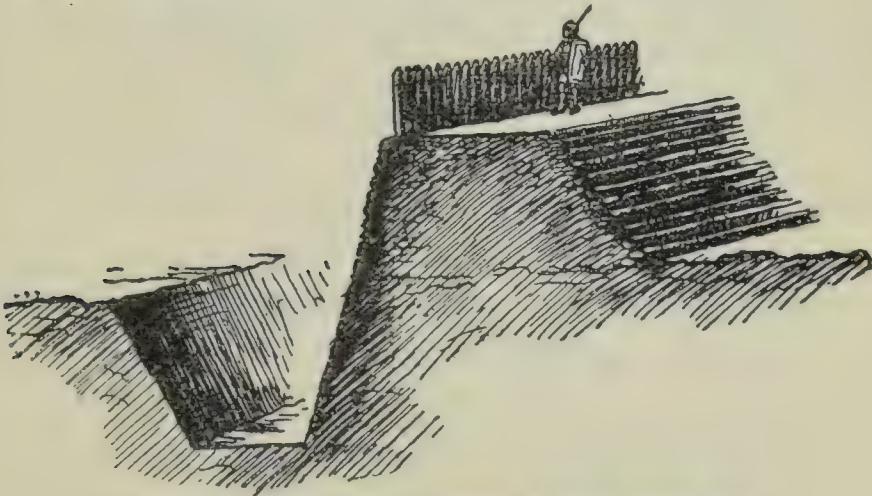
Britannia est īnsula, *Britain is an island.*

Īnsula Britannia appellāta est, *the island was called Britain.*

Māgnus appellābātur, *he was called great.*

Caesar rēx nōn factus est, *Caesar was not made king.*

(*a*) Observe that a predicate nominative (noun or adjective) may follow the passive voice of certain verbs, such as verbs of *calling*, *choosing*, *making* and *regarding*, as well as the verb *sum*. (Compare 54.)



Fossa et Vallum : Trench and Rampart.

## 147.

## VOCABULARY.

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum,	<i>give way, retire.</i>
com-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum,	<i>drive (together).</i>
con-cēdō, ere, -cessī, cessum,	<i>grant, yield.</i>
ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,	<i>lead out.</i>
ē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum,	<i>send out.</i>
ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum,	<i>withdraw.</i>
ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum,	<i>drive out.</i>
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum,	<i>drive, defeat.</i>
re-pellō, ere, reppulī, -pulsum,	<i>drive back, repulse.</i>
vāllum, ī, n.,	<i>wall, rampart.</i>

N.B.—Observe the use of *ē* or *ex* in compounds, with the force of *out*. Also note the difference in form between *pellō* and its compounds in the perfect active.

## EXERCISES.

## 148.

## I.

1. Obsidēs ā Gallīs Caesarī datī sunt ; obsidēs ā Galliā ad Ītaliā missī sunt. 2. Castra lātō vāllō et duplicī fossā ā mīlitibus mūnīta sunt. 3. Ab opere revocātus sum ; ā prīncipibus rēx appellātus es. 4. Ex silvīs ab equitibus expulsī sumus. 5. Altitudīne mūrōrum repulsī sumus. 6. Per servōs \* Caesar discessum Gallōrum cōgnōvit. 7. Ā Caesare per explōrātōrēs cōgnitum est. 8. Fugā sociōrum permōtī sunt. 9. Cōpiae pulsae sunt ; cēdere coāctae sunt. 10. Ā senātū multitudō hominum ex agrīs coācta est. 11. Jussī estis ā lēgātō ex proeliō excēdere. 12. Legiō longō itinere † ēducta est ; māgnīs itineribus ad ōceanum pervēnit. 13. Cum omnī equitātū ā rēge ēmissus est. 14. Praeda mīlitibus

\* *Per* with the accusative is frequently used to express the person *through* whom anything is done, that is, the *secondary agent*. It is so used with both the active and the passive voice.

† The *route by which* one goes is included under the Ablative of Means.

concessa est. 15. In flūmen ā Germānīs compulsī sunt. 16. Adventū cōpiārum perterrita est. 17. Jussus sum ā lēgātō omnēs cōpiās ex hibernīs ēdūcere.

## II.

1. Envoys were sent by Caesar ; they came from the province. 2. The walls were filled with men ; the trench was filled by the men. 3. They were terrified by the departure of the leading men. 4. They were driven back by the cavalry ; they were repulsed by the fortifications. 5. The troops repulsed the Britons from the ramparts. 6. The place was called Rome ; the inhabitants were called Romans. 7. The land was laid waste by the Germans. 8. We have been called friends by the senate of the Roman people. 9. We have been driven out of (our) lands by the senate and the Roman people. 10. The town was fortified by the inhabitants with a wall and a trench. 11. You were compelled by the king's son to grant land to all the leading men. 12. All the cattle have been driven out of the fields. 13. The cavalry were led out by the lieutenant. 14. He sent out the cavalry by the left gate. 15. We were not ordered by Caesar to retire with the rest of the army. 16. All the towns were taken by storm by the Roman armies. 17. We were alarmed by the scarcity of grain.

## LESSON XXVI.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF **Sum**. PLUPERFECT  
INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

149. The Imperfect Indicative of the irregular verb **sum** has not the **-ba-** which in the four regular conjugations is characteristic of that tense.

## Paradigm.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF **sum**.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. eram, <i>I was (I used to be).</i>	erāmus, <i>we were.</i>
2. erās, <i>you were.</i>	erātis, <i>you were.</i>
3. erat, <i>he (she or it) was.</i>	erant, <i>they were.</i>

150. Review the formation of the pluperfect indicative active (128) and of the perfect indicative passive (139) before learning the following paradigms of the pluperfect indicative passive.

## Paradigms.

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

*First Conjugation.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. amātus eram ( <i>I had been loved</i> )	amātī erāmus
2. " erās	" erātis
3. " erat	" erant

Similarly,

*Second Conjugation.*      monitus eram

*Third Conjugation.*      rēctus eram

*Fourth Conjugation.*      audītus eram

- a. How far does the pluperfect indicative passive resemble in form the pluperfect indicative active? How far does it resemble the perfect indicative passive? The changes in gender and number noted in 140 are found in the pluperfect tense also.

151.

## Illustrative Examples.

Missus est,      *he was (or has been) sent.*

Rōmānus est,      *he is a Roman.*

Jussī sunt,      *they were ordered.*

Fortēs sunt,      *they are brave.*

Missus erat,      *he had been sent.*

Rōmānus erat,      *he was a Roman.*



- a. Observe the difference in translation according as the predicate of the verb **sum** is the perfect participle passive or is an adjective or noun.

## 152.

## VOCABULARY.

ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,	<i>bring ; influence.</i>
circum-veniō, īre, -vērī, -ventum,	<i>surround.</i>
cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī,	<i>take up position, halt.</i>
dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>hesitate, have doubts.</i>
faciō, ere, fēcī, factum,	<i>do, make.</i>
impetus, ūs, m.,	<i>attack, onset.</i>
īn-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum,	<i>draw up, arrange.</i>
mīlitāris, e,	<i>military.</i>
sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,	<i>withstand, sustain, endure.</i>
ūsus, ūs, m.,	<i>experience.</i>

*Phrases :* **impetum faciō,\*** *make an attack.*  
**mīlitāris ūsus,** *experience in war.*

## EXERCISES.

## 153.

## I.

1. Pāx ā senātū facta erat ; senātus pācem fēcerat.
2. Locus erat idōneus ; locus idōneus mūnītus erat.
3. Proelium committere dubitāverātis.
4. Inopiā frūmentī adductus eram.
5. Mīlitārem ūsum habēbat.
6. Fossa erat ante oppidum.
7. Militēs in dextrō cornū cōnstitēbant.
8. Circumventī sumus ; circumventī erāmus.
9. Impetus ab omnibus equitibus factus erat.
10. Equitātum peditātumque īnstrūxerat ; cōpiaē equitātūs peditātūsque īnstrūctae erant.
11. Castra parva erant.
12. Silva est inter flūmina.
13. Impetum cum fortitūdine sustinuimus.
14. Vir fortis erat ; vir fortis erat appellātus.
15. Homō sum.
16. Facile est ; difficile erat.
17. Coeperant in māgnō periculō esse.

---

\* With this phrase *on* is to be translated by **in** with the accusative.

## II.

1. He was a slave ; the slave was made king. 2. They had brought hostages to Caesar ; hostages had been brought. 3. The column had been compelled to halt. 4. He had had doubts about the column. 5. The columns had been surrounded by the cavalry. 6. The allies used to be free. 7. You had had great experience. 8. All the rest of the Belgians were in arms. 9. The military standards had been left behind. 10. I had been ordered to draw up the forces ; the forces had been drawn up. 11. We were in Caesar's army. 12. Messengers were sent from all the villages. 13. It was not right. 14. It had not been done by the boys. 15. An attack has been made ; we made an attack. 16. You had withstood the legions. 17. There was a great abundance of cattle.



Signa Militaria : Military Standards.

LESSON XXVII.

FIFTH DECLENSION. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

154. (a) Nouns of the fifth declension have their genitive singular in **-eī**. Nouns of this declension are feminine, with the exception of **diēs** and its compound **merīdiēs**, which are masculine.

(b) Most nouns of this declension are used only in the singular; a few are occasionally found also in the nominative and accusative plural. **Diēs** and **rēs** alone exhibit the complete declension.

155.

Paradigms.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>diēs</b> ( <i>day</i> )	<b>rēs</b> ( <i>thing</i> )	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>diēī</b>	<b>reī</b>	<b>-ēī</b> ( <b>eī</b> )
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>diēī</b>	<b>reī</b>	<b>-ēī</b> ( <b>eī</b> )
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>diem</b>	<b>rem</b>	<b>-em</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>diē</b>	<b>rē</b>	<b>-ē</b>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>diērum</b>	<b>rērum</b>	<b>-ērum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>-ēbus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>-ēbus</b>

a. Note that in the genitive and dative singular, the ending is **-ēī** after a vowel, but **-eī** after a consonant.

156. (a) The ordinal numerals (denoting *first, second, third, etc.*) are declinable, like other adjectives in Latin, and agree in gender, number and case with the nouns

they qualify. They are all of the first and second declensions, like **bonus** (65).

(b) The following ordinals should be learned first; a more complete list is given in 524.

<b>primus</b> , a, um,	<i>first.</i>	<b>sextus</b> , a, um,	<i>sixth.</i>
<b>secundus</b> , a, um,	<i>second.</i>	<b>septimus</b> , a, um	<i>seventh.</i>
<b>tertius</b> , a, um,	<i>third.</i>	<b>octāvus</b> , a, um,	<i>eighth.</i>
<b>quārtus</b> , a, um,	<i>fourth.</i>	<b>nōnus</b> , a, um,	<i>ninth.</i>
<b>quīntus</b> , a, um,	<i>fifth.</i>	<b>decimus</b> , a, um,	<i>tenth.</i>

## 157.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>aciēs</b> , ēī, f.,	<i>line of battle, line</i>
<b>diēs</b> , ēī, m.,	<i>day.</i>
<b>fidēs</b> , eī, f.,	<i>faith, faithfulness, fidelity.</i>
<b>hōra</b> , ae, f.,	<i>hour.</i>
<b>merīdiēs</b> , ēī, m.,	<i>midday, noon.</i>
<b>rēs</b> , reī, f.,	<i>thing, affair, circumstance.</i>
<b>spēs</b> , speī, f.,	<i>hope.</i>

*Phrase* : **rēs militāris**, *the art of war.*

## EXERCISES.

## 158.

## I.

1. Militēs in aciē īnstrūctī erant. 2. Cum tertiā legiōne in prōvinciā hiemāmus. 3. Post diem septimum equitātus revocatū erat. 4. Multīs rēbus adductī erant. 5. Dē fidē quīntae legiōnis dubitābat. 6. Inter aciēs ante merīdiem proelium equestre commiserunt. 7. Animī militum spē auxiliī cōfirmatī erant. 8. Ā sextā hōrā prīma aciēs erat in periculō. 9. Fidem prīncipum rēx cōgnōverat. 10. Numerus diērum et hōrārum nōn cōgnitus erat. 11. Propter inopiam omnium rērum nōnam legiōnem in hiberna reducit. 12. Omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnimus. 13. Rēs nūntiāta est. 14. Duplicem aciem īnstrūxit.



## II.

1. The troops were influenced by the hope of plunder.
2. The forces had been led back to camp after the fourth day.
3. The second line has been surrounded.
4. He had had great experience in the art of war.
5. They do not withstand the first attack.
6. The tenth legion has faith.
7. After midday a double line of battle was drawn up.
8. The affair had been learned through scouts.
9. They reached the camp before the eighth hour of the day.
10. They had come into Gaul not without great hope of booty.
11. We had been influenced by the want of everything (*literally*, all things).
12. Everything had been procured.

## LESSON XXVIII.

## ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME.

159.

## Illustrative Examples.

Hōrā septimā proelium commisit, *he joined battle at the seventh hour.*

Tertiō diē ad Caesarem vēnērunt, *the third day they came to Caesar.*

Adventū Caesaris lēgātōs mīsērunt, *on Caesar's approach they sent envoys.*

Multōs diēs agrōs vāstant, *they lay waste the fields for many days.*

Omnem tertium diem pūgnābant, *all the third day they fought.*

Impetum paucās hōrās sustinuērunt, *they withstood the attack (for) a few hours.*

- a. Which of these sentences express *time when*? Which express *time how long*? By what cases are these ideas respectively expressed in the Latin sentences?

6. From the above examples it will be observed that Latin requires no preposition to express the idea of *time when* or *time how long*, while in English, as a rule, various prepositions (*on, at, in; for, during*) are used, though sometimes they are omitted.

## 160.

## VOCABULARY.

annus, ī, m., <i>year.</i>	pars, partis, f., <i>part.</i>
circiter, adverb, <i>about.</i>	posterus, a, um, <i>next, following.</i>
lūx, lūcis, f., <i>light.</i>	
medius, a, um, <i>middle, mid.</i>	temp-us, -oris, n., <i>time.</i>
nox, noctis, f., <i>night.</i>	vigilia, ae, f., <i>watch.*</i>

*Phrases: prīma lūx, daybreak, dawn.*

*media nox, midnight.*

## EXERCISES.

## 161.

## I.

1. Prīmā lūce cōpiās ēdūxit; septimā hōrā cōpiaē reductae sunt. 2. Posterō diē castra oppūgnant. 3. Multōs diēs pācem petunt. 4. Nocte ad flūmen Rhēnum contendit. 5. Propter tempus annī bellum nōn gesserant. 6. Ā prīmā vigiliā ad mediam noctem pūgnāverant. 7. Ante merīdiem aciem īnstruere coepit. 8. Certō annī tempore convenire jussī erāmus. 9. Terciam partem Galliae paucōs annōs obtinuerāmus. 10. Discessū Caesaris hiberna oppūgnāre audent.

## II.

1. On the third day they moved the camp; they moved (their) camp daily at daybreak. 2. For a large part of the year we waged war. 3. At midnight they withdraw

---

\* The Romans divided the daytime into twelve equal hours; the night-time into four equal watches.

from the village. 4. In the second watch he sends out the troops with all the baggage. 5. We reached the harbour the next night before dawn. 6. For many hours we were strengthening the place with fortifications. 7. In the third year of the war they had seized the island. 8. We had withstood the cavalry's attacks from the fourth hour to the first watch. 9. On the first approach of reinforcements the Belgians began to give way. 10. They had begun to be unfriendly the next year.

---

162.

WORD LIST III.

NOUNS: FIRST, SECOND AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.

altitūdō	lātītūdō	nox	tempus
annus	littera	pars	vāllum
fortitūdō	longitūdō	pedes ✓	vigilia
hōra	lūx	pēs	

NOUNS: FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

aciēs	equitātus	lacus	principātus
adventus	exercitus	merīdiēs	rēs
cornū	fidēs	peditātus	senātus
diēs	impetus	portus ✓	spēs
discessus			ūsus

ADJECTIVES.

aequus	duplex	incolumis	omnis
amicus	equester	inimicus	pār
certus	facilis	iniquus	pedester
communis	fortis	levis	posterus
dexter ✓	gravis	medius	recēns
difficilis	idōneus	militāris	sinister

## VERBS.

addūcō	committō	ēdūcō	pellō
audeō	compellō	ēmittō	permovere ✓
cēdō	concēdō	excēdō	perterreō
circumveniō	cōsistō ✓	expellō	pervenio .
coepī	cōstituō ✓	instruō	repellō
cōgō	dubitō	jubeō	sustineō

## ADVERBS

circiter                      cotidiē

## READING LESSON V.

## THE BATTLE OF THE HORATII AND THE CURIATII.

(Concluded from 137.)

163. Cōpiae quae (*which*) in aciē instrūctae erant, jam (*now*) in castra reductae sunt. Posterō diē, primā lūce, omnēs Rōmānī et Albānī ad locum idōneum convēnērunt. Horātiī et Cūriātiī ēductī sunt. Sīgnum proeliī datum est. Frātrēs proelium committere nōn dubitāvērunt, sed māgnā cum fortitūdine impetum facere contendērunt. Primō impetū, duo (*two*) ex\* Rōmānīs cecidērunt (*fell*) et omnēs Albānī vulnerātī sunt. Animī omnium Albānōrum spē victōriae cōfirmātī sunt; sed exercitus Rōmānus permōtus est māgnitūdine periculī.

Tum (*then*) trēs (*the three*) Albānī Rōmānum circumvenire coepērunt, et Horātius in māgnō erat periculō. Impetum Cūriatiōrum nōn diū (*long*) sustinuit; coactus est cedere et salutem fugā petere. Rōmānī fugā Horātiī perterritī sunt, et Albānī conclāmāvērunt (*shouted*) "Victōria est certa; superātī sunt Rōmānī."

\* Translate **ex** by *of* after numerals, **paucī** and **multi**.



Sed Horātius māgnū in rē mīlitārī ūsum habuerat, et quoniam (*since*) ipse (*he himself*) integer erat et Cūriatīi omnēs vulnerātī erant, simulāre (*to feign*) fugam cōstituerat et Cūriatiōs distrahere (*to separate*). Itaque (*accordingly*) propter gravia vulnera Albānōrum, facile erat trēs frātrēs distrahere et singillātīm (*one by one*) necāre. Tum Horātius ā Rōmānīs incolumis ad castra reductus est.



Tomb of Horatii and Curiatii at Alba.

## LESSON XXIX.

### PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

164. In the perfect and pluperfect tenses the passive voice in Latin, as has been observed, has compound forms (as in English), and the personal endings of the auxiliary verb **sum** are those of the active voice (139, 150); but in the present tense the difference between active and passive is expressed by using different personal endings.

## ACTIVE.

-ō

-s

-t

-mus

-tis

-nt

## PASSIVE.

-or

-ris

-tur

-mur

-mini

-ntur

## 165.

## Paradigms.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

*First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.*

## SINGULAR.

1. amor	moneor	regor	audior
2. amāris	monēris	regeris	audīris
3. amātur	monētur	regitur	audītur

## PLURAL.

1. amāmur	monēmur	regimur	audīmur
2. amāmini	monēmini	regimini	audīmini
3. amantur	monentur	reguntur	audiuntur

- a. In the present indicative, are the passive and active voices formed from the same principal part (138)?  
Is this the case in the perfect indicative (141)?

## 166.

## Illustrative Examples.

<i>Agrōs dant, they give lands.</i>	<i>Agrī dantur, lands are given.</i>
<i>Castra movent, they are moving the camp.</i>	<i>Castra moventur, the camp is being moved.</i>
<i>Cōpiās nōn mittit, he does not send troops.</i>	<i>Cōpiæ nōn mittuntur, troops are not sent.</i>
<i>Locum nōn mūnit, he is not fortifying the place.</i>	<i>Locus nōn mūnītur, the place is not being fortified.</i>

- a. Examine the various ways in which the present tense is translated in the active and in the passive voice.

167.

## VOCABULARY.

audāx, -ācis,	<i>bold, daring.</i>
con-tineō, ēre, uī, -tentum,	<i>restrain, hem in, enclose.</i>
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum,	<i>say, tell, speak.</i>
exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>think, consider.</i>
fīnitimus, a, um,	<i>neighbouring, adjacent ; nom. plur.</i>
<i>as substantive, neighbours.</i>	
nihil, indeclinable, n.,	<i>nothing.</i>
periculōsus, a, um,	<i>dangerous.</i>
potēns, -entis,	<i>powerful.</i>
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum,	<i>keep, prevent.</i>
videor, passive of videō,	<i>1. be seen ; 2. seem.</i>

N.B.—*Prohibeō* takes the present infinitive (complementary, 123), to be translated by *from* with the gerund in *-ing*, e.g. *prohibeor venīre, I am prevented from coming.*

## EXERCISES.

168.

I.

1. Revocātur, revocāmur ; cōguntur, cōgeris. 2. Impedior, impediminī ; continēris, continentur. 3. Acies instruitur ; castra mūniuntur. 4. Dicitur ; audītur. 5. Cōsiliū est audāx ; nōn est periculōsum. 6. Nihil dedimus ; nihil habēmus. 7. Exīstimantur pācem petere ; pāx petitur. 8. Locī nātūrā continēmur. 9. Cōpiās comparāre videntur ; cōpiā comparantur. 10. Ā fīnitimīs agrī Germānōrum vāstantur. 11. Multōs vicōs habēre dīciminī. 12. Circumvenīminī ; circumventī estis. 13. Caesarī, virō potentī, parēmus. 14. Coeperat dēspērāre ; dēspērāre vīsus erat. 15. Fīnitimōs agrōs vāstāre prohibēmur. 16. Posterō diē castra moventur. 17. Paucās hōrās impetus sustinētur.



## II.

1. He orders, he is ordered ; he compels, he is compelled. 2. They are stationing, they are being stationed; they are surrounding, they are being surrounded. 3. You (s) are ordered, we are compelled, I am stationed, you (pl) are being surrounded. 4. They give nothing; nothing is given. 5. It is dangerous; we are safe; there is a double trench. 6. We are enclosed by broad and deep rivers. 7. You are awaited by the consul. 8. We are not alarmed by the departure of the allies. 9. The town is being fortified; it is announced to Caesar. 10. He said nothing; nothing had been said. 11. You are called bold and powerful men. 12. We are prevented from sending messengers; messengers are sent to Caesar. 13. You are considered to have great experience. 14. We do not wage war with (our) neighbours. 15. The troops are seen from the camp; the army seems to be giving way. 16. The camp is being pitched across the river. 17. Part of the adjacent province is being laid waste.

## LESSON XXX.

## REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

169.

## Illustrative Examples.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>Lātus</b> (gen. <i>lātī</i> ), <i>broad</i> ;	<b>lātior</b> , <i>broad</i> er ;	<b>lātissimus</b> , <i>broad</i> est.
<b>Fortis</b> (gen. <i>fortis</i> ), <i>brave</i> ;	<b>fortior</b> , <i>brave</i> r ;	<b>fortissimus</b> , <i>brave</i> st.
<b>Audāx</b> (gen. <i>audācis</i> ), <i>bold</i> ;	<b>audācior</b> , <i>bold</i> er ;	<b>audācissimus</b> , <i>bold</i> est.
<b>Potēns</b> (gen. <i>potentis</i> ), <i>powerful</i> ;	<b>potentior</b> , <i>more powerful</i> ;	<b>potentissimus</b> , <i>most powerful</i> .



- a.* The regular method of forming the comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives is illustrated above. What is substituted for the genitive ending (-ī or -is) to form the comparative? What is substituted to form the superlative?
- b.* The superlative degree is frequently used in Latin, as it sometimes is in English also, to indicate a high degree of the quality; as, **inīquissimum est**, *it is most (or very) unfair*.

170. The comparative and superlative degrees, like the positive, are declined, and agree in gender, number and case with the substantives to which they refer. The superlatives are all of the first and second declensions and are declined like **bonus** (65). The comparatives are of the third declension and are declined as follows:—

Paradigm.

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES.

SINGULAR.

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortior	fortius
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fortius
<i>Voc.</i>	fortior	fortius
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōre	fortiōre

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Voc.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

- a. Examine the ablative singular and the genitive plural of all genders, and also the nominative and accusative plural neuter. Are the endings like those of the nouns of the third declension (83 and 94), or like those of positive adjectives of the third declension (113)?

## 171.

## VOCABULARY.

**brevis**, e, *short, brief.*

**nōbilis**, e, *noble, famous.*

**dēnsus**, a, um, *thick, dense.*

**novus**, a, um, *new.*

**fidēlis**, e, *faithful.*

**prūdēns**, -entis, *discreet.*

**fīrmus**, a, um, *strong.*

**ūtilis**, e, *useful.*

*Phrases* : **iter faciō**, *march.*

**certiōrem faciō dē**, *inform of, literally make (some one) more certain about.\**

N.B.—**Novus** has no comparative and the superlative means *last, latest*, as in **novissimum agmen**, *the rear*. For *newer, newest* the comparative and superlative of **recēns** are used.

## EXERCISES.

## 172.

## I.

1. Flūmine lātissimō et altissimō continentur. 2. Longiōre itinere dūcimur. 3. Per dēnsissimās silvās iter fēcerant. 4. Tertiō diē ad flūmen lātius perveniunt. 5. Noctēs sunt breviōrēs; socii nōn erant fidēlēs. 6. Virō nōbilissimō et potentissimō filiam dat. 7. Caesarem dē novō cōsiliō certiōrem fēcērunt. 8. In novissimum agmen merīdiē impetus factus erat. 9. Castra lātiōribus fossis mūniuntur. 10. Locus firmissimis praesidiis tenētur. 11. Prūdētissima est puella; cōsiliū est ūtilius. 12. Multae rēs Gallōs ūtilēs amīcōs esse prohibent.

---

\*In this phrase **certior** agrees with the object of the verb in the active voice; but with the subject if the verb is passive.

## II.

1. They sought denser forests. 2. Deeper rivers seem to hem in the allies. 3. The daughters are discreet; the daughters were most discreet. 4. A stronger garrison is left. 5. We had marched the rest of the night. 6. The time is short; the time is shorter; the time is very short. 7. The hostages are the children of the noblest men. 8. They give their daughters to the sons of the more powerful chiefs. 9. He had been informed of the king's departure. 10. The bravest legions are stationed in the rear. 11. For many years he was a most useful and faithful friend. 12. He was informed by a famous soldier; you are hemmed in by a broader river.

## LESSON XXXI.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

## 173. Illustrative Examples.

Caesarī est inimīcus, *he is unfriendly to Caesar.*

Fīnitimī sunt Galliae, *they are adjacent to Gaul.*

Populō Rōmānō periculōsum est, *it is dangerous to the Roman people.*

- a. Observe how in these Latin sentences the adjective is completed by a dative denoting that to which the feeling or quality in question is directed.

This *Dative with Adjectives* is similar to the *Dative of the Indirect Object* with verbs (39) and is similarly translated.

- b. The adjectives so defined or completed are chiefly those meaning *near, friendly, like, useful, agreeable, known*, and their opposites.

174.

## Illustrative Examples.

Omnium Gallōrum sunt fortissimī, *of all the Gauls they are the bravest.*

Partem prōvinciae vāstant, *they lay waste part of the province.*

- a. Observe how the genitive is used in Latin to denote the *whole* of which a part is taken. The genitive thus expressing the whole is termed the *Partitive Genitive*.

175.

## Illustrative Examples.

Reliquās legiōnēs mittit, *he sends the rest of the legions (the remaining legions).*

In mediō flūmine est, *it is in the middle of the river (in mid-stream).*

- a. Certain relations, as *the remainder*, and such local parts of anything as the *top, middle, bottom, beginning, end*, Latin prefers to express not by the partitive genitive, but by an adjective in agreement, which regularly precedes its noun.

176.

## VOCABULARY.

dissimilis, e, <i>unlike, dissimilar.</i>	pa-ter, -tris, m., <i>father.</i>
frā-ter, -tris, m., <i>brother.</i>	pūblicus, a, um, <i>belong-</i>
incōgnitus, a, um, <i>unknown.</i>	<i>ing to the people, public.</i>
inūtilis, e, <i>useless.</i>	similis, e, <i>like, similar.</i>
mā-ter, -tris, f., <i>mother.</i>	sor-or, -ōris, f., <i>sister.</i>
nōtus, a, um, <i>known, familiar.</i>	

*Phrases* : rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, f., *the public interest, public business, the state.*

pār esse, *be a match (for).*



## EXERCISES

177.

I.

1. Frāter sorōrī incōgnitus erat. 2. Gallī fīnitimī Belgīs erant. 3. Caesarī es fidēlis. 4. Potentissimus prīncipum est. 5. Dē rē pūblicā nōn dēspērāmus. 6. Mediā circiter nocte ad reliquum exercitum perveniunt. 7. Gallī nōn parēs sunt Belgīs. 8. Caesarī esse inimicī existimāmur. 9. Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sumus. 10. Fīliī patrī et mātīrī pārent. 11. Cōnsilium rēi pūblicae periculōsum est. 12. Periculūm commūne omnibus esse vidētur. 13. Ītalia Britanniae\* dissimilis est. 14. Media īnsula incolīs est inūtilis. 15. Multīs mīlitum nihil nōtum erat.

II.

1. They had sent the noblest of the Britons to Caesar. 2. They seem to be friendly and faithful to Caesar. 3. The harbours are unknown to the Gauls. 4. The war began to be dangerous to the state. 5. At dawn they joined battle in the middle of the forest. 6. They had marched for a large part of the day. 7. The daughter is like\* (her) father; the sons are like (their) mother. 8. Nothing was more useful to the senate. 9. The brothers are unfriendly to (their) sister. 10. He had been informed by the more daring of the brothers. 11. Peace is not similar to war. 12. The nights are unlike the days. 13. The slave's faithfulness is known to all. 14. The lakes are like large rivers. 15. Children do not give orders to (their) fathers and mothers.

---

\* After *like* and *unlike*, the preposition *to* is now generally omitted.

## LESSON XXXII.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS : FUTURE  
INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

## 178. Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnābit, *he will fight.* Vidēbimus, *we shall see.*Vocābis, *you will call.* Tenēbitis, *you will hold.*

- a.* What new element is found in these Latin verbs between the present stem and the personal ending?
- b.* Notice the translation of these Latin forms, which, like their English equivalents, are said to be in the *Future Tense*.

## 179. Paradigms.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

*First Conjugation.**Second Conjugation.*

## SINGULAR.

1. amābō	-ā-b-ō	monēbō	-ē-b-ō
2. amābis	-ā-bi-s	monēbis	-ē-bi-s
3. amābit	-ā-bi-t	monēbit	-ē-bi-t

## PLURAL.

1. amābimus	-ā-bi-mus	monēbimus	-ē-bi-mus
2. amābitis	-ā-bi-tis	monēbitis	-ē-bi-tis
3. amābunt	-ā-bu-nt	monēbunt	-ē-bu-nt

- a.* Notice that in the first person singular **i** of **-bi-** is omitted before **-ō**, and that in the third person plural **bi** becomes **bu** before **-nt**. What is the quantity of the vowel in **-bi-**?

180. In Latin, as in English, adjectives are often used as substantives, especially in the plural, the masculine denoting a class of persons, the neuter a class or number of things; as **omnēs**, *all people, everybody*;

**omnia**, *all things, everything*; **bonī**, *good people, the good*; **bona**, *goods, property*. So **multī**, **multa**, **paucī**, **reliquī**, and many others.

N.B.—In the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, where the gender is not determined by the case-ending, **rēs** should be used instead of the neuter; as, **omnium rerum**, *of everything*.

181.

## VOCABULARY.

**causa**, ae, f., *cause, reason*.

**dē**, prep. with abl., 1, *down from, from*; 2, *concerning*.

**dē-dūcō**, ere, -**dūxī**, -**ductum**, *lead off, withdraw*.

**dē-pōnō**, ere, -**posuī**, -**positum**, *lay down; deposit*.

**dē-siliō**, īre, -**siluī**, -**sultum**, *leap down*.

**dē-terreō**, ēre, uī, **itum**, (*frighten off*) *deter, hinder*.

**dē-tineō**, ēre, uī, -**tentum**, *detain, delay*.

**imperō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *demand, require*.

**locus**, ī, m., *place*; in plural, **loca**, ōrum, n., *places, ground, district*.

**per-tineō**, ēre, uī, -**tentum**, *extend, tend*.

*Phrases with causa (notice the order throughout):*

**multis dē causis**, *for (literally from) many reasons*

**pācis causā**, *for the sake of peace (literally from the reason of peace)*.

**frumentī causā**, *for the purpose of (getting) corn; to get corn*.

N.B.—(a) The prefix **dē** is used in compounds to denote (1) *down*, (2) *from, off*.

(b) With **imperō**, the dative denotes the person to whom orders are given; the accusative denotes that which is demanded or ordered; as,

**Equitibus imperat**, *he gives orders to the cavalry*;

**Equitēs rēgī imperat**, *he demands cavalry from the king*.



## EXERCISES.

182.

I.

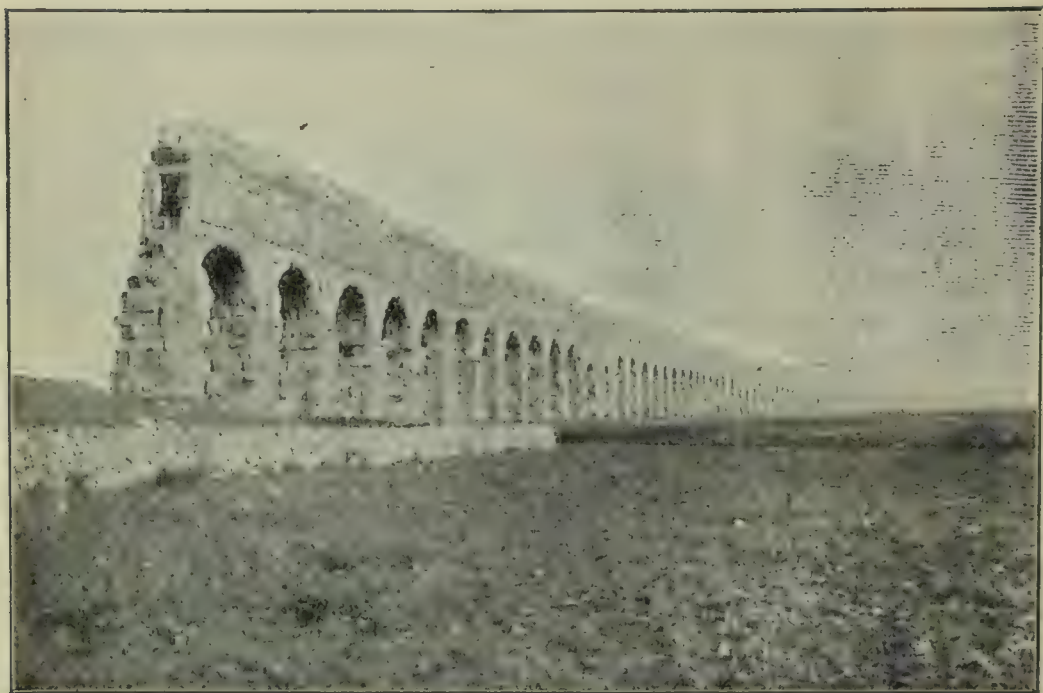
1. Multis dē causis in Galliā hiemābimus. 2. Rēx cōpiās parābit; cōpiae rēgī pārēbunt. 3. Nihil vidēbitis. 4. Adventum auxiliōrum nōn expectābō. 5. Obsidibus imperat; obsidēs Gallis imperābat; māgnū numerum obsidum Galliae imperābit. 6. Belgae pertinent ad flūmen Rhēnum. 7. Reī pūblicae causā impetum sustinēbimus. 8. Dē omnibus rēbus dēspērās; omnia relinquis. 9. Milītēs dē vāllō dēdūcit. 10. Omnia loca occupābimus. 11. Amicitiae causā agrōs finitimis concēdere nōn dubitābis. 12. Nihil exercitum dētīnēbit. 13. Multa Caesarem dēterrēbunt. 14. Ex equīs ad pedēs dēsiluērunt. 15. Bonōs necābunt; bona nōbīlium habēbunt. 16. Bellī causā cōpiās comparābō. 17. Imperium dēposuit.

II.

1. We shall not fight without reason. 2. At dawn they will move the camp. 3. I shall give the signal. 4. You will have everything; we shall have an abundance of everything. 5. For the sake of the common safety they will give hostages. 6. They leap down from the wall. 7. I shall demand cavalry and infantry from the rest. 8. You will not venture to wage war for a slight cause. 9. The forest used to extend to the bank of the river Rhine. 10. The place is unknown to all; the ground was known to everybody. 11. Nothing will deter the senate and Roman people. 12. Everything had been withdrawn from the fields. 13. It will tend to (ad) the safety of the good. 14. He has many to assist him (*literally*, for the sake of aid). 15. On account of the lack of everything we shall not hesitate







RUINS OF THE CLAUDIAN AQUEDUCT.



CLOACA MAXIMA.

to lay down (our) arms. 16. You will not delay the victory. 17. He will demand a large supply of corn from the king's brother.

183.

WORD LIST C.

TIME.

day	daybreak	night	year
daily	noon	midnight	time
next day	hour	watch	

FAMILY.

father	brother	son	children
mother	sister	daughter	

MISCELLANEOUS NOUNS.

faith	thing	rampart	reason
hope	nothing	ground	light
experience	everything	part	state

ADJECTIVES WITH *to* : IN LATIN WITH DATIVE.

adjacent ✓	like	common ✓	known ✓
friendly	unlike ✓	useful	unknown ✓
unfriendly	equal	useless	dangerous ✓
faithful			

MISCELLANEOUS ADJECTIVES.

bold	noble	thick	military ✓
discreet	new	strong ✓	famous
powerful	following	short	

VERBS.

say	prevent	influence	extend
think	hinder	alarm	drive
seem	restrain	terrify —	lead out —
inform	detain —	grant	send out
name	hesitate	require —	drive out
demand			leap down

## WAR.

halt	yield	lay down arms
march	defeat	draw up line of battle
retire	drive back	make an attack
the rear	surround	withstand an attack
repulse	give way	the art of war
withdraw (transitive and intransitive)		

## READING LESSON VI.

## THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME (753-510 B.C.)

184.

## VOCABULARY.

creō, āre, āvī, ātum, *elect, choose.*Etrūria, ae, f., *Etruria*, the district north of Rome.Latīnī, ōrum, m., *the Latins*, dwelling in Latium.lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*nūllus, a, um, *no (adjective).*urbs, urbis, f., *city.*

Prīmō (*at first*) populus Rōmānus rēgibus pārēbat. Septem (*seven*) rēgēs Rōmae (*at Rome*) imperium obtinēbant. Prīmus rēx, Rōmulus, urbem condidit (*founded*). Rōmam mūrīs mūnīvit et multitūdinem hominum in urbem coēgit. Senātum creāvit et senātōrēs (*the senators*) Patrēs appellāvit. Multa bella cum finitimīs gerēbat.

Numa, rēx secundus, nūllum bellum gessit, sed nūllus rēx ūtilior rei pūblicae erat. Lēgēs acquās populō Rōmānō dedit, et multa templa (*temples*) īstituit (*established*).

Tertius rēx, Tullus Hostīlius, vir fortissimus erat et audācissimus. Bella cum finitimīs renovāvit et māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbat. Levī dē causā bellum cum Albānīs gessit et multōs finitimōs superāvit.



Ancus Mārcius, rēx quārtus, Tullō dissimilis erat, et Numae similior. Salūtis commūnis causā Rōmam novīs mūrīs firmāvit et portum fēcit apud (*at*) ōstium (*the mouth*) flūminis Tiberis.

Tum (*then*) Tarquinius Prīscus, quī (*who*) in urbem ab Etrūriā pervēnerat, rēx creātus est. Tarquinius in bellō et in pāce nōbilis erat. Multa oppida occupāvit et agrum Rōmānum lātiōrem fēcit.

Servius Tullius, rēx sextus, prūdētissimus erat omnium rēgum. Pauca bella gessit sed multa cōnsilia cēpit (*formed*) quae (*which*) ad salūtem rei pūblicae pertinēbant. Pācem cum Latīnīs cōnfirmāvit et prīncipātum omnium finitimōrum populōrum obtinēbat. Septem collēs (*hills*) māgnīs et firmīs mūnitiōnibus cīnxit (*surrounded*). Post multōs annōs ā Tarquiniō, filiō rēgis quīntī, necātus est.

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus (*last*) rēgum, homō inīquus et audāx erat. Filium habēbat quem (*whom*) Sextum appellābat. Propter injūriās ipsius (*of himself*) et Sextī, rēx imperium dēpōnere coāctus est et ex urbe expulsus est.

Post discessum Tarquiniōrum, senātus et prīncipēs rem pūblicam administrābant (*governed*), et Rōmānī cōnsulēs (*consuls, acc. case*) creāre coepērunt.

---

## LESSON XXXIII.

### THIRD DECLENSION : I-STEMS.

**185.** The Third Declension includes also nouns whose stem ends in **i**, instead of in a consonant as in Lessons XIII. and XV. The difference is observable chiefly in the genitive plural, which, in **i**-stems, has **-ium** instead of **-um**, and in the nominative and accusative plural of

neuters, which have **-ia** instead of **-a**. Occasionally the ablative singular ends in **-ī** (regularly so in the neuter nouns), and more rarely the accusative singular ends in **-im**. Otherwise the declension of consonant stems and **i**-stems is identical.

## 186.

## Paradigms.

## THIRD DECLENSION, I-STEMS.

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	hostis ( <i>enemy</i> )	nūbēs ( <i>cloud</i> )	animal ( <i>animal</i> )
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	nūbis	animālis
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	nūbī	animālī
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	nūbem	animal
<i>Voc.</i>	hostis	nūbēs	animal
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	nūbe	animālī

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	nūbēs	animālia
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	nūbium	animālium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	nūbibus	animālibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostēs (īs)*	nūbēs (īs)*	animālia
<i>Voc.</i>	hostēs	nūbēs	animālia
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	nūbibus	animālibus

187. (a) Most masculine and feminine **i**-stems have **-is** in the nominative singular and are declined like **hostis**. A few like **ignis** and **nāvis** have **-ī** as well as **-e** in the ablative singular.†

(b) Notice the difference between nouns in **-es** or **-ēs** increasing (i.e. in number of syllables) in the genitive, and nouns in **-ēs** not increasing in the genitive. The

---

\* The accusative plural in **-īs**, as **hostīs**, **nūbīs**, is avoided in introductory books.

† Unless some irregularity is specially mentioned, nouns in **-is** used in this book should be declined like **hostis**.

former are consonant stems (see 86), as *mīles*, *eques*, *pēs*; the latter are *i*-stems. (So also with nouns in *-is*.)

(*c*) The only frequently occurring neuter *i*-stem is *mare*, *the sea*; Singular, Nom., Acc. and Voc. *mare*, Gen. *maris*, Dat. and Abl. *marī*. Plural, Nom., Acc. and Voc. *maria*, Gen. only once found, in the form *marum*, Dat. and Abl. *maribus*.

188. Certain consonant stems of the third declension have been so far affected by the nearly similar declension of the *i*-stems that they may be classed separately as *mixed stems*. These include masculine and feminine nouns of three kinds: (*a*) nouns ending in *-ns* or *-rs*, (*b*) monosyllables in *-s* or *-x* preceded by a consonant, and (*c*) nouns in *-tās*. These are declined like consonant stems in the singular; like *i*-stems in the plural. The nouns in *-tās*, however, have both *-um* and *-ium* in the genitive plural.

189.

Paradigms.

THIRD DECLENSION: MIXED STEMS.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cohors (cohort)</i>	<i>urbs (city)</i>	<i>cīvitās (state)</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cohortis</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>cīvitātis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cohortī</i>	<i>urbī</i>	<i>cīvitātī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cohortem</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>cīvitātem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>cohors</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>cīvitās</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cohorte</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>cīvitāte</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cohortēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>cīvitātēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cohortium</i>	<i>urbium</i>	<i>cīvitātum or cīvitātium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cohortibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>cīvitātibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cohortēs (īs)</i>	<i>urbēs (īs)</i>	<i>cīvitātēs (īs)</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>cohortēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>cīvitātēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cohortibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>cīvitātibus.</i>

190. (a) Review the case-endings of adjectives of the third declension (113) which, it will be seen, regularly follow the declension of *i*-stems.

(b) Review also the rules for gender in the third declension (95), to which should now be added the following :

Nouns in *-is* (with many important exceptions), and nouns in *-ēs* not increasing in the genitive, are feminine ; nouns in *-e*, *-al* and *-ar* are neuter.

## 191.

## VOCABULARY.

*cīvis*, *is*, *m. f.*, *citizen.*

*cīvi-tās*, *-tātis*, *f.*, *citizenship ; state, country.*

*fīnis*, *is*, *m.*, *end ; in plural, borders, territory.*

*hostis*, *is*, *m.* (usually in plural), *enemy.*

*mare*, *is*, *n.*, *sea.*

*mōns*, *montis*, *m.*, *mountain.*

*nāvis*, *is*, *f.*, *ship.*

*pōns*, *pontis*, *m.*, *bridge.*

*Tamesis*, *is*, *m.* (acc. *-im*, abl. *-ī*), *the Thames.*

*Tiberis*, *is*, *m.* (acc. *-im*, abl. *-ī*), *the Tiber.*

*Phrase : nāvis longa, war-ship, war-galley.*

## EXERCISES.

## 192.

## I.

1. *Cīvis Rōmānus sum ; cīvitātem habeo.* 2. *Dē nāvibus dēsiliunt.* 3. *In fīnibus hostium hiemābunt.* 4. *Propter altitudinem maris ex nāvī dēsilire nōn audent.* 5. *Castra in altissimō monte posita erant.* 6. *Mare est ūtile ; maria sunt ūtiliōra.* 7. *Finitimis cīvitātibus nāvēs longās imperābit.* 8. *Māgnīs itineribus ad flūmen Tamesim hostēs contendunt.* 9. *Posterā nocte cīvibus fugam hostium nūntiāvī.* 10. *In oceanō et in reliquīs maribus multās nāvēs longās habēbant.* 11. *Lēgātī ā*



reliquīs cīvitatibus vēnerant. 12. Fīnēs lātissimōs habēre videntur. 13. Rēs pūblica nāvī similis esse dīcitur. 14. Impetum hostium māgnam partem diēi sustinent. 15. Multīs cīvītās data est.

## II.

1. They assembled from all parts of the state. 2. The forest extends from the mountains to the sea. 3. He collects a large number of soldiers and of war-ships. 4. The mountains had been seized by the enemy. 5. The leading men of all the states assembled at midnight. 6. There was a bridge over (*literally* on) the river Tiber. 7. We had marched from the enemy's territories to the neighbouring state. 8. They hasten by night through the midst of the enemy. 9. The seas are thought to be dangerous. 10. The Romans called the river Tiber. 11. On account of the scarcity of ships they had made a bridge. 12. The sea is enclosed by very high mountains. 13. On account of the height of the mountains they left part of (their) baggage. 14. He will carry back the goods of the Roman citizens in the war-galleys. 15. I have said nothing about citizenship.



**Naves Longae : War-galleys.**

## LESSON XXXIV.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

193. Adjectives ending in **-er** (whether of the first and second declensions or of the third declension) form the comparative regularly (169), but form the superlative by changing **-er** to **-errimus**; as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>liber</b>	<b>liberior</b>	<b>liberrimus</b>
<b>ācer</b>	<b>ācrior</b>	<b>ācerrimus</b>

194. Six adjectives in **-ilis** form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by changing **-ilis** to **-illimus**; as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>facilis</b>	<b>facilior</b>	<b>facillimus</b>
<b>similis</b>	<b>similior</b>	<b>simillimus</b>

These adjectives are **facilis**, **difficilis**, **similis**, **dissimilis**, **gracilis** (*slender*), **humilis** (*low*). Other adjectives in **-ilis**, e.g. **nōbilis** and **ūtilis**, are regular; as, **nōbilis**, **nōbilior**, **nōbilissimus**.

195. Many adjectives in common use are in Latin, as in English, quite irregular in their comparison. The following are the most important of these:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>bonus</b> , <i>good</i> .	<b>melior</b> , <i>better</i> .	<b>optimus</b> , <i>best</i> .
<b>malus</b> , <i>bad</i> .	<b>pējor</b> , <i>worse</i> .	<b>pessimus</b> , <i>worst</i> .
<b>māgnus</b> , <i>great, large</i> .	<b>mājor</b> , <i>greater, larger</i> .	<b>māximus</b> , <i>greatest, largest</i> .
<b>parvus</b> , <i>small, little</i> .	<b>minor</b> , <i>smaller, less</i> .	<b>minimus</b> , <i>smallest, least</i> .
<b>multus</b> , <i>much, many</i> .	<b>plūs</b> , <i>more</i> .	<b>plūrimus</b> , <i>most</i> .

196. The positive of the following is either lacking or rare :—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
	<b>prior</b> , <i>former</i> .	<b>prīmus</b> , <i>first</i> .
	<b>propior</b> , <i>nearer</i> .	<b>proximus</b> , <i>nearest</i> , <i>next</i> .
	<b>ulterior</b> , <i>farther</i> .	<b>ultimus</b> , <i>farthest</i> .
<b>exterus</b> , <i>outside</i> .	<b>exterior</b> , <i>outer</i> .	<b>extrēmus</b> ( <b>extimus</b> ), <i>outermost</i> .
<b>īferus</b> , <i>below</i> .	<b>īferior</b> , <i>lower</i> .	<b>īfimus</b> , <b>īmus</b> , <i>lowest</i> .
<b>superus</b> , <i>above</i> .	<b>superior</b> , <i>higher</i> , <i>upper</i> ; <i>former</i> .	<b>suprēmus</b> , <i>last</i> ; <b>summus</b> , <i>highest</i> .

197.

Paradigm.

DECLENSION OF **plūs**.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrēs</b>	<b>plūra</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	—	<b>plūris</b>	<b>plūrium</b>	<b>plūrium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	<b>plūribus</b>	<b>plūribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	—	<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrēs</b>	<b>plūra</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	—	<b>plūre</b>	<b>plūribus</b>	<b>plūribus</b>

N.B.—**Complūrēs** (used in the plural only), *several*, is a compound of **plūrēs**, and is declined like it.

*a.* **Plūs** in the singular occurs only in the neuter, which is used as a substantive and never as an adjective in agreement.

*b.* All other comparatives and superlatives are declined regularly, as in 170. Notice especially that the neuter of **mājor** is **mājus**, and of **minor**, **minus**, the genitives being **mājōris** and **minōris** respectively.

## 198.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>plūrēs</b> or <b>complūrēs</b> ,	<i>several, lit. more (than one).</i>
<b>prīma lūx</b> ,	<i>daybreak, dawn.</i>
<b>proximus diēs</b> ,	<i>the next day.</i>
<b>ultimus</b> or <b>extrēmus</b> ,	<i>most distant, remotest.</i>
<b>superiōra loca</b> ,	<i>higher ground, heights.</i>
<b>superior annus</b> ,	<i>the previous (or preceding) year.</i>
<b>summum perīculum</b> ,	<i>the greatest (or extreme) danger.</i>
<b>summa virtūs</b> ,	<i>very great (or signal) valour.</i>
<b>summus mōns</b> ,	<i>the top of the mountain (175).</i>
<b>īnfimus</b> (or <b>īmus</b> ) <b>mōns</b> ,	<i>the foot of the mountain (175).</i>

## EXERCISES.

## 199.

## I.

1. Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs. 2. In īferiōre parte flūminis pontēs sunt plūrimī. 3. Summa erat omnium iērum inopia. 4. Prīmā lūce mājōrem multitudinem nāvium ab ulteriōre portū mīsīt. 5. Proximā nocte superiōra loca occupant. 6. Superiōre annō mājus oppidum minōre cum perīculō expūgnāverant. 7. Optimae rēs nōn sunt facillimae. 8. Complūrēs sunt parēs. 9. Omnēs superiōrēs diēs summum montem tenēbat. 10. In extrēmīs hostium finibus oppida sunt crēberrima. 11. Prīmō impetū repulsī sunt. 12. Iter per proximās cīvitātēs facillimum erat.

## II.

1. The depth of the river is very great. 2. They hasten to the nearest ship. 3. The previous winter he had collected very many war-ships and very large forces. 4. Nothing is better. 5. It is the most distant town of the enemy. 6. For the larger part of the year the roads are very difficult. 7. It is best to hasten to the



upper part of the island. 8. On his first approach he demanded hostages from several states. 9. The trench extended from the foot of the mountain to the outer fortifications. 10. The next day they fortified a smaller camp on the higher ground. 11. On account of their signal valour they are the freest and noblest of the citizens. 12. He had been informed by very frequent despatches.

### LESSON XXXV.

#### THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS : FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

##### 200. Illustrative Examples.

*Mittēs, you will send.      Audiēs, you will hear.*  
*Mittēmus, we shall send.      Audiētis, you will hear.*

a. Notice that in these Latin future forms, the present stem has -e- changed to -ē- in the third conjugation, and -ī- changed to -iē- in the fourth conjugation.

##### 201. Paradigms.

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

*Third Conjugation.      Fourth Conjugation.*

##### SINGULAR.

1.	regam	-a-m	audiam	-i-a-m
2.	regēs	-ē-s	audiēs	-i-ē-s
3.	reget	-e-t	audiet	-i-e-t

##### PLURAL.

1.	regēmus	-ē-mus	audiēmus	-i-ē-mus
2.	regētis	-ē-tis	audiētis	-i-ē-tis
3.	regent	-e-nt	audient	-i-e-nt

- a.* What letter replaces *-ē-* as the sign of the future tense in the first person singular? What is the personal ending in the first person singular? Before what endings is *-ē-* changed to *-e-* (78. *b*)?
- b.* Compare the formation of the future tense in the first and second conjugations (178) with that in the third and fourth conjugations.

## 202.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>celer, eris, ere,</i>	<i>swift, speedy.</i>
<i>celeri-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>swiftness, speed.</i>
<i>cohor-s, -tis, f.,</i>	<i>cohort (one-tenth of a legion).</i>
<i>collis, is, m.,</i>	<i>hill.</i>
<i>difficul-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>difficulty.</i>
<i>dux, ducis, m.,</i>	<i>leader, guide.</i>
<i>facul-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>opportunity.</i>
<i>liber-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>freedom.</i>
<i>pauci-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>fewness, small number.</i>
<i>regi-ō, -ōnis, f.,</i>	<i>district, country, region.</i>

N.B.—The suffix *-tās* is used to form from adjectives abstract nouns denoting quality or condition. It appears in English as *-ty*.

## EXERCISES.

## 203.

## I.

A.—1. Nihil audiēs; omnia vidēbis. 2. Ab extrēmīs regiōnibus venient. 3. Hostēs omnēs collēs tenent. 4. Propter paucitātem portuum summa erat difficultās. 5. Spē libertātis adductus eram. 6. Partem cohortis ēmittit. 7. Omnēs inimicōs ex cīvitāte expellēmus. 8. Prīmō impetū hostēs pellētis. 9. Celerrimīs hostium facultās fugae datur.

B.—10. Sine duce venīre cōstituent; sine ducibus venīre dubitābunt. 11. In summō colle aciem īstruam.

12. Commūnis libertātis causā multōs annōs bellum gerēmus. 13. Nāvis dīcitur esse celerrima. 14. Māgnā cum celeritāte contendēmus. 15. Mājōrēs cōpiās ex finitimīs regiōnibus dēdūcet. 16. Reliquās cohortēs in silvās collēsque compellunt. 17. Plūrimae difficultātēs Caesarem impediēt.

204.

II.

A.—1. The leading men of the district will assemble. 2. We shall pitch (our) camp on the top of the hill. 3. Several had been dismayed by the enemy's swift-ness. 4. He will not grant freedom to the citizens. 5. You will withdraw out of the state. 6. He has been informed of the difficulty by the guides. 7. We had ascertained the small number of the cavalry and cohorts. 8. I shall withdraw the baggage to the nearest hill. 9. Ships are swift; the horses were swifter.

B.—10. The fourth and seventh cohorts\* halt on the heights. 11. Several have been surrounded by the enemy. 12. The guides have found out the road. 13. He will lead out all the cavalry with several cohorts. 14. He will give the rest an opportunity for (*literally* of) flight. 15. We shall hasten to lay down (our) arms. 16. On account of the speed of the cohorts, you will reach the sea about midday. 17. They will leave (their) plunder across the river Thames.

C.—Decline the following combinations: nāvis longa, iter difficile, homō nōbilis, vir nōbilioꝛ, mare māgnū, castra mājōra, rēs pūblica (*s.*), complūres diēs (*pl.*), mājor pars, flūmen Tiberis (*s.*), altius vāllum, exercitus integer, aciēs duplex (*s.*), reliquī Belgae (*pl.*).

---

\* A plural noun may be modified by two (or more) adjectives in the singular.

## LESSON XXXVI.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND  
DECLENSIONS.

205.

## Paradigms.

## SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Voc.</i>	ūne	ūna	ūnum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
<i>Voc.</i>	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	neuter	neutra	neutrum
<i>Gen.</i>	neutrius	neutrius	neutrius
<i>Dat.</i>	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī
<i>Acc.</i>	neutrum	neutram	neutrum
<i>Abl.</i>	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	neutrī	neutrae	neutra
<i>Gen.</i>	neutrōrum	neutrārum	neutrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	neutrōs	neutrās	neutra
<i>Abl.</i>	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs



- (a) Notice that while these adjectives have for the most part the regular endings of the first and second declensions, yet the genitive and dative singular are irregular, and have the same form in all genders. The adjectives which show this irregularity are nine in number, and are given in the vocabulary below.

206.

## Illustrative Examples.

*Alia loca fossis, alia vallis muniēbat, some places he was fortifying with trenches, others with walls.*

*Altera legiō in Galliā hiemat, altera in Italiā, the one legion is wintering in Gaul, the other in Italy.*

*Reliquās (or ceterās) legiōnēs in aciē instruit, the other legions he draws up in line.*

- a. In these sentences observe (1) the force of **alius** and **alter** when repeated in distinct clauses, (2) the use of **reliqui** or **ceteri** for *the others, the rest*, while **alii** means merely *others*.



Navis Longa : War-ship.

## 207.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>alius</b> , a, ud,	<i>other, another.</i>
<b>aliī</b> . . <b>aliī</b> ,	<i>some . . others.</i>
<b>alter</b> , era, erum,	<i>the other (of two).</i>
<b>alter</b> . . <b>alter</b> ,	<i>the one . . the other.</i>
<b>cēterī</b> , ae, a (in plur. only),	<i>the others, the rest.</i>
<b>neuter</b> , tra, trum,	<i>neither.</i>
<b>nūllus</b> , a, um,	<i>no, none.</i>
<b>sōlus</b> , a, um,	<i>alone, only.</i>
<b>tōtus</b> , a, um,	<i>all, the whole.</i>
<b>ūllus</b> , a, um,	<i>any.</i>
<b>ūnus</b> , a, um,	<i>one; alone, only.</i>
<b>uter</b> , tra, trum,	<i>which (of two), used in questions.</i>

N.B.—Notice that while **alter** retains **e** in declension, **neuter** and **uter** drop it. The genitive singular of **alter** has **-ius**; in all the other words the ending is **-iūs**.

Notice also the additional irregularity in the neuter singular nominative and accusative of **alius**. The genitive singular of **alius** is **aliūs** (although **alterius** is generally used instead), and the dative **aliī**.

## EXERCISES.

## 208.

## I.

A.—1. Aliō tempore conveniunt. 2. Neuter ducum proelium committere audēbit. 3. Alteram partem vīcī Gallīs concēdit, alteram cohortibus. 4. Sine ūllō periculō castra mūniunt. 5. Ab aliīs audiunt; ā cēterīs audient. 6. In utrā flūminis rīpā castra posuērunt? 7. Tōta castra hominibus complentur. 8. Alia cōsilia rei pūblicae sunt ūtilia, alia periculōsa.

B.—9. Cum sōlā decimā legiōne proelium committam. 10. Nūlla cīvītās obsidēs mittet. 11. Tōtī Galliae



TRAJAN'S COLUMN.





equitēs imperāvit. 12. Alterum iter erat facilius. 13. Aliud iter habēmus nūllum. 14. Belgae ūnī nōn lēgātōs mittunt. 15. Cēterī portūs aliīs nōtī sunt, aliīs incōgnitī. 16. Alter portus Gallīs nōtus erat, alter Britannīs. 17. Neutra īnsula idōneōs portūs habet.

## 209.

## II.

A.—1. He gives orders to the whole province. 2. He orders some to fill the trenches, others to attack the walls. 3. To which is it more useful? It is useful to neither. 4. They made an attack from another part of the town. 5. He places the baggage of the whole army on the other bank of the river. 6. No ship is swifter; none of the ships will reach harbour. 7. They hinder others without any reason. 8. He will give freedom to the ambassador only.

B.—9. He hastened to the other camp. 10. To which camp (of the two) did the others hasten? 11. They were fortifying the heights during the whole of the night. 12. Some will lay down (their) arms, others will give hostages. 13. Neither line will begin the battle. 14. He is the brother of the one, the friend of the other. 15. They seem to be unfriendly to Caesar alone. 16. He is like no other leader.

C.—Decline the following combinations: mīles Rōmānus, vulnus grave, aliud tempus, reliqua cohors, minus periculum, rēx sōlus, alia rēs; (in the singular only) alter portus, nūlla spēs, media nox, mīlitāris ūsus, neutra īnsula, idōneus locus, ūnum latus, neuter frāter, dextrum cornū, nūllum aliud iter, utra legiō, novissimum agmen, summus mōns, tōta prōvincia, ūlla cīvitas, tertia vigilia, prīma lūx, alius obses, altera rīpa, nūllus impetus; (in the plural only) alia hiberna, cēterī cīvēs, superiōra loca.

## LESSON XXXVII.

## IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

210.

## Paradigms.

## (a) IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

*First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.*

## SINGULAR.

1.	amābar*	monēbar	regēbar	audiēbar
2.	amābāris	monēbāris	regēbāris	audiēbāris
3.	amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	audiēbātur

## PLURAL.

1.	amābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2.	amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3.	amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	audiēbantur

## (b) FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

## SINGULAR.

1.	amābor†	monēbor	regar	audiar
2.	amāberis	monēberis	regēris	audiēris
3.	amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	audiētur

## PLURAL.

1.	amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	audiēmur
2.	amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	audiēminī
3.	amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	audientur

(a) Compare these forms with those of the imperfect and future indicative active (44, 89, 179, 201), and also with those of the present indicative passive (164, 165). In particular, notice the replacing of **-m** by **-r**, and of **-bis** by **-beris**.

---

\* **Amābar** is translated *I was being loved, I used to be loved or I was loved* (119).

† **Amābor** is translated *I shall be loved*.

- (δ) Here it would be well to review in each conjugation the three tenses of the indicative (active and passive) formed from the present stem.

211. VOCABULARY.

dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,	<i>choose.</i>
dī-vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum,	<i>divide.</i>
in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēnsūm,	<i>burn.</i>
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum,	<i>loose, release.</i>

*Phrases :* nāvem or nāvēs solvō, *set sail.*  
in fugam dō, *put to flight.*

EXERCISES.

212. I.

A.—1. Mittimus, mittimur, mittēmur. 2. Oppida oppūgnantur; hiberna expūgnābuntur. 3. Impediēbātur, impediēbar. 4. Expellēbar, expellar. 5. Hostēs in fugam dabimus. 6. Nāvēs solvet; servus solvētur. 7. Dīviditur, dīviduntur. 8. Oppidum incendēbātur. 9. Locum dēligunt; legiōnēs dēligēbantur. 10. Mōns tenētur; imperium ā Caesare obtinēbātur; impetus sustinēbitur.

B.—11. Lēgātī retinentur; montibūs continēbantur; nāvēs dētinēbuntur. 12. Vocāmur, convocābāmur, revocābiminī. 13. Castra moventur; castra pōnentur. 14. Expelleris, repellēris. 15. Audīris, audiēris. 16. Fidēlis esse existimābar. 17. Jubēminī, jubēbor. 18. Superābāminī, superāberis. 19. Circumveniētur, circumveniēmur. 20. Rēx et amīcus appellābātur.

213. II.

A.—1. It will be divided; they used to be divided. 2. It will be carried; we shall be carried back. 3. The camp is being pitched; the camp will be burned. 4. We

are being surrounded; I was being surrounded. 5. He is putting the troops to flight; the signal is given. 6. They are setting sail; they have set sail. 7. They will be chosen; they will be summoned. 8. You are called brother; you will be called brothers. 9. You seem to be brothers; you seemed to be sisters.

B.—10. We are hemmed in by the rivers; the camp will be fortified by the cavalry. 11. It is being filled, it was being filled, it will be filled. 12. It is being fortified, it was being fortified, it will be fortified. 13. I am led, I was being led out, I shall be led back. 14. You used to be sent, we shall be sent out; the battle is begun. 15. You (s. *and* pl.) were thought to be unfriendly. 16. They are hindered, we shall be hindered (*use both* *dēterreō and impediō*). 17. I shall be surrounded, I shall be seen. 18. I used to be called free; I seemed to be a slave. 19. You will be surrounded; we were being surrounded. 20. You will seem to be unfriendly; you will be compelled to set sail.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### CARDINAL NUMERALS.

214. In the following list of cardinal numerals these points should be carefully observed\*:

- (a) the similarity in form of the cardinal and ordinal numerals (156);
- (b) the method of forming the numerals from *eleven* to *nineteen* inclusive;
- (c) the manner of expressing *twenty-one*, *twenty-two*, *one hundred and one* and similar numbers;

---

\* It is not necessary at this stage to commit the whole list to memory.



- (d) the different ways of expressing *eighteen, nineteen, twenty-eight, twenty-nine*, and similar numbers ;  
 (e) the ending of the tens from 30 to 90 inclusive in *-gintā* ; of the hundreds from 200 to 900 inclusive in *-centī* or *-gentī*.

215.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1. <i>ūnus, one</i>		
2. <i>duo, two</i>	28.	{ <i>duodētrīgintā</i>
3. <i>trēs, three</i>		{ <i>vīgintī octō</i>
4. <i>quattuor, four</i>		{ <i>octō et vīgintī</i>
5. <i>quīnque</i>	29.	{ <i>ūndētrīgintā</i>
6. <i>sex</i>		{ <i>vīgintī novem</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	30.	{ <i>novem et vīgintī</i>
8. <i>octō</i>	40.	<i>trīgintā</i>
9. <i>novem</i>	50.	<i>quadrāgintā</i>
10. <i>decem</i>	60.	<i>quīnquāgintā</i>
11. <i>ūndecim</i>	70.	<i>sexāgintā</i>
12. <i>duodecim</i>	80.	<i>septuāgintā</i>
13. <i>tredecim</i>	90.	<i>octōgintā</i>
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	100.	<i>nōnāgintā</i>
15. <i>quīndecim</i>		<i>centum</i>
16. <i>sēdecim</i>	101.	{ <i>centum ūnus</i>
17. <i>septendecim</i>		{ <i>centum et ūnus</i>
18.	124.	<i>centum vīgintī quat-</i>
{ <i>duodēvīgintī</i>		<i>tuor</i>
{ <i>octōdecim -</i>	200.	<i>ducentī</i>
{ <i>decem et octō</i>	300.	<i>trecentī</i>
19.	400.	<i>quadringentī</i>
{ <i>ūndēvīgintī</i>	500.	<i>quīngentī</i>
{ <i>novendecim -</i>	600.	<i>sescentī</i>
20. <i>vīgintī</i>	700.	<i>septingentī</i>
21.	800.	<i>octingentī</i>
{ <i>ūnus et vīgintī</i>	900.	<i>nōngentī</i>
{ <i>vīgintī ūnus</i>	1000.	<i>mīlle</i>
22.		
{ <i>duo et vīgintī</i>		
{ <i>vīgintī duo</i>		

216. (a) Most of the cardinal numerals are undeclined, the same form being used for all cases and genders. The following, however, are declined: **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, the hundreds from **ducentī** to **nōngentī** inclusive, and **mille**.

(b) The declension of **ūnus** has been given in 205.

(c) The hundreds are declined like the plural of **bonus**, as **ducentī**, **ae**, **a**.

(d) The declension of **mille** will be given in 230.

(e) **Duo** and **trēs** are declined in the following section.

## 217.

## Paradigms.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Voc.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

## EXERCISES.

## 218.

## I.

A.—1. Duās legiōnēs relinquet, trēs ex hibernīs ēdūcet. 2. Cum sescentīs equitibus nāvēs solvēmus. 3. Diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcerāmus. 4. Ad Caesarem cum ducentīs obsidibus veniēbat. 5. Duodēvigintī nāvēs in ūnum locum cōguntur. 6. Sīgna militāria quattuor et septuāgintā relinquuntur. 7. Centum vīgintī quīque vicōs habent. 8. Equitēs circiter trīgintā mittentur.

B.—9. Quattuordecim annōs bellum gerēbant. 10. Quīngentīs equitibus māgnam multitudinem hostium repellit. 11. Octō hōrās castra oppūgnant; nōnā

hōrā castra expūgnantur. 12. Rōmānīs ūnīs concēdimus. 13. Legiōnem decimam quārtā vigiliā ēdūcam. 14. Quadrāgintā cohortium impedīmenta relicta sunt. 15. Incolās trium vicōrum necat.

219.

II.

A.—1. He sends four cohorts ; he will send the cavalry with four cohorts. 2. They will give five hundred hostages. 3. They were waging two wars at one time. 4. They burn forty-three towns and about two hundred villages. 5. An attack was made by four hundred and twenty cavalry. 6. They had collected twenty-eight ships. 7. Thirty-five soldiers will be chosen from the whole army. 8. The village is divided into two parts by a river. 9. About four hundred villages will be burned.

B.—10. Two legions, the sixth and the seventh, will be left on the other bank. 11. On the fifth day, five hundred and fifty-five horsemen had been collected. 12. They are giving up three hundred and sixty hostages. 13. He left two legions in the camp, and with the remaining six marched for nine days through the neighbouring states. 14. He orders the lieutenant to set sail with two legions and one hundred and seventy cavalry. 15. We are adjacent to three states.

220.

## WORD LIST IV.

## NOUNS.

causa	difficultās	libertās	pater
celeritās	dux	mare	paucitās
cīvis	facultās	māter	pōns
cīvitās	fīnis	mōns	regiō
cohors	frāter	nāvis	rēs pūblica
collis	hostis	nihil	soror

## ADJECTIVES.

alius	fidēlis	neuter	pūblicus
alter	fīnitimus	nōbilis	similis
audāx	fīrmus	nōtus	sōlus
bonus	īmus	novus	summus
brevis	incōgnitus	nūllus	superior
celer	īnferior	periculōsus	tōtus
cēterī	inūtilis	plūs	ūllus
complūrēs	māior	potēns	ultimus
dēnsus	malus	prior	ūnus
dissimilis	māximus	propior	uter
extrēmus	minor	prūdēns	ūtilis

## VERBS.

contineō	dēsiliō	dīvidō	pertineō
dēducō	dēterreō	existimō	prohibeō
dēligō	dētineō	imperō	solvō
dēponō	dīcō	incendō	videor

## READING LESSON VII.

HOW HORATIUS KEPT THE BRIDGE. (508 B.C.)

221.

## VOCABULARY.

**rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissum,** *break down, destroy.*  
**trānsnō, (or trānō) āre, āvī, ātum,** *swim across.*

Secundō annō postquam (*after*) ex civitāte rēx expulsus erat, Tarquinius auxilium ā Lārte Porsenā petivit. Lārs Porsena fīnēs lātissimōs in Etrūrīā habēbat et multis dē causis inimicus erat populō Rōmānō. Māximās cōpiās ex omnibus partibus Etrūrīae coēgit et māgnis itineribus ad flūmen Tiberim contendit. Rōmānī celeritāte hostium adventūs permōtī sunt; aliī



ex agris in urbem convēnerunt, alii proximās silvās petiverunt. Rōma mūrīs altissimīs et flūmine lātissimō mūniēbātur; sed pōns, quī (*which*) factus erat in (*over*) Tiberī, ab exteriōribus mūnitiōnibus ad portam urbis pertinēbat. Propter paucitātem cīvium vidēbātur facillimum esse pontem occupāre et in mediam urbem exercitum dūcere.

Itāc (*this*) dē causā summum erat periculum. Cēteri Rōmānī jam (*now*) dē salūte dēspērābant, sed ūnus vir fortissimus, Horātius Cocles, communis libertātis causā pontem dēfendere cōstituit. Cum duōbus aliīs, Spuriō Lārtiō et Titō Herminiō, ad extrēmam partem pontis contendit, et trēs Rōmānī omnēs hostium impetūs repellunt, dum (*while*) reliquī cīvēs pontem rescindunt. Post complūrēs hōrās māior pars pontis rescissa est, et Horātius duōs amīcōs ex pūgnā excēdere jubet. Tum (*then*) ā tōtō exercitū impetus in Horātium factus est. Summā cum virtūte impetum sustinuit et plūrimōs in fugam dedit, sed ab hostibus paene (*almost*) circumventus est. Tandem (*at length*) reliquam partem pontis resciderunt Rōmānī. Tum Horātius dē ponte in medium flūmen dēsiluit et sine ūllō vulnere ad alteram rīpam trāsnāvit. Ita (*thus*) fortitūdō ūnius virī tōtī rei pūblicae libertātem dedit.



Roman Coin.

## LESSON XXXIX.

## FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

222.

## Paradigms.

FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF **sum**.

## SINGULAR.

1. erō ( <i>I shall be</i> )	fuerō ( <i>I shall have been</i> )
2. eris	fueris
3. erit	fuerit

## PLURAL.

1. erimus	fuerimus
2. eritis	fueritis
3. erunt	fuerint

a. Note (1) the relation in form to the imperfect and pluperfect of **sum** (149, 129); (2) the difference in the vowels before **-nt** in the two tenses.

223.

## Paradigms.

(a) FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

*First Conj.    Second Conj.    Third Conj.    Fourth Conj.*

## SINGULAR.

1. amāverō*	monuerō	rēxerō	audīverō
2. amāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audīveris
3. amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit

## PLURAL.

1. amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
2. amāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audīveritis
3. amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

---

\* **Amāverō** is translated *I shall have loved*.

## (b) FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

*First Conjugation.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |    |            |                                    |              |
|----|------------|------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. | amātus erō | ( <i>I shall have been loved</i> ) | amātī erimus |
| 2. | " eris     |                                    | " eritis     |
| 3. | " erit     |                                    | " erunt      |

Similarly,

*Second Conjugation.*      monitus erō*Third Conjugation.*      rēctus erō*Fourth Conjugation.*      audītus erō

- a. Note the relation between these forms and those of the tenses of **sum** given in 222. From which of the stems furnished by the principal parts is the future perfect obtained in the active voice? From which in the passive voice?
- b. At this point it would be well to review the three tenses of the perfect system of the indicative in the active and passive voices respectively.

## 224.

## Illustrative Examples.

**Sī** obsidēs mīserint, cōpiās redūcam, *if they send (literally shall have sent) hostages, I shall lead back the troops.*

**Cum** cōpiās redūxerit, obsidēs mittēmus, *when he leads (literally shall have led) the troops back, we shall send hostages.*

**Sī** amīcī esse vidēbuntur, cōpiās redūcet, *if they seem (literally shall seem) to be friendly, he will lead back his troops.*

- a. In these dependent clauses introduced by **sī** (*if*) or **cum** (*when*), notice (1) that the reference is to *future* time, although this is not clearly expressed by the English verb; (2) that in the first two sentences

the act referred to in the dependent clause must be completed before the act referred to in the principal clause, while in the third sentence this is not the case. What tenses are used in these dependent clauses ?

- δ.* Here, as regularly in subordinate clauses, Latin is more logical and exact than English in indicating (1) whether the time of the action is present, past, or future, and (2) whether the action is prior to that of the main verb, or concurrent with it.

## 225.

## VOCABULARY.

**absum**, **abesse**, **āfuī**, *be absent, be far away, be distant.*

**augeō**, **ēre**, **auxī**, **auctum**, *increase.*

**cōn-sīdō**, **ere**, **-sēdī**, **-sessum**, *encamp.*

**dī-mittō**, **ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, *send out (in different directions), despatch, dismiss.*

**dis-pōnō**, **ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum**, *place at intervals, post.*

**distrib-uō**, **ere**, **-uī**, **-ūtum**, *assign, distribute; divide.*

**explōrō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *examine, reconnoitre.*

**in-veniō**, **īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, *come upon, find.*

**reperiō**, **īre**, **repperī**, **repertum**, *find, discover.*

**timeō**, **ēre**, **uī**, *fear, have fears.*

N.B.—(a) The prefix **dis-** (or **dī-** before certain consonants) is used in compounds to express the idea of *apart*; compare also **discēdō**, *depart, withdraw*. **Dīvidō** contains the same element, as do also the adjectives **dissimilis** and **difficilis**.

(b) **Reperiō** is used of finding, after inquiry or search; **inveniō** of finding by chance or without effort.

(c) **Augeō** in the active voice means *increase* (transitive = *make greater*); in the passive voice it means *increase* (intransitive = *be made or become greater*).



## EXERCISES.

226.

I.

A.—1. Numerus augēbitur; numerus auctus erit; numerus mājor erit; numerus mājor fuerit. 2. Nāvem in portū invēnērunt; in idōncō locō cōsēderint. 3. Cōpiās dīmiserit; cōpiaē erunt dīmissae. 4. In duās partēs distribūtī eritis. 5. Germānōs sine causā timue-rāmus. 6. Cum omnis exercitus dispositus erit, sīgnum dabitur. 7. Sī sociī erunt fidēlēs, facillimum erit omnia itinera explōrāre. 8. Ā periculō abesse videor; aberō; āfuerō.

B.—9. Bellum gerimus; bella gesserimus. 10. Alterum iter difficilius erit. 11. Mitteris; mīseris; mittimus; mīsimus. 12. Bella brevia erunt; ūtilēs fueritis amīcī. 13. Nihil reppereris; causam reperīs; ab hostibus reperiēris. 14. Cum ad infimum collem pervēnerimus, cōsīdēmus. 15. Sī cōpiaē hostium auctae erunt, difficile erit collem tenēre. 16. Sī praesidia trāns Rhēnum disposuerō, Germānōs Galliam vāstārē prohibēbō.

227.

II.

A.—1. We shall find; we shall have found; we shall have encamped. 2. It will be increased; it will be found; it will have been found. 3. The matter has been examined; the roads will have been reconnoitred. 4. It will be most useful; it will have been very easy. 5. They are absent; you will be absent; we had been far away. 6. The forces have been increased; the number had increased. 7. When I discover the reason, I shall despatch messengers to the neighbouring states. 8. If the foot-soldiers fear the sea, the ships will be assigned to the cavalry.

B.—9. They have encamped; he had encamped; I shall have encamped. 10. The camp was pitched; the camp had been pitched; the camp will have been pitched. 11. He will have summoned the leading men; the leading men will have been dismissed. 12. They will have everything; they will have seen everyone. 13. You will be free; it will be the freest of all the states. 14. When Caesar is absent they will attack the winter camp. 15. If the number of the enemy increases, we shall not join battle. 16. If you begin to post garrisons, we shall seek assistance.

---

## LESSON XL.

### **Mille.** ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE.

#### 228. Illustrative Examples.

**Mille equitēs mittentur**, *a thousand horsemen will be sent.*

**Adventus mille equitum**, *the arrival of a thousand horsemen.*

**Cum mille equitibus**, *with one thousand cavalry.*

a. **Mille**, *a thousand*, like most cardinal numerals in Latin, is an indeclinable adjective, regularly used with a plural substantive.

#### 229. Illustrative Examples.

**Tria milia equitum mittentur**, *three thousand horsemen will be sent.*

**Adventus sex milium equitum**, *the arrival of six thousand cavalry.*

**Cum duōbus milibus equitum**, *with two thousand cavalry.*

a. The plural of **mille**, **milia** or (as it is often spelled) **mīllia**, is a neuter noun followed by the partitive genitive (174), **tria milia equitum** being literally *three thousands of horsemen.*

230.

## Paradigm.

DECLENSION OF *mīlia*.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mīlium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>

231.

## Illustrative Examples.

*Mille passūs\* pertinet, it extends (for) a thousand paces (or a mile).*

*Tria mīlia passuum abest, he is three thousand paces (or three miles) distant.*

*Fossa est ducentōs pedēs longa, the trench is two hundred feet long.*

*a. Observe that distance how far or extent of space is expressed in Latin by the accusative without a preposition. Compare the accusative of time (159).*

232.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>agg-er, -eris, m.,</i>	<i>mound.</i>
<i>auc-tor, -tōris, m. (literally increaser),</i>	<i>advocate, adviser.</i>
<i>auctōri-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>influence, weight.</i>
<i>dēfēn-sor, -sōris, m.,</i>	<i>defender.</i>
<i>imperā-tor, -tōris, m.,</i>	<i>commander (in chief).</i>
<i>on-us, -eris, n.,</i>	<i>burden, weight.</i>
<i>passus, ūs, m.,</i>	<i>step, pace.</i>
<i>spatium, ī, n.,</i>	<i>distance, space.</i>

---

\* See vocabulary, 232. The Roman **passus** is the distance between two successive positions of the same foot, that is, really two of our paces. A thousand such paces therefore would be about 5,000 feet, or, roughly speaking, a mile.

N.B.—The suffix **-tor** is used to form from verbs nouns denoting the agent or doer of an action. The form of the noun closely resembles that of the participial (or supine) stem of the verb, **-tor** becoming **-sor** in nouns derived from verbs which have **s** instead of **t** in this stem.\*

## EXERCISES.

233.

I.

A.—1. Milia passuum octō ā castrīs cōnsēderant. 2. Agger mīlle sescentōs passūs abest. 3. Locum mūrō vīgintī trēs pedēs altō mūniunt. 4. Sī dēfēnsōrēs idōneī dēlēctī erunt, facile erit sine imperātōre locum tenēre. 5. Māximam auctōritātem habēre existimantur. 6. Mājus onus sustinuimus. 7. Māgnū spatium imperātōr aberat. 8. Filius imperātōris auctor erat cōsiliī.

B.—9. Sex mīlia peditum et mīlle equitēs relīquit. 10. Mīlia sex explōrātōrum dīmisit. 11. Ex mīlibus trīgintā tertia pars reducta erit. 12. Agger erat lātus pedēs trecentōs vīgintī, altus pedēs septuāgintā. 13. Silva multa mīlia passuum pertinēbat. 14. Cum mīlibus trecentīs mīlitum nāvēs solvet. 15. Onera gravia portābant. 16. Milia hominum octōgintā dēlēcta sunt.

234.

II.

A.—1. They gave six thousand horses and a thousand hostages to Caesar. 2. The camp had been pitched three miles from the mound. 3. At daybreak he was a mile from the camp. 4. He had learned from the scouts the small number of defenders. 5. If you begin to collect an army, you will seem to be advocates of

---

\* Compare also *explorator*, *spectator*, *auditor*, *monitor*, *rector*, *inventor*, *depositor*. Sometimes the suffix **-tor** is added to nouns, as **gladiātor** (primarily one who uses the sword) from **gladius**.



war. 6. The lieutenant was sent by the commander-in-chief with four thousand foot-soldiers and a thousand horsemen. 7. They had carried the burdens a great distance. 8. He has no influence with (*literally* among, inter) the defenders.

B.—9. Twenty-three thousand Gauls had come to Caesar. 10. I shall demand two thousand hostages from the commander-in-chief. 11. The forests were thought to extend two hundred miles. 12. The camp will have been fortified by a trench twenty feet wide and a rampart five feet high. 13. The right wing of the army extends a thousand feet, the left (wing) five hundred paces. 14. The other legion is a greater distance away ; it was about a mile and a half away. 15. The burden was heavy ; the burden will be heavier.



Imperator : Commander-in-chief. (*Augustus.*)

## LESSON XLI.

## PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE. ADVERBS: REGULAR FORMATION AND COMPARISON.

## 235. Illustrative Examples.

*Castra oppugnārī jussit, he ordered the camp to be attacked.*

*Castra movērī jussit, he ordered the camp to be moved.*

*Castra pōnī jussit, he ordered a camp to be pitched.*

*Castra mūnīrī jussit, he ordered a camp to be fortified.*

a. Observe the method of forming in each conjugation the present infinitive passive. Compare 123.

## 236. Paradigms.

## PRESENT INFINITIVE.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>First Conjugation.</i>	amāre,	-āre.	amārī,	-ārī.
<i>Second Conjugation.</i>	monēre,	-ēre.	monērī,	-ērī.
<i>Third Conjugation.</i>	regere,	-ere.	regī,	-ī.
<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>	audīre,	-īre.	audīrī,	-īrī.

## 237. Illustrative Examples.

ADJECTIVE.			ADVERB.	
lātus,	genitive	lātī.	lātē,	widely.
liber,	"	liberī.	liberē,	freely.
celer,	"	celeris.	celeriter,	quickly.
fortis,	"	fortis.	fortiter,	bravely.
audāx,	"	audācis.	audācter,	boldly.

a. Observe that adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions end in **-ē**, those from adjectives of the third declension in **-iter** (or, in a few cases, **-ter**).

b. Observe further that such adverbs may be formed by substituting these endings for the ending of

the genitive singular of the adjective (-ī or -is). Adjectives in -ns form their adverbs in -nter; as, *potēns*, gen. *potentis*, adverb *potenter*, *powerfully*.

238. Illustrative Examples.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>lātē</i> , <i>widely</i> ;	<i>lātius</i> , <i>more widely</i> ;	<i>lātissimē</i> , <i>most (or very) widely</i> .
<i>celeriter</i> , <i>quickly</i> ;	<i>celerius</i> , <i>more quickly</i> ;	<i>celerrimē</i> , <i>most (or very) quickly</i> .
<i>fortiter</i> , <i>bravely</i> ;	<i>fortius</i> , <i>more bravely</i> ;	<i>fortissimē</i> , <i>most (or very) bravely</i> .

a. Observe how adverbs formed from adjectives are compared; the comparative is formed by taking the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective (that is, by changing -ior to -ius); and the superlative by changing -us of the superlative of the adjective to -ē.

239. VOCABULARY.

*ācriter*, adv., *fiercely, vigorously* (from *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*, *sharp, eager*).

*aegrē*, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty* (from *aeger*, *gra*, *grum*, *sick, weak*); in superlative, *with the greatest difficulty*.

*audācter*, adv., *boldly*.

*celeriter*, adv., *quickly, swiftly, speedily*.

*dīligenter*, adv., *carefully* (from *dīligēns*, -entis, *careful*).

*fortiter*, adv., *bravely, gallantly*.

*graviter*, adv., *severely, seriously*.

*lātē*, adv., *widely, extensively*.

*liberē*, adv., *freely*.

*longē*, adv., *far*.

## EXERCISES.

240.

I.

A.—1. Omnēs ācerrimē et fortissimē pūgnāvērunt. 2. Hostium impetum aegrē sustinent. 3. Castra vāllō pedēs duodecim altō dīligerter mūnīrī jubet. 4. Dīcit\* liberius et audācius. 5. Exercitum lātius distribūi jusserat. 6. Imperātor multīs rēbus impedīrī dīcēbātur. 7. Graviter vulnerātus erat et aegerrimē ad castra pervēnit. 8. Belgae ā prōvinciā longiſsimē absunt. 9. Auxilia in summō monte celeriter collocārī jussit et tōtū montem hominibus complērī.

B.—10. Omnia dīligerter facta erant; tria mīlia passuum iter dīligerter fēcerant. 11. Equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī jubet et proclium equestre committī. 12. Oppidum montibus altissimīs vidētur continērī. 13. Superiōre annō plūrimās nāvēs celerrimē cōgī jusserāmus. 14. Omnia oppida vicōsque incendiū jubet, et mīlle ducentōs obsidēs in prōvinciam addūcī. 15. Longē nōbilissimus esse omnium Gallōrum exīstīmābātur.

241.

II.

A.—1. He ordered the place to be fortified more carefully. 2. They began to fight more bravely and fiercely. 3. He will speak\* most freely; he speaks very seriously. 4. You are said to be feared by all. 5. The rest of the army will be three miles distant. 6. They will be farther distant from the rest of the army. 7. We shall order the enemy's territories to be laid waste far and wide. 8. The village is said to be divided into two parts by a river twenty-two feet deep.

---

\* **Dicō** means *speak* as well as *say*.



B.—9. He will have far the greatest influence among the allies. 10. I have ordered all the cavalry and ten thousand infantry to be sent quickly. 11. The number of the enemy seems to be increasing. 12. He orders all the other ambassadors to be summoned. 13. If the enemy attack boldly, we shall with the greatest difficulty hold the hill. 14. He demands about a thousand ships from the other state. 15. You used to order the roads to be most carefully reconnoitred.

## LESSON XLII.

### Quam WITH COMPARATIVES. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

242.

#### Illustrative Examples.

Belgae fortiōrēs erant quam Gallī,	}	<i>the Belgians were braver than the Gauls.</i>
Belgae fortiōrēs erant Gallīs,		
Altera īnsula est minor quam Britannia,	}	<i>the other island is smaller than Britain.</i>
Altera īnsula est minor Britannīā,		
Ad īnsulam pervēnit minōrem quam Britanniam,	}	<i>he came to an island smaller than Britain.</i>
Ad īnsulam pervēnit minōrem Britanniā,		
Mājōrēs cōpiās sociīs quam prōvinciae imperat,		<i>he demands larger forces from the allies than from the province.</i>
Nihil est ūtilius quam amīcōs habēre,		<i>nothing is more useful than to have friends.</i>

a. Observe how, after comparatives, two methods are used in Latin to express the comparison :—

- (1) **quam** (meaning *than*) is used, two substantives compared being put in the same case ;
- (2) instead of **quam**, followed by the nominative or accusative, the ablative without **quam** may be used. This is called the *Ablative of Comparison*.

## 243.

## VOCABULARY.

**cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum**, *become accustomed ;*  
in perfect, *be accustomed*.

**cōnsuētū-dō, -dinis, f.**, *custom*.

**continēns, -entis**, *incessant, continual, un-*  
*broken, continuous*.

**continenter, adv.**, *continually, continuously*.

**distō, āre**, *be apart*.

**lab-or, -ōris, m.**, *toil, labour*.

**prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum**, *send in advance*.

**prae-stō, āre, -stitī**, *surpass ; praestat* (with  
*quam*), *it is preferable, better*.

**stō, stāre, stetī, statum**, *stand*.

**terra, ae, f.**, *land*.

*Phrases : ex cōnsuētūdine, according to custom.*

**continēns terra** (or **continēns** alone as fem.  
noun, with abl. **continentī**), *the main-*  
*land, the continent*.

N.B.—(a) The prefix **prae-** is used in composition to express the idea of *before* ; this appears in English as **pre-**, as, *predict*.

(b) The perfect tense of certain Latin verbs may be freely translated by the English present tense, to denote the present state resulting from a completed action ; so, **cōnsuēvī**, *I have become accustomed, I have*

*formed a habit* = *I am accustomed*; *cōgnōvī*, *I have learned* = *I know*. (The pluperfect of these verbs will have the force of an imperfect = *I was accustomed, I knew*.) Similarly *circumventī sunt* may be translated, *they are surrounded*; *superātī sunt*, *they are conquered*; *dīvīsum est*, *it is divided*.

## EXERCISES.

244.

I.

A.—1. Agger altior est quam mūrus; mūnitiōnēs altiorēs sunt aggere. 2. Tamesis dicitur esse longior Tiberī. 3. Breviōrēs sunt in Britannīā quam in continentī noctēs. 4. Proximī stābant; in locīs superiōribus steterant. 5. Praestat cōpiās instruere quam fugā salūtem petere. 6. In multis terrīs sunt continentēs silvae palūdēsque. 7. Impedimenta praemissa sunt et in summō monte collocāta. 8. Insulae tria mīlia passuum distant. 9. Nōn populī Rōmānī cōsuētūdō est obsidēs dare; obsidēs dare nōn cōsuēvimus.

B.—10. Prudentiōrēs estis quam bellī auctōrēs. 11. Insula circiter mīlia passuum trīgintā ā continentī aberat. 12. Castra mājōra sunt quam cōsuētūdō exercitūs postulat. 13. Ex cōsuētūdine mājōrem partem vici cohortibus quam equitibus concessit. 14. Altitūdō mūrī minor erat quam lātitūdō fossārum. 15. Altitūdō fossae mājor erit quam flūminis. 16. Belgae cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerēbant. 17. Nūlla est sine labōre salūs. 18. Circumventī sumus; Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs.

245.

II.

A.—1. The land is more useful than the sea; the sea is larger than the land. 2. Nothing is better than liberty. 3. The trenches were twenty-three feet apart.

4. They had stood continuously for six hours. 5. The other island is farther distant from the continent than Britain. 6. The Romans are awaiting the end of all (their) toils. 7. I know the custom of the Gauls. 8. They are accustomed to send in advance the swiftest ships. 9. We were accustomed to wage incessant wars.

B.—10. We fear a man more powerful than the king. 11. According to custom he had sent all the cavalry in advance at daybreak. 12. By incessant toil they had fortified the camp more quickly than they were accustomed. 13. It is easier to leap down than to stand on the top of the wall. 14. He ordered a smaller portion of the plunder to be given to the cavalry than to the rest of the army. 15. To defend the camp bravely is preferable to laying\* down (our) arms. 16. They will call the defenders of the bridge braver and more daring than the commander-in-chief. 17. It seems to be better to seek other lands. 18. On the mainland the towns are not far apart.

---

### LESSON XLIII.

ADVERBS: IRREGULAR FORMATION AND COMPARISON.

#### **Quam** WITH SUPERLATIVES.

246. Besides adverbs formed from adjectives, according to the methods described in Lesson XLI., there are not a few instances where certain case-forms of the adjective are used as adverbs (as is regularly the case in the comparative degree).

In the following, the accusative singular neuter of the adjective is used adverbially :—

---

\* That is, 'is better than to lay down.'



multum, *much*.

plūrimum, *most, very much*.

solum, *only*.

facile, *easily*.

primum, *first, in the first place*.

In the following, the ablative singular neuter or feminine of the adjective is used adverbially :—

prīmō, *at first*.

brevī, *in a short time, quickly*.

subitō, *suddenly* (from the adjective *subitus*, a, um, *sudden*).

ūnā (with *cum*) *at the same time, together, along (with)*.

247. The following are adverbs in common use which have no corresponding adjectives :—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
diū, <i>long, for a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē
ferē, <i>almost</i>		

248. The following adverbs show some irregularity in formation (compare the corresponding adjectives, 195) :—

	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
(māgnus)	māgnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	māximē
(parvus)	parum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē
(bonus)	bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
(malus)	male, <i>ill</i>	pējus	pessimē
	prope, <i>near, nearly</i>	propius	proximē

249.

Illustrative Examples.

Quam māximās cōpiās coēgit, *he collected forces as large as possible*.

Equitēs quam māximē impediunt, *they hinder the cavalry as much as possible*.

Quam primum iter fēcērunt, *they marched as soon as possible*.

a. Observe how *quam* with the superlative (both of adjectives and of adverbs) is used to express the highest degree possible, the regular translation taking the form *as . . . as possible*.

## EXERCISES.

250.

I.

A.—1. Prīmō cōpiae māgnopere perterrentur. 2. Brevī causam reperiēmus. 3. Saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt et inter peditēs pūgnant. 4. Ūnā cum Caesare multōs annōs fuerat. 5. Quam māximum numerum inimicōrum ex cīvitatē expellam. 6. Facile paucī multōs montem occupāre prohibēbunt. 7. Nōn multum distant. 8. Facillimē impetum hostium diūtius sustinēbimus.

B.—9. Subitō duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit. 10. Diū principātum tōtius ferē Galliae obtinuerant. 11. Saepius ad senātum litterās mittēmus. 12. Primum ā proximīs cīvitatibus auxilium petivērunt. 13. Ūnā cum cēterīs ex proeliō excesserant. 14. Propter ūsum militārem minimē terrērī vidēbantur. 15. Quam celerimē ad mare pervenire contendit. 16. Praesidium quam amīcissimum habēre cōstitueram.

251.

II.

A.—1. They had fought long and vigorously. 2. At first he does not venture to speak freely and boldly. 3. In the first place he ordered corn to be procured as quickly as possible. 4. They will sustain the attack more easily; the attack will be sustained less easily. 5. He ordered as many ships as possible to be collected. 6. They hesitate to depart farther from the line of march. 7. We shall not await the auxiliaries (any) longer. 8. We had been greatly hindered by marshes.

B.—9. As soon as possible they began to move the camp nearer. 10. Suddenly almost all leaped down from the ship along with the guides. 11. The harbour was less suitable than the lake. 12. He is accustomed to demand troops from as many states as possible.

13. When they learn of Caesar's arrival they will be more terrified. 14. They determined to lay waste the neighbouring territories as widely as possible. 15. They are nearly surrounded. 16. Almost all the roads have been carefully reconnoitred.

## 252.

## WORD LIST D.

## DISTANCE.

foot	distance	nearer, nearest
pace	be (far) distant	farther, farthest
mile, miles	be apart	most distant

## LANDSCAPE.

land	hill	territory
sea	mountain	mainland
district	heights	top of a mountain
state	bridge	foot of a mountain

## ADJECTIVES.

first	other, another	larger, largest
next	the other (of two)	smaller, smallest
previous	the others	lower, higher
several	any	more, most
no, none	alone	incessant, unbroken
neither	whole	good, bad

## WAR.

enemy	defender	war-ship	despatch
leader	cohort	set sail	reconnoitre
commander-	mound	encamp	send in advance
in-chief	guide	post	put to flight

## MISCELLANEOUS NOUNS.

ship	custom	freedom	citizen
burden	adviser	toil	citizenship
end	influence	fewness	difficulty
speed			opportunity

## MISCELLANEOUS VERBS.

divide	release	burn	find
assign	increase	fear	be accustomed
choose	surpass	stand	it is better

## ADVERBS.

fiercely	swiftly	at first
boldly	suddenly	in the first place
bravely	continually	in a short time
freely	often	long, for a long time
easily	almost	much, very much
with difficulty	nearly	greatly
carefully	about	more
severely	far	less
only	widely	along (with)

## READING LESSON VIII.

THE STORY OF MUCIUS SCAEVOLA. (508 B.C.)

253.

## VOCABULARY.

*manus, ūs, f., hand.*

*mors, mortis, f., death.*

Fortēs audācēsque pontis dēfēnsōrēs Porsenam Rōmam occupāre prohibuerant. Porsena exercitum in Etrūriam nōn redūxit, sed castra in locō idōneō posuit quī (*which*) mille circiter passūs ā Tiberī aberat. Tum (*then*) equitēs quam plūrimōs ēmisit et finēs Rōmānōrum longē lātēque vāstārī iussit. Brevī summa esse inopia frūmentī coepit. Mūcius, filius Rōmānī nōbilissimī, Porsenam necāre cōstituit. Nocte per mediōs hostēs contendit et posterō diē dīligenter castra rēgis explōrāvit. Porsena incōgnitus erat Mūciō, et prō (*instead of, prep. with abl. case*) rēge ūnum ex prīncipibus necāvit, quī (*who*) longē nōbilissimus omnium esse vidēbātur.



Militēs quī proximī stābant aegerrimē Mūcium comprehendērunt (*seized*) et ad rēgem addūxērunt.

Mūcius minimē perterrēri vidēbātur; liberē et audācter dixit. “Rōmānus sum cīvis. Rēgem Porsenam necāre cōstitueram et populum Rōmānum ab injūriā dēfendere. Nōn audācior sum cēterīs Rōmānīs. Sī Porsena tōtum exercitum ē finibus Rōmānīs nōn edūxerit, trecentī aliī nōn dubitābunt rei pūblicae causā māximōs labōrēs et summa perīcula adire (*to encounter*). Mortem nōn timeō. Praestat incendiī quam libertātem āmittere (*to lose*).” Simul (*at the same time*) dextram manum in īgnem (*fire*) injēcit (*thrust*), quī ā militibus factus erat. Rēx fortitūdine Rōmānōrum māgnopere permōtus est et Mūcium dīmitti jussit. Pācem quam celerrimē cum senātū Rōmānō cōfirmāvit et cum omnibus cōpiīs ē finibus Rōmānōrum discessit. Postea (*afterwards*) Mūcius Scaevola\* appellābātur, quod (*because*) sinistram sōlam manum habēbat.

## LESSON XLIV.

### RELATIVE PRONOUN. *Quod*.

254.

#### Paradigm.

#### THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *quī*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

\*The Latin word **Scaevola** means “the left-handed.”

255.

Illustrative Examples.

**Lēgātus**, quī missus est, prūdēns est, *the ambassador who has been sent is prudent.*

**Lēgātus**, quem mīserunt, prūdēns est, *the ambassador whom they have sent is prudent.*

**Legiōnem**, quae missa est, exspectāmus, *we are awaiting the legion which has been sent.*

**Adventum** legiōnis quam mīserunt exspectāmus, *we are awaiting the approach of the legion which they have sent.*

**Legiōnēs**, quārum adventum exspectābāmus, pervēnērunt, *the legions, whose approach we were awaiting, arrived.*

**Germānī**, ā quibus missus est, pācem petunt, *the Germans, by whom he was sent, are seeking peace.*

**Germānī**, quibuscum bellum gerēbat, pācem petunt, *the Germans with whom he was waging war, seek peace.*

*a.* In connection with these sentences, observe :—

- (1) that the relative pronoun in Latin changes its form to indicate gender, number, and case ;
- (2) that the *gender* and *number* of the relative are determined by the word (called the *Antecedent*) to which it refers ;
- (3) that the *case* of the relative is in no way determined by the antecedent, but by its relation to the dependent clause to which it belongs ;
- (4) that in the first four sentences the relative pronoun *that* could be used in place of *who*, *whom* or *which* ;
- (5) that in the second and fourth sentences the relative might be omitted altogether in English, something which never occurs in Latin ;
- (6) that the preposition **cum** is suffixed to the ablative it governs. The accent is then on the penult (13).

256.

## Illustrative Examples.

Oppidum, quod mūnīverant, expūgnātum est, *the town which they had fortified has been taken by storm.*

Timent quod oppidum expūgnātum est, *they are afraid because the town has been taken by storm.*

Quod hostēs nōn longē aberant, sīgnum dedit, *because the enemy were not far distant, he gave the signal.*

- a. Observe that the same Latin word **quod** is used both as a relative pronoun (neuter singular nominative or accusative) and as a conjunction with the force of *because*.\*

257.

## VOCABULARY.

barbarus, ī, m.,	<i>barbarian.</i>
centuri-ō, -ōnis, m.,	<i>centurion</i> (an officer of the Roman army).
com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,	<i>alarm, dismay.</i>
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>point out, mention ; make mention (of = dē).</i>
in-colō, ere, -coluī,	<i>inhabit ; dwell.</i>
op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum,	<i>overpower ; burden.</i>
premō, ere, pressī, pressum,	<i>press, harass, beset.</i>
suprā, adv.,	<i>above.</i>
trā-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,	<i>lead across, take across.</i>
trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>carry across, bring over.</i>

*Phrase : premor, graviter premor, be hard pressed.*

N.B.—Trāns (or trā-) is prefixed to verbs with the force of *across* or *over*.

---

\* Even in the rare cases where either translation *might* be given, it will be found that the context will determine which is the proper rendering.



## EXERCISES.

258.

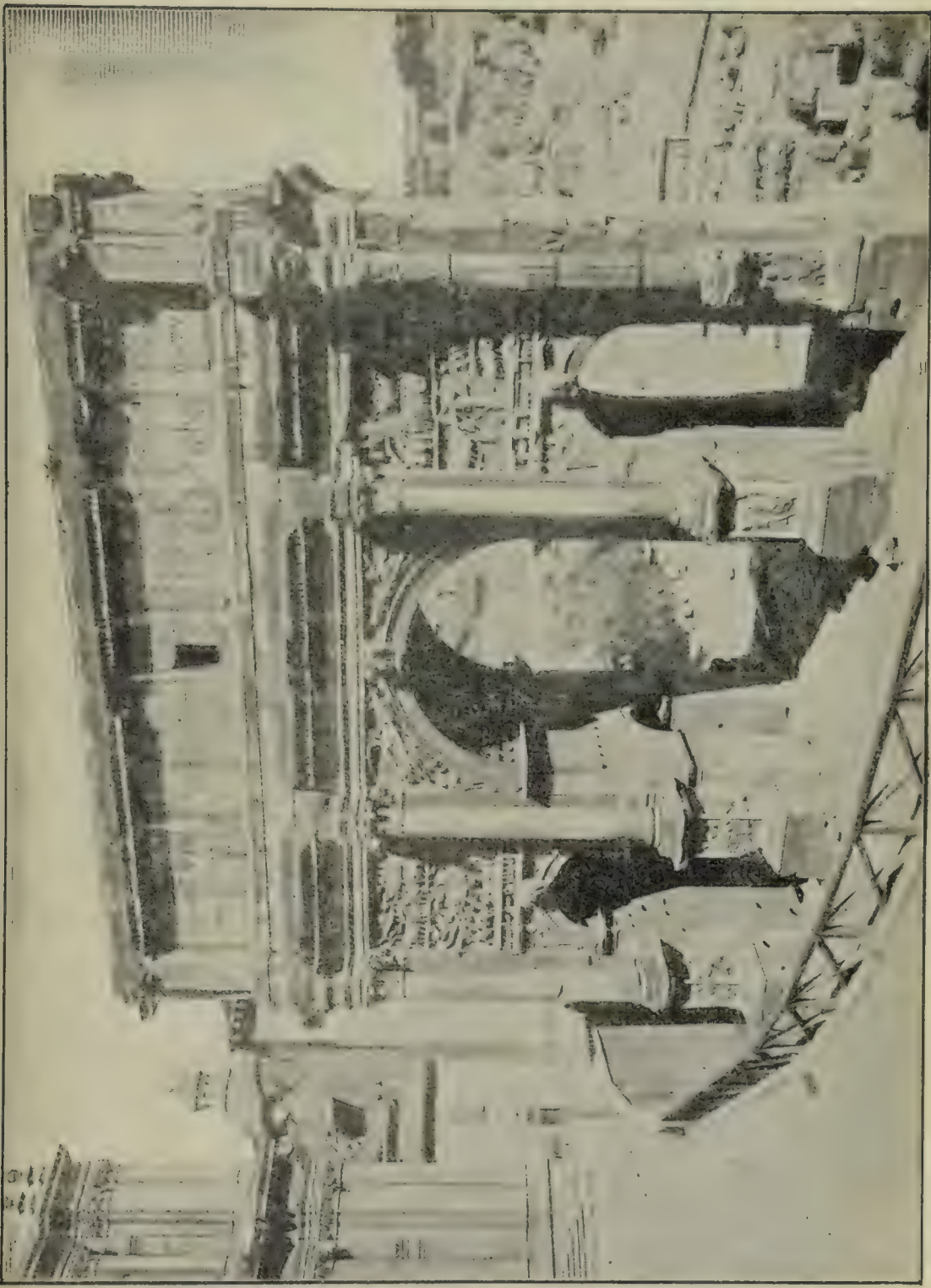
I.

1. Quod vīcus in duās partēs flūmine dīviditur, alteram partem Gallīs concessit, alteram legiōnī. 2. Ad flūmen, quod vīcum in duās partēs dīvidit, pervēnit. 3. Ad flūmen, quō vīcus in duās partēs dīviditur, pervēnit. 4. Ex vīcō, quem Gallīs et legiōnī concesserat, omnēs discēdere coepērunt. 5. Ex alterā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs discēdere coepērunt. 6. Vīcus, cūjus partem Gallīs concesserat, in duās partēs flūmine dīviditur. 7. Gallī, quibus partem vīcī concesserat, discēdere coepērunt. 8. Legiō, cui partem vīcī concesserat, nōn discessit. 9. Quod partem vīcī legiōnī concesserat, Gallī discessērunt. 10. Ex duābus partibus, in quās vīcus flūmine dīviditur, alteram Gallīs concessit, alteram legiōnī.

II.

1. The Belgians are nearest to (173) the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine (and) with whom they are continually waging war. 2. The Germans, to whom the Belgians are nearest, dwell across the Rhine. 3. They are continually waging war with the Germans, because they are nearest. 4. The Gauls, of whom the Belgians are the bravest, are waging war with the Germans. 5. They dwell across the Rhine, which divides the Germans from the Gauls. 6. They dwell across the river that divides Germany from Gaul. 7. They dwell across the river by which Germany is divided from Gaul. 8. The districts which the Belgians inhabit are nearest Germany. 9. Gaul is divided into three parts, of which the Belgians inhabit one. 10. One part of Gaul, which the Belgians inhabit, is nearest Germany.





ARCH OF SEPTIMIUS SEVERUS.



259.

## III.

A.—1. Ab omnibus barbarīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, lēgātī ad Caesarem mittuntur. 2. Plūrimās habēmus longās nāvēs, quibus milītēs trānsportāre cōsuēvimus. 3. Frūmentum omne, quod in oppidum centuriōnēs comportāverant, reliquit. 4. In finēs Germānōrum, quī proximī Belgīs erant, cōpiās quās coēgerat trādūxit. 5. Reliquum exercitum, quod longē aberat, nōn exspectābāmus. 6. Vir fortissimus dēlēctus est, cūjus pater amicus ā senātū appellātus erat. 7. Auxilium ā Caesare petimus, quod graviter ā Germānīs premimur.

B.—8. Fuga Gallōrum, dē quā suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, legiōnem, quācum Caesar erat, commovēbat. 9. Castra erant minōra quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat. 10. Omnem equitātum, quem ex omnī prōvinciā coēgerat, praemisit. 11. Summa erat difficultās quod milītēs onere armōrum oppressi sunt. 12. Quod inopia frūmentī erat, centuriōnēs complūrēs in finitimās civitatēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit. 13. Cum sōlā decimā legiōne, dē quā nōn dubitābat, discessit.

260.

## IV.

A.—1. They marched through the province because they had no other road. 2. He will collect all his ships, of which he has a large number. 3. The cavalry is sent in advance through the forest which has been mentioned above. 4. They are alarmed because he left everything that he had brought over. 5. As many ships as possible were gathered to the harbour from which he had determined to set sail. 6. The auxiliaries we are awaiting have been suddenly overpowered by the barbarians. 7. Because neither army ventures to join battle, Caesar leads his forces back to the camp.

B.—8. With two legions which had wintered in the province, he hastened to a river that was about a mile distant. 9. The king, with whom he had made peace, had great influence in the states into which the army had been led across. 10. The other centurion, to whose father the citizenship had been given by Caesar, was overpowered by the enemy. 11. The camp that we have mentioned above was beset by the barbarians, whose lands were being laid waste. 12. There are several islands, a majority of which are (*literally* the greater part . . . is) inhabited by barbarians. 13. They are less suitable, because they fear the sea.

## LESSON XLV.

### PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

261.

#### Illustrative Examples.

**Barbarī, spē praedae adductī, in Galliam contendērunt,**  
*the barbarians, influenced by the hope of plunder,*  
*hastened into Gaul.*

**Cōpiae, in ūnum locum coāctae, in prōvinciam mittēbantur,**  
*the forces, having been gathered to one place, used to*  
*be sent to the province.*

**Cōpiae, in ūnum locum coāctae, in prōvinciam mittentur,**  
*the forces, having been gathered to one place, will be*  
*sent to the province.*

**Aciem instrūctam inveniet,** *he will find the line of battle*  
*drawn up.*

a. These Latin sentences illustrate the use of the Perfect Participle Passive, when no longer used with parts of the verb **sum** to form a tense of the indicative passive (140). It is regularly translated by the English passive participle, e.g. **missus**, *sent* or *having been sent*.



Contrast the following sentences :—

**Barbarī spē praedae adductī erant**, *the barbarians had been influenced by the hope of plunder.*

**Cōpiae in ūnum locum coāctae sunt**, *the forces have been gathered to one place.*

**Acīēs instrūcta erit**, *a line of battle will have been drawn up*

*b.* Notice that in these sentences the voice of the participle is passive, and that the time of the action expressed by the participle is prior to that of the principal verb, but is not necessarily past time.

*c.* The participle is a verbal adjective ; it expresses action and has distinctions of tense and voice ; and it agrees in gender, number and case with the noun it modifies. The perfect participle passive is declined like **bonus** (65).

*d.* Sometimes this participle becomes little more than an ordinary adjective, and may in fact be compared ; as, **parātus**, *ready* ; **parātor**, *more ready* or *better prepared* ; **mūnītissimus**, *best fortified*, or *well protected*.

**262.** A freer rendering of the perfect participle passive is generally permissible and often advisable. Thus in the first two sentences of 261, **adductī** might also be translated *being influenced*, and **coāctae** might be translated *after being gathered*, or *on being gathered*.

Occasionally all these methods of translation are possible ; as,

<b>Repulsī ab equitātū,</b> <b>in castra contendunt,</b>	{	<i>repulsed</i> <i>being repulsed</i> <i>having been repulsed</i> <i>after being repulsed</i> <i>on being repulsed</i>	}	<i>by the cavalry,</i> <i>they hasten to</i> <i>the camp.</i>
---	---	--	---	---

## 263.

## VOCABULARY.

dēditi-ō, -ōnis, f.,	<i>surrender.</i>
dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditum,	<i>surrender (transitive).</i>
ē-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,	<i>break out, sally out.</i>
ērupti-ō, -ōnis, f.,	<i>sally, sortie.</i>
lēgāti-ō, -ōnis, f.,	<i>embassy.</i>
oppūgnāti-ō, -ōnis, f.,	<i>attack, assault.</i>
per-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,	<i>break through.</i>
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum,	<i>break, break down.</i>
stati-ō, -ōnis, f.,	<i>outpost, guard.</i>
tēlum, ī, n.,	<i>weapon, missile.</i>

*Phrases* : in dēditiōnem veniō, *surrender (intransitive).*  
 in statiōne, *on guard, on outpost duty.*

N.B.—The suffix **-tiō** is used to form from verbs abstract nouns (feminine) denoting an action, or in some cases the concrete result of an action. So **mūnitiō**, like the English noun *fortification*, may mean either the act of fortifying or the works constructed. This ending appears in English as *-tion*.

## EXERCISES.

## 264.

## I.

A.—1. Adventū Rōmānōrum māgnopere perterritus, cōpiās redūxit. 2. Ab hostibus circumventī, dē mūnitiōnibus dēsiluērunt et fugā salūtem petivērunt. 3. Omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātiōnem dē\* dēditiōne mīsērunt. 4. Parātum et instrūctum exercitum invēnī. 5. Multitūdine tēlōrum repulsae, cohortēs in locis superiōribus cōsistunt. 6. Primō parātī erāmus auctōrēs bellī dēdere. 7. Cum sīgnum dederit, ex castris ērumpent. 8. Spē salūtis adductī, per mediōs hostēs audācissimē perrūpērunt. 9. Multitūdine tēlōrum vulnerātī, aegrē ad† noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinēmus.

\* Compare dē pāce. 99.

† Translate ad here by 'until'.

B.—10. Salūtem petere jussī, subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. 11. Ex cōsuētūdine omnēs cīvitātēs commūnem lēgatiōnem mittent. 12. Omnia quae postulāveritis, erunt parāta. 13. Māgnitūdine mūnitiōnum et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne mittunt. 14. Ab oppidō quod erat māximum mūnitissimumque in insulā, nōn longē aberant. 15. In omnibus collibus cōpiās hostium instrūctās vident. 16. Pōns, quī erat in flūmine, ruptus erat. 17. Cohors, quae in statiōne erat, fugā reliquī exercitūs perterrita, in dēditiōnem vēnit. 18. Barbarī, commōtī quod oppidum nātūrā locī mūnitissimum expūgnātum erat, mājōrēs cōpiās parāre coepērunt.

## 265.

## II.

A.—1. After being driven back into the town, they made a sortie. 2. Being defeated by the first attack of the cohorts, they are compelled to surrender. 3. The cavalry sent out from the winter camp, quickly put the enemy to flight. 4. On being recalled to the continent, he hesitated for several days to set sail. 5. Having been terrified by the large number of the ships, the enemy's troops withdraw from the sea. 6. Six chosen cohorts will be stationed on outpost duty. 7. The war-ships seem to be better prepared than the other (ships). 8. On being informed of the approach of the embassy sent by the Belgians, he recalled the cavalry which he had sent in advance. 9. Caesar broke the middle of the enemy's line.

B.—10. After being drawn up in line we shall sally out. 11. On being repulsed by the fortifications and the missiles, they withdrew as quickly as possible. 12. The long awaited auxiliaries reached the bridge the



previous night. 13. The attack is hindered by many circumstances. 14. If you break through the fortifications, you will easily reach the river. 15. He found the guards posted. 16. After being called brothers by the senate, they have been compelled to surrender all their towns and to give hostages. 17. On the seventh day of the assault, having been greatly harassed by the multitude of missiles, they sent ambassadors to Caesar to treat for a surrender. 18. Burdened by the heavy weight of their arms, the legions reached the camp with the greatest difficulty.

## LESSON XLVI.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

266.

#### Paradigms.

#### THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS *ego, tū, is.*

<i>First Person</i>		<i>Second Person.</i>	<i>Third Person.</i>		
SINGULAR.			MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	tū	is	ea	id
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī	ējus	ējus	ējus
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	eī	eī	eī
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	eum	eam	id
<i>Voc.</i>		tū			
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	eō	eā	eō
PLURAL.					
<i>Nom.</i>	nōs	vōs	eī, iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrum } nostrī }	vestrum } vestrī }	cōrum	cārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Voc.</i>		vōs			
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs



- a.* Of the double forms in the genitive plural of the first and second personal pronouns, **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as partitive genitives (174); otherwise *of us* and *of you* are **nostrī** and **vestrī**.

267.

**Nōs sumus amīcī, vōs estis inimīcī,** *we are friends, you are enemies.*

**Legiōnem, quam mēcum habēō, mittam,** *I shall send the legion which I have with me.*

**Jussit eōs impedīmenta in ūnō locō collocāre et eum mūnīre,** *he ordered them to put the baggage in one place and fortify it.*

**Omnibus vōbīs ūtile est,** *it is useful to all of you (literally to you all).*

These Latin sentences illustrate the following points :

- a.* The nominative of the personal pronoun is expressed when emphatic, otherwise the personal ending of the verb suffices.
- b.* The preposition **cum** is suffixed to the ablatives **mē, tē, nōbīs** and **vōbīs**. (For the accent see 255. *a.* 6.)
- c.* Because of the difference between Latin and English in the matter of gender, the pronoun *it* may frequently be represented by the masculine or the feminine of **is**. Where also *it* is the subject of a verb, the form of the Latin verb (or of a predicate adjective) will vary according to the noun to which the pronoun *it* refers ; thus, *it was sent* may refer to an army (**exercitus**), a legion (**legiō**), a letter (**litterae**), or to baggage (**impedīmenta**), and would then be translated **missus est, missa est, missae sunt,** and **missa sunt** respectively
- d.* The partitive genitive should not be used with **omnēs**, since the whole, not a part, is taken. (174.)

268.

## VOCABULARY.

aut, or; aut . . aut, either . . or.

concilium, ī, n., meeting, council.

et, and; et . . et, both . . and.

etiam, also; even.

meminī (found in perfect system only, with force of present), remember.

memor, -oris, mindful (with genitive).

memoria, ae, f., memory.

neque, nor, and not; neque . . neque, neither . . nor.

sed, but.

tim-or, -ōris, m., fear.

Phrases: **memoriam dēpōnō**, forget.\***memoriam retineō**, remember.\*

## EXERCISES.

269.

## I.

A.—1. Pācem vōbiscum fēcerat; pācem neque nōbiscum neque vōbiscum fēcerat. 2. Ab eīs circumveniēmur. 3. Tū et mihi et rei pūblicae ūtilis fuistī. 4. Meminī id; memor erō vestrī. 5. Hiberna ab eō aberant mīlia passuum vīgintī. 6. Cōnsilium barbarōrum nōn solum mihi, sed etiam tibi, incōgnitum erat. 7. Māgnam inter eōs auctōritātem habēs; tū etiam mājōrem auctōritātem quam ego habēs. 8. Nihil ā vōbīs postulō. 9. Ab eō dē periculō legiōnis cōgnōscit et eam reducī jubet. 10. Sī lēgātiōnem dē dēditiōne ad eum mīseritis, ad concilium vōs convocābit

B.—11. Equitēs quōs tēcum trānsportāveras, reductī erant. 12. Hostēs, timōre perterritī, ā nōbīs discēdunt. 13. Tuī memoriam retinēbō; memoriam vestrī nōn

---

\* These phrases, as their literal meaning would indicate, are followed by the genitive case.

dēpōnam. 14. Aut equitēs aut frūmentum eīs imperābit. 15. Cum ad castra pervēnerint, ea oppugnābunt. 16. Timor animōs omnium occupāvit; timor eam occupāvit. 17. Omnibus vōbīs libertātem dedit; nōs omnēs opprimere cōstituit. 18. Ā cēterīs id cōgnōvit, neque ego nūntiāvī.\* 19. Amīcitiae populī Rōmānī memoriā moveor. 20. Nūntius ad mē missus est; victōria mihi nūntiātur.

## 270.

## II.

A.—1. He will choose either me or you. 2. He has chosen not only a large part of us, but also all of you. 3. He has learned the commander's plans. 4. He has compelled them to withdraw from the council. 5. It is dangerous both to me and to you. 6. Because we do not venture to carry the baggage with us, we are leaving it in the camp. 7. They have left to us neither (our) lands nor (our) liberty. 8. The cavalry I shall send before me, but the infantry I shall lead out with me. 9. We slew a large part of them. 10. On account of (their) fear of me, they are renewing the memory of (our) former friendship.

B.—11. Having been informed of the recent victory, we sent ambassadors to him. 12. Hostages will be given up to you by us. 13. I did not fear him, but you were terrified by fear. 14. We were eight miles from him. 15. We shall demand from him not only corn but also hostages. 16. He has forgotten even you. 17. He orders them (*referring to* (a) the cohorts, (b) the auxiliaries, (c) the soldiers) to come as quickly as possible. 18. Nor do I remember everything. 19. He summons all of them to a meeting. 20. And they do not seem to me to be mindful of us.

---

\* **Id** is to be understood as the object of **nūntiāvī** also.

## LESSON XLVII.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE. **Dum.**

271.

## Paradigms.

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE.

*First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.*

amāns            monēns            regēns            audiēns

- a. In each of the four conjugations the present participle ends in **-ns**, and is formed from the present stem.

272.

## Paradigm.

## DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE.

SINGULAR.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns
<i>Voc.</i>	amāns	amāns
<i>Abl.</i>	amante	amante
PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantēs (īs)	amantia
<i>Voc.</i>	amantēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amantibus	amantibus

- a. Compare the declension of the present participle active with that of adjectives of the third declension (113), noting that in the ablative singular the adjective has **-ī**, the participle **-e**.\*

---

\* The participle also, when used as an adjective, has **-ī** in the ablative singular.



273. Illustrative Examples.

**Cōpiās pūgnantēs videō**, *I see the troops fighting.*

**Adventum ējus exspectantēs, castra mūnīvimus**, *while (we were) awaiting his approach, we fortified the camp.*

**Adventum ējus exspectantēs, castra mūniēmus**, *while (we are) awaiting his approach, we shall fortify the camp.*

**Lēgātum fortiter pūgnantem vulnerāvērunt**, *they wounded the lieutenant while he was fighting bravely.*

**Lēgātum, dum fortiter pūgnat, vulnerāvērunt**, *they wounded the lieutenant while he was fighting bravely.*

**Dum castra mūniuntur, hostēs impetum fēcērunt**, *while the camp was being fortified, the enemy made an attack.*

These sentences illustrate the following points:—

*a.* The present participle in Latin is found only in the active voice; the time denoted is not necessarily present, but is always the same as that of the main verb.

*b.* The Latin present participle active is translated sometimes by the English imperfect participle in *-ing* (so especially after verbs of *hearing* and *seeing*); but more often by *while* (or *as*) with the participle in *-ing*, or by *while* (or *as*) with a progressive form of the indicative; so

<b>venientēs</b> may be	{	<i>coming,</i> <i>while coming,</i> <i>while we (you, they) are coming,</i> <i>while we (you, they) were coming.</i>
-------------------------	---	---

*c.* *While* is also indicated in Latin by the conjunction **dum**, which is regularly followed by the present indicative, even when the reference is to past time. (**Dum** should never be used with the participle).

*d.* **Dum** and the indicative supply the lack of a present participle passive in Latin.

## 274.

## VOCABULARY.

clām-or, -ōris, m.,	<i>shout, shouting.</i>
fleō, ēre, flēvī, flētum,	<i>weep, be in tears.</i>
frūmentārius, a, um,	<i>of or pertaining to grain.</i>
interim, adv.,	<i>meanwhile, in the meantime.</i>
labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>toil; struggle, be in distress.</i>
legiōnārius, a, um,	<i>of a legion, legionary.</i>
onerārius, a, um,	<i>of burden, for burdens.</i>
resistō, ere, restitī,	<i>resist.</i>
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum,	<i>raise; remove, take away.</i>
undique, adv.,	<i>on all sides, from all sides.</i>

*Phrases : rēs frūmentāria, provisions, supplies.*  
*nāvis onerāria, transport (ship).*

N.B.—The suffix *-ārius* is used to form from nouns adjectives signifying *pertaining* or *belonging to*. This appears in English as *-ary*.



**Navis Oneraria : Transport Ship.**

## EXERCISES.

275.

I.

A.—1. Dum Caesar nāvēs longās parat, lēgātī ad eum dē dēditionē vēnērunt. 2. Caesarem lēgātīs respondentem audīverāmus. 3. Fortissimē pūgnāns, graviter vulnerātus est. 4. Tertiam legiōnem labōrantem vīdit. 5. Dum castra mūniunt, nūllus hostis interim vīsus est. 6. Dum castra incenduntur, subitō clāmor ā nōbīs audītur. 7. Auxilium flēns ā mē petīvit. 8. Certō annī tempore undique ad eum convenīre cōsuēvērunt.

B.—9. Dum nāvēs onerāriāe quās imperāverat cōguntur, interim cōsiliū prīncipum cōgnōscitur. 10. Sī spēs fugae sublāta erit, minus facile resistēmus. 11. Interim dum equitēs itinera explōrant, legiōnāriī mīlitēs castra pōnere coepērunt. 12. Graviter vulnerātī dē salūte dēspērāre coeperant. 13. Nāvēs et longae et onerāriāe incolumēs ad continentem perveniunt. 14. Dum peditēs castra fortissimē dēfendunt, equitātum rei frūmentāriāe causā dīmittit.

276.

II.

A.—1. Weeping, they sought peace and friendship from him. 2. The soldiers of the legion, while resisting bravely, were surrounded by the cavalry. 3. In the meantime, while he is awaiting reinforcements, he begins a cavalry battle. 4. We made an attack on the enemy while they were hastening to the forest. 5. Being surrounded by us on all sides, they began to be in distress. 6. He gave the signal to us as we were despairing of victory. 7. He heard the soldiers raising a shout; he heard the shouting of the soldiers as they were sallying out. 8. While the transports are assembling, according to custom he summons the lieutenants.



B.—9. The enemy, because they have a larger number of troops, will easily surround you as you are leaping down from the transports. 10. While the army was being led across, he saw the reinforcements withdrawing. 11. If all fear is removed, they will not endure toil (any) longer. 12. While hesitating on account of the lack of provisions, he was informed of the assault. 13. While the cavalry withstood the enemy's attack, he meanwhile drew up the legionary soldiers on the top of the hill. 14. By incessant toil we shall overcome (*use superō*) everything.

### LESSON XLVIII.

#### REFLEXIVE PRONOUN. POSSESSIVES.

277.

##### Paradigm.

##### REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, THIRD PERSON.\*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Gen.</i>	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	sē, or sēsē	sē, or sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	sē, or sēsē	sē, or sēsē

278.

##### Illustrative Examples.

- Sē dēfendit, *he defends himself.*  
 Sē dēfendunt, *they defend themselves.*  
 Eōs ad sē vocat, *he calls them to him.*  
 Equitēs cum eō mīsīt, *he sent the cavalry with him.*  
 Equitēs sēcum ēdūxit, *he led out the cavalry with him.*  
 Impedīmenta sēcum portant, *they carry the baggage with them.*

- a. Observe that in these sentences the reflexive pronoun sē is sometimes singular, sometimes plural;

\* In the first and second persons, the personal pronouns serve also as the reflexive pronouns; as, *Mē dēfendō, I defend myself.*



that it is translated sometimes by the English reflexive pronoun (*himself, themselves*), sometimes by the ordinary third personal pronoun (*him, them*); but that in either case it refers to the subject of the verb. The English third personal pronoun when not used reflexively is translated by **is** (266).

*b.* **Cum** is suffixed to **sē** as to **mē** and **tē** (267. *b*).

279. Paradigms.

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

<i>First Person.</i>	<i>Second Person.</i>	<i>Third Person Reflexive.</i>
<b>meus, a um,</b> <i>my, mine.</i>	<b>tuus, a, um,</b> <i>your, yours.</i>	<b>suus, a, um,</b> <i>his, her, hers, its.</i>
<b>noster, tra, trum,</b> <i>our, ours.</i>	<b>vester, tra, trum,</b> <i>your, yours.</i>	<b>suus, a, um,</b> <i>their, theirs.</i>

*a.* These are all declined like regular adjectives of the first and second declensions (except that the vocative singular masculine of **meus** is **mī**). **Tuus** is used in addressing one person, **vester** in addressing more than one.

280. Illustrative Examples.

**Meum adventum expectat,** *he awaits my arrival.*

**Nostrum adventum expectat,** *he awaits our arrival.*

**Adventum ejus expectō,** *I await his (or her) arrival.*

**Adventum eorum (or eārum) expectō,** *I await their arrival.*

**Mē adventum suum expectāre jussit,** *he ordered me to await his arrival.*

**Mē adventum suum expectāre jussērunt,** *they ordered me to await their arrival.*

- a. The possessive pronominal adjectives agree in gender, number and case with the noun which they modify. **Suus**, like **sē** (278), refers to the subject of the main verb of the sentence ; **ējus** and **eōrum** (**eārum**) are used for *his*, *her* and *their* when not reflexive.

## 281.

## Illustrative Examples.

- Arma trādidērunt**, *they gave up their arms.*  
**Arma trādidimus**, *we gave up our arms.*  
**Nostrī sē suaque dēfendunt**, *our men are defending themselves and their possessions.*  
**Adventum suōrum exspectant**, *they await the arrival of their friends.*

- a. In Latin, possessives are seldom expressed except for the sake of emphasis or clearness ; the context being at other times a sufficient guide (55).  
 b. These possessives are often used substantively, especially **nostrī**, *gen. nostrōrum*, *our men* ; **suī**, *gen. suōrum*, *his men, their friends* ; **sua** (neuter plural), *his or their possessions*. (Compare 180.)

## 282.

## VOCABULARY.

- ab-dō**, ere, -didī, -ditum, *hide, conceal.*  
**con-jungō**, ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, *unite, join* (transitive).  
**cōspectus**, ūs, m., *sight, view.*  
**con-ver-tō**, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn* (transitive).  
**jungō**, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, *join* (transitive).  
**osten-dō**, ere, -dī, -tum, or **ostēsum**, *show, disclose.*  
**tergum**, ī, n., *back.*  
**vertō**, ere, vertī, versum, *turn* (transitive).

*Phrases* : **in cōspectum veniō**, *come in sight.*

**sīgna convertō**, *wheel about, face about.*

**terga vertō**, *turn and flee, take to flight.*

**post tergum**, *in the rear.*





RUINS OF THE BATHS OF CARACALLA



N.B.—Many English verbs may be used either transitively or intransitively, as *turn, surrender*. This is very much less frequent in Latin, where the intransitive use is often expressed by the transitive verb with the reflexive pronoun ; as,

TRANSITIVE.

INTRANSITIVE.

*surrender, dēdere*

*surrender, sē dēdere*

*turn, convertere*

*turn, sē convertere*

*hide, abdere*

*hide, sē abdere*

Similarly the more precise Latin translates *he joined Caesar* by *sē cum Caesare conjūxit* (or also *sē Caesari conjūxit*), literally *he united himself with* (or *to*) *Caesar*.

EXERCISES.

283.

I.

A.—1. Eōs suum adventum exspectāre jussit. 2. Dē sē dicit ; dē eō dīcet. 3. Frātre tuum ad sē vocat. 4. Belgās obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. 5. Sē suaque omnia ei dēdidērunt. 6. Vestrō exercituī nōn parēs sunt. 7. Eōrum fugā erāmus perterritī. 8. Repulsī ā nostrīs, sēsē in proximās silvās abdiderant. 9. Nostrō adventū permōtī, sēsē cum hostibus conjungunt. 10. Omnēs ferē hostēs terga vertērunt. 11. In cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnerat.

B.—12. Eum ā sē dīmittit. 13. In cōspectū exercitūs tuī, agrī mei vāstātī sunt. 14. Dē ejus adventū certiōrēs factī, Gallī lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. 15. Vestrae salūtis causā mīlītēs sēcum habet. 16. Auxilia post tergum subitō sē ostendērunt. 17. Duae legiōnēs jungentur ; omnēs ad lūcem sēsē convertunt. 18. Multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premet. 19. Celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum perterritī, lēgātōs ad

eum misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt. 20. Legiōnēs sēsē conjungunt et convertunt signa. 21. Nōn solum in suis\* sed etiam in vestrīs finibus vōs superāvērunt.

## 284.

## II.

A.—1. He hastens to them and sends all the cavalry before him. 2. On his arrival the Germans joined the Belgians. 3. My father has been called friend by your senate. 4. He will lead the legion he has with him into our province. 5. They surrender to him; he orders them to send hostages to him. 6. The legions, after being joined, wheel about in sight of the enemy. 7. They join battle with our men. 8. You have a leader mindful both of you and of himself. 9. If the legionary soldiers show themselves, the cavalry will take to flight. 10. Everybody turned towards us. 11. While Caesar was restraining his men from battle, a shout was heard in the rear.

B.—12. After the flight of their friends they hid themselves and all their possessions. 13. He resolved to lead out with him two legions. 14. They withstand the attacks of our men. 15. He remembers not only your father but also my brother. 16. If you send ambassadors to Caesar, he will order you to surrender your arms to him. 17. They are waging war in your territories; you marched through their territories. 18. They hid out of sight of our men. 19. They will carry all the grain with them. 20. Some turned and fled, others surrendered. 21. When the barbarians come in sight, he will give the signal to his men.

---

\* With **suis**, **finibus** is to be understood. English would rather put the noun with the first adjective and leave it to be understood with the second.

285.

WORD LIST V.

NOUNS.

agger	cōspectus	imperātor	passus
auctor	cōsuētūdō	labor	spatium
auctōritās	continēns	lēgatiō	statiō
barbarus	dēditiō	memoria	tēlum
centuriō	dēfēnsor	onus	tergum
clāmor	ēruptiō	oppūgnātiō	terra
concilium			timor

ADJECTIVES.

ācer	continēns	frūmentārius	memor
aeger	diligēns	legiōnārius	onerārius

VERBS.

abdō	dīmittō	jungō	reperiō
absum	dispōnō	labōrō	resistō
augeō	distō	meminī	rumpō
commoveō	distribuō	opprimō	stō
conjungō	ērumpō	ostendō	timeō
cōnsidō	explōrō	perrumpō	tollō
cōnsuēscō	fleō	praemittō	trādūcō
convertō	incolō	praestō	trānsportō
dēdō	inveniō	premō	vertō
dēmōnstrō			

ADVERBS.

ācriter	diū	lātē	prope
aegrē	etiam	liberē	saepe
audācter	facile	longē	solum
brevī	ferē	magis, māgnopere	subitō
celeriter	fortiter	minus	suprā
continenter	graviter	multum, plūrimum	ūnā
diligenter	interim	prīmō, primum	undique



## READING LESSON IX.

CAMILLUS AND THE SCHOOLMASTER OF FALERII.  
(394 B.C.)

286.

## VOCABULARY.

Faleriī, ōrum, m., *Falerii*, a town in Etruria.Faliscī, ōrum, m., *the Faliscans*, the people of Falerii.iūstitia, ae, f., *justice*.lūdus, ī, m., *school*.magister, trī, m., *master, teacher*.virga, ae, f., *switch*.

Annō circiter trecentēsīmō sexāgēsīmō ab urbe conditā\*, Rōmānī cum Faliscīs, quī Faleriōs, oppidum Etrūriae, incolēbant, bellum gerere coepērunt. Faliscī dē adventū hostium certiōrēs factī, primō propter timōrem sēsē in oppidō continēbant (*kept*), et Camillus, quī imperātor erat Rōmānōrum, agrōs eōrum vāstārī iussit. His (*these, abl.*) rēbus adductī, Faliscī partem cōpiārum suārum ēmisērunt, et castra mille ferē passūs ab oppidō posuērunt. Camillus suōs longiōre itinere in loca superiōra nocte dūxit, et primā lūce Faliscī hostēs in omnibus collibus instrūctōs invēnērunt. Sīgnum proelii datum est. Faliscī nōn diū impetum Rōmānōrum sustinuērunt sed terga vertērunt, et aegerrimē ad oppidum pervēnērunt incolumēs. In oppidum repulsī, saepe ēruptionēs fēcērunt et diū resistere poterant (*were able*), quod oppidum locī nātūrā mūnitissimum erat, et māgna cōpia frūmentī in mūnitiōnēs undique comportāta erat. Tandem (*at length*) fortūna (*chance*) victōriam Camillō dedit.

---

\* Literally from the city founded; this is the Latin idiom for after the founding of the city. Thus 360 A.U.C. = 394 B.C. For the ordinal numerals see 524.



Dum Rōmānī Faleriōs oppūgnant, magister lūdī, ad quem liberī prīncipum oppidī mittēbantur, ex cōsuētūdine puerōs ex urbe in agrōs cotīdiē dūcēbat. Brevī liberōs paulātīm (*gradually*) longius ā portīs dūcere coepit, et post complūrēs diēs liberī subitō circumventī sunt ā militibus Rōmānīs quī in statiōne erant collocātī. Ad imperātōrem adductus magister cōsiliū inīquū ostendit. “Dēdō tibi, Camille, liberōs nōbilissimōrum cīvium. Sī eōs dētineris, oppidum celeriter in dēditionem veniet, quod patrēs eōrum māgnam inter cīvēs auctōritātem habent.” Camillus respondit “Nōs bella jūstē (*justly*) nōn minus quam fortiter cōsuēvimus gerere. Nōn contrā puerōs sed contrā virōs missī sumus. Rōmānī tibi sunt dissimillimī. Tū injūriā Faliscōs superāre cōstituistī, nōs virtūte nostrōrum.” Tum (*then*) et magistrum et liberōs ā sē dīmisit, et ad oppidum eōs redūcī jussit.

Interim flentēs patrēs mātresque liberōrum auxilium ā dīs (*the gods*) petēbant, cum subitō clāmōr ante portās tollitur. Omnēs sēsē ad clāmōrem convertunt. Liberī in cōspectum veniunt. Militēs Rōmānī manūs (*hands*) magistrī post (*behind*) tergum illigāverant (*had bound*) et puerī eum ad oppidum virgīs agēbant (*were driving*). Faliscī, jūstitiā Camillī māgnopere permōtī, lēgātōs ad eum dē pāce mīsērunt, et sē suaque omnia eī dēdidērunt. Et lēgātiō quae etiam ad senātum missa est dixit: “Superātī ā vōbīs et imperātōre vestrō, Rōmānī, nōs\* dēdimus vōbīs, et pācem vōbīscum facere cupimus (*we desire*). Jūstitia vōbīs melior vīsa est quam victōria. Nōn solum arma dēpōnēmus, sed etiam memoriā vestrae jūstitiae semper (*always*) retinēbimus.”

---

\* See the footnote on page 174.

## LESSON XLIX.

THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN *-iō*.

287. Certain verbs of the third conjugation end in *-iō*, and have in the tenses formed from the present stem many forms which are identical with those of the fourth conjugation—those forms, namely, which have two successive vowels (*ia*, *ie*, or *iu*). The tenses formed from the other stems display no irregularity.

288.

## Paradigm.

VERBS IN *-iō* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.*Active.**Passive.*

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

1. capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
2. capis	capitis	caperis	capimini
3. capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

1. capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
2. capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris	capiēbāmini
3. capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

## FUTURE INDICATIVE.

1. capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur
2. capiēs	capietis	capieris	capiemini
3. capiet	capient	capientur	capientur

## PERFECT SYSTEM.

PERF. INDIC.	cēpī, etc.	captus sum, etc.
PLUPF. INDIC.	cēperam, etc.	captus eram, etc.
FUT. PF. INDIC.	cēperō, etc.	captus erō, etc.

## PRESENT INFINITIVE.

capere

capī

## PARTICIPLES.

*Present*—capiēns*Perfect*—captus

289.

VOCABULARY.

ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,	<i>receive.</i>
capiō, ere, cēpī, captum,	<i>take, capture.</i>
cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,	<i>end, finish, accomplish.</i>
con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,	<i>hurl, throw.</i>
cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum,	<i>see, observe.</i>
faciō, ere, fēcī, factum,	<i>do ; make, build.</i>
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum,	<i>flee, escape.</i>
inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,	<i>slay, kill, put to death.</i>
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum,	<i>hurl, throw.</i>
re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,	<i>regain, recover.</i>

*Phrases : arma capiō, take up arms.*

*vulneribus cōnficior, be exhausted by wounds.*

*in fugam conjiciō, put to flight.*

*proelium faciō, fight a battle.*

*sē recipere, (1) betake one's self, retreat.*

*(2) recover, rally (intransitive).*

N.B.—In compound verbs, short **a** of the simple verb is commonly weakened to **i** before one consonant, and to **e** before two consonants ; so with the compounds of **capiō**, **faciō** and **jaciō**, and so also **prohibeō** from **habeō**. Similarly, short **e** of the simple verb is weakened to **i** before a single consonant (except **r**) ; as, **premō**, **opprimō** ; **teneō**, **retineō**.

EXERCISES.

290.

I.

A.—1. Nostrī celeriter arma capiunt. 2. Tēla conjiciēbāmus. 3. Suōs labōrantēs cōspicit. 4. In fugam conjectī, sē ad agmen recēpērunt. 5. Paucī interficiuntur sed multī vulnera accipiunt. 6. Certiōrēs eōs facimus ; eum rēgem faciēmus ; multa proelia fēcimus.



7. Ex vāllō tēla jactis. 8. Iter aegerrimē cōnficitur; vulneribus cōnficitur. 9. Sēsē ad suōs recipiet; in prōvinciam fugiam. 10. Fugientēs eōs cōspicimus. 11. Arma dē mūrō in fossam jaciēbantur.

B.—12. Tēla conjicī jussit; nostrōs impetum facere jussit. 13. Ex hostium castris cōspiciēmini. 14. Ējus adventū nostrī sē ex timōre recipient. 15. Centuriōnem complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus circumvenīmus et interficimus. 16. Trāns Rhēnum sē in finēs Germānōrum recipit. 17. Cōspiceris; interficiēris; jēcēris. 18. Sī oppidum recēperō, pācem vōbiscum faciam. 19. Omnia oppida quae cōspicimus incendēmus; omnia oppida quae cōspexerimus incendēmus. 20. Litterās accēpit; tempus fugit; castra capiuntur. 21. Interficitur multīs gravibusque\* vulneribus cōnfectus.

## 291.

## II.

A.—1. We announce, we flee, we come. 2. He orders them to be summoned and put to death. 3. We shall do nothing; we determine to do nothing. 4. You were fleeing out of sight. 5. The weapons were being hurled boldly. 6. We receive many wounds; few wounds are received. 7. They were betaking themselves to their camp. 8. We are seen leaping down out of the ship. 9. The war will speedily be finished; I shall finish the war as speedily as possible. 10. Exhausted by their wounds, several soldiers are captured and put to death. 11. He is throwing himself into the sea; he was retreating with us across the river.

B.—12. You will fight a battle; while fighting bravely you will be killed. 13. We are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages. 14. He was building larger

---

\* In such sentences the English idiom omits the conjunction *and*.



vessels; they were marching through our province. 15. Several are killed, the rest are put to flight. 16. Exhausted by wounds, the enemy turned and fled. 17. We are taking up arms for the sake of our common freedom; you were hurling weapons. 18. If they surrender, they will receive their freedom. 19. I am being captured; I used to be seen; I shall be slain. 20. He kills a large number of our men as they are fleeing. 21. While our men were taking up their arms, the cavalry rallied.

---

## LESSON L.

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: *Hīc, Ille, Is.*

292.

## Paradigms.

	(a) <i>hīc.</i>			(b) <i>ille.</i>		
SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hīc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>
PLUR.						
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

(c) For *is* see 266.

## 293.

## Illustrative Examples.

*Prōvincia mea haec est, illa vestra, this is my province, that (is) yours.*

*Hōs ad eum mittit, he sends these (or them) to him.*

*Haec ab hīs nūntiīs cōgnōvit, he learned this from these messengers.*

*Eum locum mūnīvērunt, they fortified that place.*

*Eōs quī fugiunt vidēmus, we see those who are fleeing.*

*Cum eīs legiōnibus quās redūxerat in finēs Belgārum contendit. Illī sēsē in silvās recipiunt, with those legions (or with the legions) which he had led back, he hastens into the territory of the Belgians. They (or these) betake themselves to their forests.*

These sentences illustrate the following points:—

- a.* **Hīc**, **ille** and **is** are used both as pronouns, and as adjectives agreeing with their nouns.
- b.* **Hīc** is ordinarily to be rendered by *this* (pl. *these*); **ille** by *that* (pl. *those*). **Hīc** refers to something regarded as near the speaker or writer; **ille** to something regarded as more remote.
- c.* **Is** may be used as a quite unemphatic *that* or *this*, and sometimes may even be best rendered by the definite article *the*. It is often used as the antecedent of a relative, as in the last two sentences.
- d.* Not only **is** (267) but also at times **hīc** and **ille** may be used as the third personal pronoun. When so used, **ille** is more emphatic than **hīc** or **is**, and is used especially to mark a contrast, e.g. to emphasize a change of subject, as in the last sentence.

N.B.—We may often translate **hīc** by *this (man)* or *this (one)*; **haec** (neut. plur.) by *this*, literally *these things*; and **ea quae** by *what*, literally *those things which*. (See 180.)

294.

## VOCABULARY.

ac-cidō, ere, -cidī,	<i>happen, befall.</i>
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum,	<i>fall.</i>
captīvus, ī, m.,	<i>prisoner, captive.</i>
gerō, ere, gessī, gestum,	<i>in passive, be done, take place.</i>
Lūcius, ī, m.,	<i>Lucius, a Roman name.</i>
Mārcus, ī, m.,	<i>Marcus, a Roman name.</i>
numquam, adv.,	<i>never.</i>
saepe, adv.,	<i>often.</i>
semper, adv.,	<i>always.</i>
statim, adv.,	<i>immediately, at once.</i>

*Phrase : rēs gesta, deed, exploit.*

## EXERCISES.

295.

## I.

A.—1. Dē hīs rēbus gestīs ex captīvīs cōgnōscit. 2. Hīc frāter Mārcus semper appellātur, ille Lūcius. 3. Ab iīs quōs mīserat haec cōgnōvit. 4. Neque cum hāc legiōne neque cum illā sē conjungent. 5. Paucī ex iīs cadunt; dē equō in aquam cecidit; numquam cadet. 6. Praedam hīs et captīvōs illīs distribuam. 7. Haec in Galliā gerēbantur. 8. Hūjus locī haec erat nātūra. 9. Hīs ex cōsuētūdine agrōs dederant. 10. Illum statim interfēcit. 11. Ea impedīmenta quae sēcum portāre nōn audent, in hāc silvā dēpōnent.

B—12. Sī illōs cēperimus, hī statim sē dēdent. 13. Haec omnia etiam illīs erant incōgnita. 14. Hōc ante id tempus saepe mihi acciderat; numquam ante hōc tempus tibi accidit. 15. Rēs gestās illius dēmōnstrant. 16. Nostri subitō tēla in\* hostēs conjiciunt; Illī statim terga vertunt. 17. Ad haec Caesar respondit; hīs lēgātīs respondet. 18. Dum hī dē nāvibus

---

\* With **tēla conjiciō**, translate **in** by **at**.



dēsiliunt, illī audācter tēla conjiciunt. 19. Interim dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, cum iīs cōpiīs quās accēperat, in castra pervēnit. 20. Rērum gestārum populī Rōmānī memoriam semper retinēbimus. 21. Haec flēns ab illō petit.

296.

II.

A.—1. After this battle they move their camp from that place. 2. Of all these, the Belgians are the bravest; these are braver than those. 3. Nothing will happen to him; it never happens to them. 4. This\* was the cause of that war. 5. They hastened towards those who were finishing these fortifications. 6. A larger part of them had fallen; her father fell. 7. These states used often to wage war with those. 8. We shall defend those into whose territories Caesar has sent this legion. 9. Alarmed by all these things, they send ambassadors to him. 10. We learn this from prisoners. 11. The exploits of Caesar were unknown to him.

B.—12. They call this son Lucius, that (son) Marcus. 13. Those who had inhabited that district they drove out. 14. We often do this for the sake of peace. 15. He immediately gave this prisoner his freedom. 16. When he has put these to death, he will turn to them. 17. On being informed of these things, he orders them to surrender; they hesitate to give up their arms. 18. At that time he held the leading place in this state. 19. It is always more dangerous to these than to those; he never gives more to this one than to that. 20. This side of that island extends about a mile. 21. This is thought to be taking place; all this had taken place.

---

\* In sentences like this, the demonstrative agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun. Compare 295, A. 8.



## LESSON LI.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

297. Review 261 and 262, noticing especially the agreement of the participle, the voice of the perfect participle, and the various translations possible.

Latin has no corresponding perfect participle of the active voice, and therefore such sentences as,

*Having repulsed the cavalry, we were led back to camp,*

*Having received hostages, he made peace,*

*Having drawn up the army, he gave the signal,*

cannot be literally translated into Latin.

298. Virtually the same meaning, however, is given by the so-called absolute use of the perfect participle passive; as,

**Equitibus repulsis, in castra reducti sumus,** *the cavalry having been repulsed, we were led back to camp.*

**Obsidibus acceptis, pacem fecit,** *hostages having been received, he made peace.*

**Exercitū instructo, signum dedit,** *the army having been drawn up, he gave the signal.*

This absolute construction is in Latin in the ablative case, and is very common, while in English it is in the nominative case, and is comparatively infrequent.

The participle is joined as a sort of predicate to a noun (or pronoun) which is not the subject of the verb, nor dependent upon any other word in the sentence; whence the name *Ablative Absolute*.\*

299. Corresponding to the various free translations for the perfect participle passive suggested in 262, we

---

\* The ablative absolute phrase as a whole is equivalent to an adverb modifying the predicate.

have the following free renderings, by the active voice, of the perfect participle passive when used in the absolute construction :—

<p><b>Hīs rēbus dictīs, discessit,</b></p>	{	<p><i>having said this, saying this, after saying this, on saying this,</i></p>	}	<p><i>he withdrew.</i></p>
--	---	---	---	----------------------------

So also the sentences in 298 may be rendered,  
*After repulsing the cavalry, we were led back to camp ;  
 On receiving hostages, he made peace ;  
 Drawing up the army, he gave the signal.*

## 300.

## VOCABULARY.

ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,	<i>throw away.</i>
ā-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum,	<i>lose.</i>
calami-tās, -tātis, f.,	<i>disaster, defeat.</i>
dē-stringō, ere, -strīnxī, -strīctum,	<i>draw, unsheathe.</i>
ē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,	<i>throw out.</i>
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum,	<i>break, shatter, crush.</i>
incommodum, ī, n.,	<i>misfortune, loss.</i>
ōrāti-ō, -ōnis, f.,	<i>speech.</i>
ōr-dō, -dinis, m.,	<i>order ; rank.</i>
perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>throw into confusion, disturb.</i>

*Phrases : sē ējicere, rush out.*

*ōrātiōnem habeo, make (deliver) a speech.*

*calamitātem accipio, suffer defeat.*

*incommodum accipio, suffer loss.*

## EXERCISES.

## 301.

## I.

A.—1. Vicīs hostium incēnsīs, cōpiās redūxit. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, exercitum redūcit. 3. Clāmōre audītō, arma statim capiunt. 4. Ēruptiōne factā, ad flūmen Rhēnum contendimus. 5. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā,

concilium dimisit. 6. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, ācritēr pūgnāvērunt. 7. Aciē instrūctā, sīgnū equitibus dat. 8. In fugam conjectī, multōs ex suis āmisērunt. 9. Hīs rēbus cōgnītis, nāvēs solvimus. 10. Armīs abjectis, sē ex castris ējēcērunt. 11. Hōc incommodō perturbātī, sē dēdere cōstituunt. 12. Hīs proeliis calamitātibusque frāctī, obsidēs dare coāctī sunt.

B.—13. Cohortēs repulsae in locis superiōribus cōsistunt. 14. Cohortibus repulsīs, in locis superiōribus cōsistunt. 15. Gladiō dēstrīctō, subitō sē ex oppidō ējēcīt. 16. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet. 17. Impedimentis relictis, ēruptiōnem subitō fēcērunt. 18. Omnibus equis ex cōspectū remōtis, proelium commisit. 19. Celeritāte nostrōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione miserant. 20. Multis āmissis, sē in agmen recēpērunt. 21. Ab hostibus repulsī, māgnam calamitātem accēperāmus. 22. Hostibus repulsīs, oppida incendimus agrōsque vāstāvimus. 23. Equitibus praemissis, castra mūnirī jussit. 24. Primis ordinibus hostium hōc impetū perturbātis, brevī omnēs in fugam conjicimus.

## 302.

## II.

A.—1. Having pitched the camp, they determined to await Caesar's arrival. 2. Sending ambassadors, they sought peace from him. 3. After laying waste (their) fields, he compelled them to give hostages. 4. Having slain a few, they had thrown the rest into confusion. 5. Drawing their swords, they seized the gates. 6. On procuring supplies, we shall set sail. 7. After fighting several battles, they sent envoys to Caesar. 8. Having lost all their ships, they surrendered to Caesar. 9. On learning this, he sent the third legion in advance. 10. Sending scouts in advance, he learned the order of the



line of march. 11. On being informed of his arrival, they betook themselves to the marshes. 12. Having suffered a great defeat, they will lay down their arms.

B.—13. Hearing the shouts in the rear, they rush out of the camp. 14. On being ordered to throw away their arms, they at first hesitated. 15. Collecting larger forces, they drive back our cohorts. 16. Having taken several towns by storm, he sent this despatch. 17. Being exhausted by wounds, they with difficulty withstand our attack. 18. After receiving many wounds, they determine to await reinforcements. 19. After delivering this speech, he withdraws. 20. Making an attack, they threw the ranks into confusion. 21. Having suffered this loss, they will make peace with us. 22. The ships being shattered are useless. 23. The ships being shattered, we have sought aid from you. 24. After hurling their missiles, they drew their swords.



Orator. (*Cicero addressing the Senate.*)



## LESSON LII.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE (continued).

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: **Ipse, Īdem.**

**303.** Various ways have been suggested in 262 and 299 for translating the Latin perfect participle passive, whether it be in agreement with the subject or in the ablative absolute construction.

In many cases also a dependent clause introduced by *when, after, or as*,\* is a proper equivalent ; as,  
**Repulsī ab equitātū, in castra contendērunt,** *as they had been repulsed by the cavalry, they hastened to the camp.*  
**Equitibus repulsīs, in castra reductī sumus,** *when the cavalry had been repulsed, we were led back to camp ; or, after we had repulsed the cavalry, we were led back to camp.*

**304.** It should be noticed that the free renderings suggested in 299 are sometimes impossible ; when, namely, the agent or doer of the action expressed in the participle is not the subject of the main verb ; as,  
**Obsidibus ab hostibus datīs, Caesar pācem fēcit,** *hostages having been given by the enemy, Caesar made peace.*  
**Datō signō, facta est ēruptiō,** *the signal having been given, a sortie was made.*

In such cases the translation by a dependent clause can always be resorted to ; as, *after the enemy had given hostages, Caesar made peace ; when the signal was given, a sortie was made.*

**305. Rule.** The Ablative Absolute is used to define the circumstances of an action.

With the absolute participle as with the participle in agreement with the subject (261), the exact relation

---

\* For *as*, its equivalent *since* may often be substituted. Clauses introduced by *if* or *although* may also be used, but much more rarely.

(whether of time, cause, situation, means or condition) is not expressed in Latin and must be gathered from the general sense; in the English rendering this relation should, as a rule, be indicated.

306.

## Paradigms.

(a) *ipse*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

(b) *īdem*.

	SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>		<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>		<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>		<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>
PLUR.				
<i>Nom.</i>		<i>eīdem, iīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>		<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>		<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>

a. Compare the declension of *ipse* with that of *ille*, 292.

b. Compare the declension of *īdem* with that of *is*, 266;  
*īdem* is formed by adding *-dem* to *is*.\*

\* Notice *īdem* = *is-dem*, *īdem* = *id-dem*, *eundem* = *eum-dem*, *candem* = *cam-dem*, *eōrundem* = *cōrum-dem*, *eārundem* = *cārum-dem*.

307.

Illustrative Examples.

Equitibus praemissis, ipse aciem instrūxit, *sending the cavalry in advance, he himself drew up the line of battle.*

Ā Gallis ipsis certior factus est, *he was informed by the Gauls themselves.*

Dē tē ipsō dicō, *I am speaking of you yourself.*

Sē dēfendunt, *they defend themselves.*

Sē ad eadem castra recēpit, *he betook himself to the same camp.*

Idem faciunt, *they do the same thing.*

Observe in connection with these sentences, that:—

- a. ipse (-self) and idem (the same) are used both as pronouns and as adjectives ;
- b. ipse is used to emphasize or distinguish, and is not, like sē, a reflexive pronoun ;
- c. ipse may be used in any person, being translated *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*, according to the word with which it agrees.

308.

VOCABULARY.

ac-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *draw near, approach.*

administrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *manage, attend to.*

aes-tās, -tātis, f., *summer.*

autumnus, ī, m., *autumn.*

expediō, īre, īvī, ītum, *set free ; make ready.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter.*

probō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approve, favour.*

prō-vidēō, ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, *foresee ; provide, secure.*

tempestās, -tātis, f., *storm ; weather.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

Phrases: legiō expedita, *a legion in light marching order, i.e. without baggage.*

primum vēr, *the beginning of spring.*



## EXERCISES.

309.

I.

A.—1. Eōdem tempore ēruptiōnem faciunt. 2. Caesar ipse idem fēcit. 3. Eiusdem legiōnis centuriō sē interfēcerat. 4. Remissā legiōne, ipse in Ītaliā contendit. 5. Ipse dux hostium captus est. 6. Haec ā cīvibus ipsīs audīverat. 7. Ā vēre ad autumnum noctēs sunt brevissimae. 8. Primā lūce equitātus ad mūnitiōnēs nostrās accēdit. 9. Proximā aestāte finēs hostium vāstat, ipsōsque interfēcit. 10. Eādem dē causā frūmentum ante hiemem prōvisum nōn erat. 11. Propter māgnitudinem tempestātis, difficile erat nāvēs administrāre.

B.—12. Dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs, cōpiae sē in hiberna recipient. 13. Quod ad hostium castra accēdēbat, legiōnem expeditam dūcēbat. 14. Praesidiō relictō, ipse in prōvinciam cōdem itinere contendit. 15. Reliquam partem aestātis, māgnae tempestātēs nostrōs ā pūgnā prohibent. 16. Omnēs idem probant; hōc ipsī nōn probābāmus. 17. Agrōs dicitur habēre ā tē ipsō concessōs. 18. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō, celeriter sēsē Gallī expediunt procliumque committunt. 19. Reliquae nāvēs tempestātēs oceanī ipsius aegrē sustinēbunt. 20. Id quod ipsī aegerrimē fēcerant, ille fēcit facillimē.

310.

II.

A.—1. The same night the camp was moved. 2. When the troops had been drawn up, he himself gave the signal. 3. They betook themselves to the same camp. 4. The two sons of the king himself surrendered themselves at about the same time. 5. These are the same enemies with whom you yourself have often



waged war. 6. Several states are adjacent to the same province. 7. This place he had approved for many reasons. 8. In one summer Caesar had himself finished two very great wars. 9. While this was taking place, it had begun to be spring. 10. He himself approaches nearer, with three legions in light marching order and two thousand cavalry. 11. As the storm had been foreseen, there was not the same difficulty.

B.—12. We ourselves had set sail at midnight from the same harbour. 13. As several ships had been shattered, great loss had been suffered. 14. When this was learned, even the soldiers themselves were alarmed. 15. For the same reason, the nights are longer in winter than in summer. 16. If everything is provided before autumn, they will easily defend themselves. 17. When this fact (*rēs*) was announced, they were ordered to get their arms ready as quickly as possible. 18. According to his custom, when the winter was ended he collected as many troops as possible. 19. After carefully attending to these matters, he himself, at the beginning of spring, hastened to the army. 20. The legion itself was sent back to the same harbour from which it had set sail the preceding summer.



**Sarcinae : Soldier's Pack.**

## LESSON LIII.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

311. A considerable number of Latin verbs no longer retain the active voice, but use the passive forms with an active meaning. Such verbs are called *Deponents*.<sup>\*</sup> As there is no perfect active stem, the principal parts of deponent verbs are but three in number ; e.g.

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>cōnor, ārī, cōnātus sum, attempt.</i>
<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>vereor, ērī, veritus sum, fear.</i>
<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>sequor, ī, secūtus sum, follow.</i>
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	<i>sortior, irī, sortītus sum, allot.</i>
<i>Conj. III. (in -ior),</i>	<i>patior, ī, passus sum, allow.</i>

312.

## Illustrative Examples.

<i>Cōnantur,</i>	<i>they attempt.</i>
<i>Cōnātus,</i>	<i>after attempting.</i>
<i>Verēbāmur,</i>	<i>we feared.</i>
<i>Veritus,</i>	<i>fearing.</i>
<i>Secūtī erant,</i>	<i>they had followed.</i>
<i>Sequī coepit,</i>	<i>he began to follow.</i>
<i>Sortītur,</i>	<i>he allots.</i>
<i>Patitur,</i>	<i>he allows.</i>

a. Observe the translation of these forms and note especially that, with deponent verbs, the difficulty mentioned in 297 does not exist, as these verbs have a perfect participle with active force.

313. A few verbs (called *Semi-deponents*) are deponent in the perfect system only ; for example, *audeō, ēre, ausus sum, venture.*

---

<sup>\*</sup> From *dēpōnō*, *lay aside*, because they have laid aside their active forms.

314.

## Paradigms.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

*Conj. I. Conj. II. Conj. III. Conj. IV.*

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT	1. cōnor	vereor	sequor	sortior
	2. cōnāris	verēris	sequeris	sortīris
	3. cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	sortītur
	1. cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	sortīmur
	2. cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	sortīminī
	3. cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	sortiuntur
IMPERFECT	cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	sortiēbar
FUTURE	cōnābor	verēbor	sequar	sortiar
PERFECT	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	sortītus
	sum	sum	sum	sum
PLUPERFECT	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	sortītus
	eram	eram	eram	eram
FUT. PERF.	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	sortītus
	erō	erō	erō	erō

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT	cōnārī	verērī	sequī	sortīrī
---------	--------	--------	-------	---------

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT	cōnāns	verēns	sequēns	sortiēns
PERFECT	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	sortītus

Similarly with verbs of the third conjugation in **-ior** :—

PRESENT INDIC.	patior	PERFECT INDIC.	passus sum
IMPERFECT “	patiēbar	PLUPERFECT “	passus eram
FUTURE “	patiar	FUT. PERF. “	passus erō

PRES. INFINITIVE pati

PRES. PARTICIPLE	patiēns	PERF. PARTICIPLE	passus
------------------	---------	------------------	--------

*a.* Notice that by exception the present participle of the active voice is retained; as, **cōnāns**, *while attempting*.

## 315.

## VOCABULARY.

cōnor, ārī, ātus sum,	<i>try, attempt.</i>
moror, ārī, ātus sum,	<i>delay, wait.</i>
nancīscor, ī, nactus sum,	<i>get, obtain.</i>
orior, orīrī, ortus sum,	<i>arise, rise.</i>
patior, ī, passus sum,	<i>allow.</i>
polliceor, ērī, itus sum,	<i>promise.</i>
proficīscor, ī, profectus sum,	<i>set out.</i>
prōgredior, ī, prōgressus sum,	<i>advance, proceed.</i>
sequor, ī, secūtus sum,	<i>follow.</i>
vereor, ērī, itus sum,	<i>fear.</i>

## EXERCISES.

## 316.

## I.

A.—1. Interfectus est, profectus est; jussī erāmus, passī erāmus. 2. Cōgnōscitur, nancīscitur; relinquitur, sequitur. 3. Timent, verentur; timuerat, veritus erat. 4. Oriēbātur, morāminī, cōnāberis. 5. Equitātū prae-missō, ipse cum legiōnibus expeditis sequitur. 6. Auxilium Gallis pollicitus, haec ab iīs cōgnōvit. 7. Ante mediam noctem clāmor ortus est. 8. Dum in hīs locis Caesar morātur, lēgātī ad eum vērunt. 9. Equitēs eōsdem sēcum proficīscī jubet. 10. Lēgātōs interficī nōn patiar. 11. Inopiam frūmentī veritus, cōstituit nōn prōgredī longius. 12. Praedā quam nactī erant relictā, sē in castra recipere cōnātī sunt.

B.—13. Nōn hostem verēmur, sed māgnitudinem silvārum. 14. In aquam prōgressī, ex equīs dēsiliunt. 15. In aquam prōgredientēs, audācter tēla conjiciunt. 16. Id, quod pollicitī erant, facere cōnābantur. 17. Sī statim profectī erimus, hostēs nōn diūtius morābuntur. 18. Rhēnus orīrī dīcitur in montibus. 19. Multī amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī erant. 20. Hīs rēbus



administrātis, paucōs diēs rei frūmentāriae causā morābantur. 21. Eā quae secūta est hieme, in\* Britanniam proficiscī ausī sumus. 22. Ortō clāmōre, omnēs sē ex oppidō ējicere cōnantur. 23. Lēgātōs, cōnantēs dicere, dīmisit. 24. Nactus idōneam tempestātem, ipse tertiā vigiliā nāvēs solvit, equitēsque in alterum portum prōgredi et sē sequī jussit.

317.

II.

A.—1. We venture, we have ventured. 2. We were advancing, you were promising. 3. I shall attempt, we shall delay, I shall follow, we shall set out. 4. She had obtained, it has arisen, we have feared, you had allowed. 5. He was attempting to follow us. 6. You had promised us corn. 7. They fear everything; they are thought to fear nothing. 8. Having attended to everything, he sets out for the army. 9. After advancing seven miles from that place, he reached the same river. 10. Great losses will be suffered; great misfortunes will arise. 11. After waiting several days, and getting a supply of corn, he will set out for the war.

B.—12. Fearing the danger, he has not ventured to advance. 13. Drawing their swords, they attempt to follow. 14. He orders this same legion to set out and come to him as quickly as possible. 15. All this I promise you. 16. If they promise this, he will allow them to wait longer. 17. Setting out from this harbour, the ships proceed about ten miles. 18. They will attempt to march through our province. 19. Storms followed for several days. 20. Having left a garrison, he himself set out against the enemy. 21. The shouts of those who are following arise. 22. If he demands help from us, we shall promise a larger number of ships.

---

\* After **proficiscor**, **in** with the accusative is to be translated *for*.

## 318.

## WORD LIST E.

## ATTACK.

rush out	take up arms	fight a battle
sally out	make ready arms	make an attack
break through	join battle	withstand an attack
drive back	draw swords	assault
resist	hurl weapons	sortie

## REVERSES.

defeat	be in distress	receive wounds
conquer	be hard pressed	exhausted by
kill	flee	wounds
fall	turn and flee	fear (noun and verb)
lose	put to flight	throw into confusion
wound	take to flight	throw away arms
yield	suffer loss	lay down arms
hide	suffer defeat	betake one's self
prisoner	shatter	surrender (noun)
capture	alarm	surrender (verb,
overpower	despair of safety	trans. and intrans.)

## WAR : MISCELLANEOUS.

centurion	transport	legionary soldier
rank	supplies	be on guard
outpost	exploit	raise a shout

## MOVEMENTS.

set out	send in advance	turn
set sail	withdraw	wheel about
follow	come in sight	lead across
approach	march	bring over
advance	join	in light marching order

## NEGOTIATIONS.

embassy	point out	demand	forget
meeting	show	approve	memory
make a speech	promise	remember	mindful

## TIME.

spring	autumn	always	at once
summer	winter	never	meanwhile
		often	

## MISCELLANEOUS.

storm	do	make	inhabit
barbarian	happen	finish	either . . or
order	take place	observe	neither . . nor
weather	take	foresee	both . . and
get	take away	attend to	but
receive	break	delay	also, even
regain	throw	attempt	above
allow	arise	weep	on all sides

## READING LESSON X.

## ROME TAKEN BY THE GAULS. (390 B.C.)

319.

## VOCABULARY.

**arx**, **arcis**, f., *citadel* (on the Capitoline hill at Rome).  
**Etrūscī**, **ōrum**, m., *the Etruscans*, the people of Etruria.  
**urbs**, **urbis**, f., *city*.

Illis temporibus Gallī nōn solum Galliam sed etiam  
 superiōrem\* partem Italiae incolēbant. Per (over)  
 montēs iter ex Galliā fēcerant, et complūribus proeliis  
 factis, eōs quī ea loca incolēbant expulerant, et ipsi

---

\*Literally *upper*, that is, *northern*.

agros eōrum obtinēbant. Post multōs annōs bellum inter hōs Gallōs et populum Rōmānum ortum est. Hūjus bellī haec erat causa. Brennus, rēx Gallōrum, cum finitimīs Etrūriae cīvitātibus bellum gerēbat. Etrūscī, complūribus proeliīs superātī, auxilium ā Rōmānīs petivērunt. Illī, periculum veritī, quod Gallī propius accēdēbant, cōstituērunt nōn auxilium pollicērī sed bellum compōnere (*to settle*) cōnārī. Itaque (*accordingly*) trēs lēgātōs ad exercitum Etrūscōrum misērunt; sed multīs dē causīs difficillimum erat pācem facere, et post complūrēs diēs proelium commissum est. Lēgātī ubi (*when*) Etrūscōs labōrantēs cōspexērunt, armīs captīs, sē cum Etrūscīs coniungunt, et ūnus ex ducibus Gallōrum interficitur. Gallī hāc injūriā adductī, cōstituērunt Rōmam oppūgnāre, et statim profectī sunt.

Dē eōrum adventū certiōrēs factī, Rōmānī cōpiās quam plūrimās coēgērunt, et ad flūmen Alliam, quod ūndecim mīlia passuum ab urbe aberat, prōgressī sunt. Ibi (*there*) proelium factum est et Rōmānī māgnam calamitātem accēpērunt. Clamōribus barbarōrum perterritī, prīmō impetū perturbātī sunt. Timor animōs omnium occupāvit, et armīs abjectīs terga vertērunt. Māxima pars exercitūs ad proxima oppida fugit; multī vulneribus cōfectī cadunt, aut fugere cōnantēs interficiuntur; paucī sē trāns Tiberim in urbem recipiunt incolumēs.

Dum haec geruntur, Gallī, praedā omnī distribūtā, ad urbem contendunt. Iter celeriter cōnficitur, et eōdem diē ad Tiberim perveniunt. Equitēs, quī praemissī erant, portās apertās (*open*) invēnērunt, neque ūlla statio prō (*before*) portīs collocāta erat. Hāc dē causā insidiās (*an ambush*) veritī, cōstituērunt nōn prōgredi longius, sed, castrīs positīs, extrā (*outside*)



mūnitiōnēs morābantur. Interim Rōmānī, hāc calamitāte frāctī, urbem dēfendere nōn cōnantur, sed cum conjugibus (*wives*) et liberis sē in arcem recipiunt. Posterō diē, Brennus dē timōre Rōmānōrum per explōrātōrēs certior factus, barbarōs in urbem dūcit et Rōmam incendiī jubet. Tanta (*so great*) calamitās numquam ante id tempus populō Rōmānō acciderat.

## LESSON LIV.

### ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

**320.** After passive verbs of saying and thinking, both Latin and English regularly use the infinitive ; as,  
**Dicitur esse inimīcus,** *he is said to be unfriendly.*  
**Iter facile esse exīstimātur,** *the road is thought to be easy.*

In the active voice such verbs are, in English, only occasionally followed by the infinitive (with a subject in the objective case) ; as, *I believe them to be innocent ; I know him to be honest.* More frequently, in English, verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing* and *perceiving* are followed by a clause introduced by *that* ; but Latin after such verbs always uses the infinitive with a subject in the accusative case ; as,

**Dicit Rōmānōs venīre,** *he says that the Romans are coming.*  
**Exīstimat mē esse amīcum,** *he thinks that I am a friend.*  
**Videt nostrōs castra pōnere,** *he sees that our men are pitching their camp.*

**321.** (a) In each of the Latin sentences just given, notice that the time of the two verbs is identical ; in other words that the original statement or thought would be put in the present tense, viz., **Rōmānī veniunt, est amīcus, castra pōnunt.**

(b) Besides the present infinitive, Latin has also a perfect and a future infinitive, to express respectively time before and time after that of the main verb ; as,  
**Dīcit Rōmānōs vēnisse**, *he says that the Romans have come.*  
**Videt nostrōs castra posuisse**, *he sees that our men have pitched their camp.*

**Dīcit Rōmānōs ventūrōs esse**, *he says that the Romans will come.*

**Exīstimat mē futūrum esse amīcum**, *he thinks that I shall be friendly.*

## 322.

## Paradigms.

## THE INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Conj. I.</i>	amāre	amāvisse	amātūrus esse
<i>Conj. II.</i>	monēre	monuisse	monitūrus esse
<i>Conj. III.</i>	regere	rēxisse	rēctūrus esse
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	audire	audīvisse	auditūrus esse
<i>Conj. III. (in -iō)</i>	capere	cēpisse	captūrus esse
<b>Sum.</b>	esse	fuisse	futūrus esse <i>or</i> fore

a. The future infinitive is a compound form, made up of the future participle, ending in **-ūrus, a, um**, and the present infinitive of **sum**. This future participle is formed from the participial (or supine) stem, and means *about to* (*come, etc.*). The participle agrees in gender, number and case with the person or thing referred to, *i.e.* the subject of **esse**.

## 323.

## Illustrative Examples.

**Respondeō mē vēnisse**, *I reply that I have come.*  
**Respondet sē ventūrum esse**, *he replies that he will come.*  
**Respondent eum esse ventūrum**, *they reply that he will come.*  
**Respondent sē esse ventūrōs**, *they reply that they will come.*

- a.* As the infinitive, unlike the indicative, has no personal endings, the pronominal subject (representing *I, you, he*, etc.) should be expressed.
- b.* Notice that the reflexive pronoun **suī** is used in the accusative and infinitive clause for *he* or *they*, when denoting the same person as the subject of the main verb; to denote a different person the proper form of **is** should be used.

324.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>audiō</b> , <i>hear.</i>	<b>exīstimō</b> , <i>think.</i>
<b>certiōrem faciō</b> , <i>inform.</i>	<b>meminī</b> , <i>remember.</i>
<b>cōgnōscō</b> , <i>learn, ascertain;</i> in perfect tenses, <i>know.</i>	<b>nūntiō</b> , <i>announce.</i>
<b>dēmōnstrō</b> , <i>point out, explain, mention.</i>	<b>ostendō</b> , <i>show, declare.</i>
<b>dīcō</b> , <i>say.</i>	<b>polliceor</b> , <i>promise.</i>
	<b>respondeō</b> , <i>reply, answer.</i>
	<b>videō</b> , <i>see; passive, seem.</i>

N.B.—These words, all occurring in previous Lessons, are followed by the accusative and infinitive.

## EXERCISES.

325.

## I.

A.—1. Dēmōnstrat altitudinem flūminis esse māgnam.  
 2. Nihil vidētur esse facilius. 3. Hostēs finitimam partem prōvinciae vāstāvisse audit. 4. Pollicentur sēsē in dēditionem numquam ventūrōs esse. 5. Videō eōs ex equīs ad pedēs dēsiluisse. 6. Nūntiant māgnās hostium cōpiās convēnisse neque longē abesse. 7. Meminī eum fuisse fidēlissimum amīcum. 8. Omnium rērū cōpiam habēre exīstimāmur. 9. Dicit sē alteram partem vicī Gallīs concessūrum esse, alteram cohortibus. 10. Respondent sē aliud iter habēre nūllum. 11. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē nōn parēs esse cēterīs. 12. Cōgnōscit tōtī Galliae equitēs Caesarem imperāre.



B.—13. Exīstimat eōs ex nāvī dēsilīre nōn audēre. 14. Ostendunt sē nihil fēcisse. 15. Vident illud cōnsilium sibi\* fore periculōsum. 16. Māgnam inter Gallōs auctōritātem eum habēre cōgnōvī. 17. Fīnitimae cīvitatēs obsidēs sē datūrās esse pollicentur. 18. Respondet sē dē rē pūblicā nōn dēspērāre. 19. Sine ūllō periculō proelium fore dēmōnstrat. 20. Dīcit aliōs discēdere, aliōs propius accēdere. 21. Respondet sē obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuēvisse. 22. Audiunt Belgās proximōs esse Germānīs, fortiōrēsque esse quam reliquōs Gallōs. 23. Silva dīcitur pertinuisse ā flūmine Tamesī ad mare. 24. Nūntiant sēsē castra positūrōs esse in summō colle.

## 326.

## II.

A.—1. He announces that Caesar will come quickly. 2. He thinks that these cohorts are less brave. 3. He points out that you have had great experience. 4. We hear that the leading men have assembled from all sides. 5. They promise that they will do all this. 6. He says that they have reconnoitred all the roads. 7. He has been informed that the Britons have seized the heights. 8. He answers that he is a Roman citizen. 9. He sees that we hold all the hills. 10. They remember that they are free. 11. I learn that he has been unfriendly to you alone. 12. The war-ships seem to be very swift.

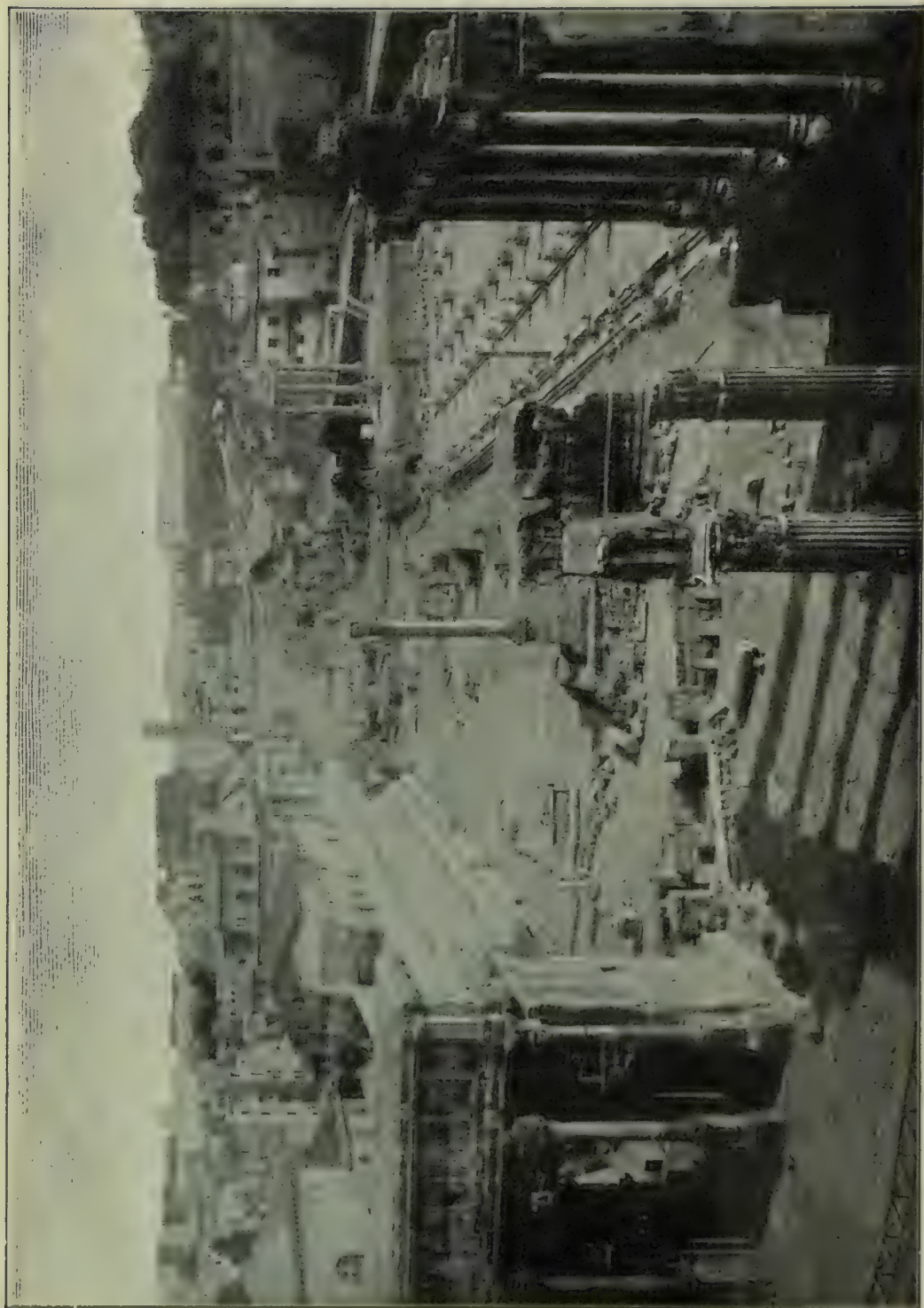
B.—13. I promise that I shall grant freedom to a large part of the citizens. 14. He thinks that the danger is common to all of us. 15. He explains that on account of the height of the mountains they are leaving all their baggage. 16. Summoning the soldiers, he declares

---

\* If for *sibi*, *eis* be read, what different meaning will the sentence have?







THE ROMAN FORUM, LOOKING EAST.

that he will be their leader. 17. We have heard that he has demanded hostages from the senate. 18. I say that the time for (*literally* of) victory has come. 19. They answer that they will easily withstand the fiercest attack. 20. He sees that the other road is very easy. 21. He has been informed that there is a bridge over (*literally* on) the river Tiber. 22. You are thought to be the bravest of all the Gauls. 23. He has ascertained that this is not the custom of the Roman people. 24. The daughter is said to have been very like her mother.

---

## LESSON LV.

## ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (continued).

## 327. Illustrative Examples.

Rōmānī veniunt, *the Romans are coming.*

Dicit Rōmānēs venīre, *he says that the Romans are coming.*

Dixit Rōmānōs venīre, *he said\* the Romans were coming.*

Rōmānī vērunt, *the Romans have come.*

Dicit Rōmānōs vērunt, *he says that the Romans have come.*

Dixit Rōmānōs vērunt, *he said that the Romans had come.*

Rōmānī venient, *the Romans will come.*

Dicit Rōmānōs ventūrōs esse, *he says\* the Romans will come.*

Dixit Rōmānōs ventūrōs esse, *he said\* the Romans would come.*

- a. These sentences illustrate the fact that in indirect assertions, in English, the tense of the verb in the subordinate clause is influenced by the tense of the principal verb of *saying*, etc.; while in Latin no such changes occur in the infinitive.

---

\*In English, *that* is frequently omitted after verbs of *saying*, etc.

Whatever the tense of the principal verb may be, in Latin the rule holds that the present infinitive represents the *same time* as that of the principal verb, the perfect infinitive *time before* that of the principal verb, and the future infinitive *time after* that of the principal verb.

If, therefore, the original statement or thought would be in the present tense, the present infinitive should be used; if in a past tense (imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect), the perfect infinitive; and if in the future tense, the future infinitive.

### 328. Illustrative Examples.

**Polliciti sunt sē esse ventūrōs,** *they promised that they would come, or they promised to come.*

**Spērat sē rēgem futūrum esse,** *he hopes that he will be king, or he hopes to be king.*

- a.* Observe that after verbs signifying to *hope* or *promise*, in English the simple infinitive may be used instead of *that* and a finite verb, but that in Latin only one construction prevails, the accusative with the future infinitive.

### 329. VOCABULARY.

arbitror, ārī, ātus sum,	<i>think, consider.</i>
renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>report, bring back word.</i>
scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum,	<i>write.</i>
spērō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>hope.</i>
suspīcor, ārī, ātus sum,	<i>suspect.</i>

### EXERCISES.

#### 330.

#### I.

- A.—1. Omnem exercitum discessisse renūntiāverunt.  
 2. Scripsit paucōs portūs esse idōneōs. 3. Suspiciātī sunt nostrōs in hunc locum esse ventūrōs. 4. Lēgātīs



missis, obsides se daturos\* polliciti sunt. 5. Ex nuntiis litterisque cognovit magnas copias convenire. 6. Nuntiaverant Gallos adventum nostrum exspectare. 7. Renuntiaverant Gallos adventum nostrum exspectare constituisse. 8. Sperabant Caesarem Germanos agros vastare prohibiturum. 9. Demonstravimus eum militarem usum habere. 10. Nobis te fidelem fuisse arbitrabamur. 11. Idem superioribus diebus accidisse suspicabantur. 12. Speraverat sibi Gallos principatum tradituros esse.

B.—13. Renuntiavit flumen ab castris non longe abesse et trans id flumen omnes hostes consedissee. 14. Respondimus magnam Caesarem injuriam facere. 15. Arbitratus erat se bellum celeriter esse confecturum. 16. Subito certior factus est ex vico omnes discessisse, montesque tenere. 17. Sperabam eos in deditiorem venturos\*; polliciti sunt se in deditiorem venturos. 18. Breviores esse in Britannia quam in continenti aestates scripsit. 19. Respondit non aequum esse agros sociorum vastare. 20. Sperabamus nos naves soluturos proxima nocte.

## 331.

## II.

A.—1. He answered that he would move his camp the following night. 2. The same day Caesar was informed that the enemy had fled. 3. He suspected that they would always be hostile to him. 4. He wrote that he had abundance of corn and cattle. 5. They used to consider that this had been the cause of the war. 6. We hoped that the other road would be easier. 7. They reported that the commander-in-chief did not despair of safety. 8. He promised to examine the

---

\* In the future infinitive, **esse** is very frequently omitted, without any change of meaning.

matter. 9. He wrote that for this reason he had said nothing. 10. It was announced that the enemy's cavalry had surrounded the column. 11. They suspected that he was hastening to the right wing. 12. We declared that we should neither send ambassadors nor surrender our arms.

B.—13. I had been informed through scouts that you had led the troops across. 14. He wrote that Caesar was increasing the number of hostages. 15. They reported that the enemy, after taking the town by storm, had slain a large number of the inhabitants. 16. He said that they were sending despatches to Caesar daily. 17. We suspected that the leading men had determined to wage war with us. 18. From the same guides he ascertained that a town, protected by woods and marshes, was not far distant from that place. 19. I (he, they) had hoped to receive my (his, their) freedom. 20. Thinking\* that this was a suitable place, we determined to encamp.

## LESSON LVI.

### ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (continued).

332.

#### Paradigms.

#### PRESENT AND PERFECT INFINITIVE PASSIVE.

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.
<i>Conj. I.</i>	amārī	amātus esse
<i>Conj. II.</i>	monērī	monitus esse
<i>Conj. III.</i>	regī	rēctus esse
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	audīrī	audītus esse
<i>Conj. III. (in -iō)</i>	capī	captus esse

\* The perfect participle of **arbitror** should be used, as the thought preceded the determination.

- a. The perfect infinitive passive is made up of the perfect participle passive and the infinitive *esse*; the former of these agrees in gender, number and case with the subject of the infinitive.

333.

## Illustrative Examples.

*Agrī vāstantur, the lands are being laid waste.*

*Nūntiat agrōs vāstārī, he announces that the lands are being laid waste.*

*Nūntiāvit agrōs vāstārī, he announced that the lands were being laid waste.*

*Agrī vāstātī sunt, the lands have been laid waste.*

*Nūntiat agrōs vāstātōs esse, he announces that the lands have been laid waste.*

*Nūntiāvit agrōs vāstātōs esse, he announced that the lands had been laid waste.*

- a. It will be seen from these sentences that the same rules apply in the passive voice as in the active, for the use of the present and perfect infinitives after verbs of *saying*, etc.\*

334.

## Paradigms.

## INFINITIVE OF DEPONENT VERBS.

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Conj. I.</i>	cōnārī	cōnātus esse	cōnātūrus esse
<i>Conj. II.</i>	verērī	veritus esse	veritūrus esse
<i>Conj. III.</i>	sequī	secūtus esse	secūtūrus esse
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	sortīrī	sortītus esse	sortītūrus esse
<i>Conj. III. (in -ior)</i>	patī	passus esse	passūrus esse

- a. The present and perfect infinitives of deponent verbs are formed in the same way as the corresponding infinitives of the passive voice; their future infinitive is like that of the active voice (322).

---

\* The passive voice has also a future infinitive, which is, however, of such rare occurrence that it is omitted in these Lessons.



## 335.

## Illustrative Examples.

Dīcit hostēs sequī, *he says that the enemy are following.*

Dīxit hostēs sequī, *he said that the enemy were following.*

Audit eōs profectōs esse, *he hears that they have set out.*

Audīvit eōs profectōs esse, *he heard that they had set out.*

Pollicētur sē secūtūrum esse, *he promises that he will follow (or to follow).*

Pollicitus est sē secūtūrum esse, *he promised that he would follow (or to follow).*

- a. As is shown by these sentences, the use of the various tenses of the infinitive of deponent verbs in the accusative and infinitive construction is according to the general rule.

## 336.

## VOCABULARY.

crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *believe.*

intellegō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *understand, be aware.*

negō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deny, say . . not.*

sciō, īre, īvī, ītum, *know.*

sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, *feel, perceive.*

## EXERCISES.

## 337.

## I.

A.—1. Certior factus est oppida expūgnāta et incēnsa esse. 2. Scīmus litterās ā Caesare ad senātum missās esse. 3. Intellegimus Rhēnum in montibus orīrī. 4. Spērābant sē praedam nactūrōs esse. 5. Omnem exercitum premī nūntiāvērunt. 6. Cum mājōribus cōpiīs Caesarem esse profectum audīverant. 7. Crēdimus omnia diligenter facta esse. 8. Negāvit sē diūtius morātūrum. 9. Sēnsērunt reliquōs equitēs sē sequī. 10. Suspiciātur vōs ausūrōs esse prōgredī. 11. Intellegit impetum minus facile sustinērī. 12. Scripsit castra vāllō decem pedēs altō mūnīta esse.



B.—13. Arbitrātur mīlitēs perīculum verērī. 14. Sentit proelium equestre commissum esse. 15. Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque esse renūntiāvērunt. 16. Undique bellum renovārī videt; suōs interficī vīdit. 17. Dixērunt nāvēs onerāriās jussās esse sē sequī. 18. Negat sē passūrum esse nōs discēdere. 19. Scīmus eum multīs rēbus impedīrī. 20. Crēdidit omnēs inimicōs ex civitāte expulsōs esse. 21. Obsidēs profectōs esse et frūmentum comportārī respondit. 22. Legiōnēs collocātās esse in hibernīs cōgnōvit. 23. Intellēxerat auxilia in summō monte collocārī et tōtum montem hominibus complērī. 24. Centuriōnem superiōre proeliō multīs cōfectum esse vulneribus dēmōstrāvimus.

## 338.

## II.

A.—1. He says that the troops have been led out of winter quarters. 2. They hoped that Caesar would set out for the war at once. 3. He was aware that the place was being carefully fortified. 4. He was informed that the enemy's territories had been laid waste far and wide. 5. He perceived that the Britons were advancing boldly into the water. 6. He thinks all the reinforcements have followed as quickly as possible. 7. She has promised to follow on the same day. 8. We knew that the troops had been greatly impeded by the extent of the forests and marshes. 9. I deny that we have been terrified by your arrival. 10. He had written that storms had followed for several days.

B.—11. I remember that he was called king and friend by the senate of the Roman people. 12. He answered that they had been compelled to give hostages. 13. He suspected that great losses were being suffered. 14. They see that our men are advancing

farther. 15. He announced that they were attempting to march through our province. 16. I knew that a very great storm had arisen. 17. He showed that the commander had set out for the nearest camp. 18. We believe a very large part of the whole army has been slain. 19. They will hear that many battles have been fought. 20. He denies that the danger is increasing; he said the danger had not increased.

---

## LESSON LVII.

### QUESTIONS. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

**339.** (a) Some questions seek an answer which has especial reference to an interrogative word (or group of words) placed at the beginning of the question; this answer is never "yes" or "no"; as, *Who has done this? Whom do you see? How many slaves has he? At what time did the messenger come?*

(b) Other questions seek a "yes" or "no" answer to the whole question; as, *Have you done this? Do you see the king? Has he many slaves? Did the messenger come at noon?*

(c) If these questions be compared with corresponding statements (e.g. *You have done this, I see the king, He has many slaves, The messenger came at noon*) it will be seen that in interrogative sentences in English—

- (1) the subject (unless itself an interrogative word) comes after either the whole or part of the verb;
- (2) the verbal phrases with *do* or *did* are preferred to the simple present and past tenses.

In Latin there is nothing corresponding to either of these points of difference between statements and questions.

340. Questions of the first class mentioned above are introduced in Latin, as in English, by interrogative pronouns, adjectives or adverbs ; as,

**Quis** haec fēcit ?      *Who has done this ?*

**Quem** vidēs ?      *Whom do you see ?*

**Cūr** nūntius vēnit ?      *Why did the messenger come ?*

**Quō** tempore vēnit ?      *At what time did he come ?*

In Latin, as in English, the answer may be either a complete sentence or a portion of a sentence ; as, **Ego** fēcī, *I have done (it) ; Ego, I ; Rēgem* videō, *I see the king ; Rēgem, the king.*

341.

Paradigm.

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, **quis**.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. Compare the declension of the relative pronoun **quī** (254), noting the differences.

b. When the interrogative is used as an adjective, **quī** is preferred to **quis**, and **quod** is always used in place of **quid**.

c. **Cum** is suffixed to the ablative of the interrogative **quis**. (Compare 255. a. 6.)



342. (a) Questions of the second class ("yes or no" questions) have in Latin the interrogative word **-ne** appended to an emphatic word, which is placed at the beginning of the sentence\* ; as,

**Vidēsne rēgem ?** *Do you see the king ?*

**Multōsne servōs habet ?** *Has he many slaves ?*

Questions of this sort may be answered by repeating the verb ; as, **Videō**, *I see (him) ; Nōn videō*, *I do not ; Habet*, *he has ;* or by one of the many words equivalent to *yes* or *no*.†

(b) Questions of this class may also begin with **nōnne** (**nōn-ne**), which invites the answer *yes*, or with **num**, which invites the answer *no* ; as,

**Nōnne habet multōs servōs ?** *Has he not many slaves ?*

(or, *He has many slaves, has he not ?*)

**Num rēgem vidēs ?** *Surely you do not see the king ?* (or, *You do not see the king, do you ?*)

## 343.

## VOCABULARY.

**hīc**, adv., *here, in this place.*

**hūc**, adv., *hither, here, to this place.*

**ibi**, adv., *there, in that place.*

**eō**, adv., *thither, there, to that place.*

**ubi**, adv., *where, in which place, in what place.*

**quō**, adv., *whither, where, to which place, to what place.*

**unde**, adv., *whence, from which place, from what place.*

**cūr**, adv., *why.*

**quantus**, a, um, *how large, how great.*

**uter, tra, trum** (205), *which (of two).*

\* Words like **-ne** and **-que**, which are always appended to some other word, are called *Enclitics*. **-Ne** must not be used when the sentence contains some other interrogative word, that is, with questions of the first class.

† Such words are **etiam**, *even so* ; **certē**, *certainly* ; **sānē**, *to be sure* ; **nōn**, *no* ; **minimē**, *by no means*.



N.B.—**Ubi**, **quō** and **unde** are used both as interrogative adverbs and as relative adverbs; as, **Ubi est?** **In eō locō ubi legiō hiemat.** *Where is he? In the place where the legion is wintering.* The twofold meaning and translation of the English words *where*, *here* and *there* should be carefully noted.

## EXERCISES.

344.

I.

A.—1. **Cūr nōn respondēs?** **Nōnne respondēre audēs?** **Num dubitās respondēre?** 2. **Quā dē causā\*** **sē abdidērunt?** **Multi dē causis.** 3. **Quanta est hūjus fossae lātitudō?** 4. **Ubi habitās, Mārce?** **Habitāsne hīc?** 5. **Nāvēsne profectae sunt?** **Unde profectae sunt?** **Quō prōgrediuntur?** 6. **Eō pervēnērunt primō vēre.** **Quō tempore profecti sunt?** **Alii superiōre hieme, alii autumnō, alii mediā aestāte.** 7. **Ibi fortiter pūgnāns, gravissimē vulnerātus est.** **Ā quō vulnerātus est?** **Quis eum vulnerāvit?** 8. **Uter alterī pāret?** **Lēgātus imperātōrī pāret.** 9. **Nāvibus āmissis, quō sē convertent?** **Nōnne hūc sē recipient?** 10. **Quibus ex regiōnibus\*** **vēnistis quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōvistis?** 11. **Quid petunt aliud† Rōmānī?**

B.—12. **Nōnne haec onera gravia sunt?** 13. **Cui omnia haec incōgnita erant?** 14. **Hīc concilium principum habēbō.†** 15. **Ibi cōspicit dēfēnsōrēs labōrantēs.** 16. **Hūc omnia pecora compellere coeperant.** 17. **Eō cum Caesar ipse vēnerit, animōs omnium cōfirmābit.** 18. **Nōnne nātūrā locī continēmur?** 19. **Quanta multitūdō ibi cecidit?** **Trecentine cecidērunt?** 20. **Quid postulātis?** **Cūr imperium postulāvistis?** 21. **Pedestrēs**

\* This is the regular order when the interrogative modifies a noun governed by a preposition.

† Literally 'other thing,' freely 'else.' ‡ Translate **habeō** here by 'hold.'

cōpiās in hīberna proficīscī, ibique hiemāre jubet.  
22. Nōne proelium illud meministī? Num memoriam  
proeliī illius dēposuistī? Memor sum, et memoriam  
semper retinēbō.

345.

II.

A.—1. How large is the swiftest of all the ships? Which of the two ships is the swifter? 2. Who is more powerful? What is more daring? 3. Why do we hesitate to throw away our arms? 4. Did not Caesar announce that he would quickly come thither? 5. Have the enemy come in sight? Have the guards been posted there? 6. Surely you are not awaiting the approach of the legionary soldiers here, are you? 7. They suspected that our men would come here the next night. 8. For what reason have the ranks been thrown into confusion? 9. With whom are they continually waging war? 10. Where are the foot-soldiers betaking themselves? Where have you come from? 11. Where were the rest of the troops? They were wintering in the province where the barbarians had renewed the war.

B.—12. At noon they were led back to the lake from which they had set out at dawn. 13. He himself hastens hither by forced marches. 14. Do you see the place where we are accustomed to assemble? 15. Had not a large number of cattle been found there? 16. Which of the two embassies is the larger? 17. To whom has he given more? 18. After seizing the gates, he stations a garrison there. 19. Fearing this danger, he sent two cohorts there at once. 20. Surely you do not approve Caesar's speech, do you? 21. Do you deny that the enemy's line was put to flight? 22. Are you not aware that we inhabit this island?

## LESSON LVIII.

## ACTIVE AND PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

346. Strictly speaking, the term 'periphrastic' (from *periphrasis*, a round-about expression) might be applied to any compound form of the verb, that is, to any form which is obtained, not by a mere change of ending, as *miserat*, but by compounding a participle with the verb *sum*, as *missus erat*. But the term is usually restricted to two sets of forms:—

- a.* The *Active Periphrastic* conjugation, made up of the future participle active and the verb *sum*.
- b.* The *Passive Periphrastic* conjugation, made up of a form called the gerundive and the verb *sum*.

The future participle active ends in *-ūrus* (*-a*, *-um*) and is formed from the participial (or supine) stem in *-um* (138); as, *amātūrus*, *monitūrus*, *rēctūrus*, *audītūrus*.

The gerundive ends in *-ndus* (*-a*, *-um*), and is formed from the present stem; as, *amandus*, *monendus*, *regendus*, *audiendus*.

347.

## Paradigms.

## (a) ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Present</i>	<i>amātūrus sum, es, est</i> <i>amātūrī sumus; estis, sunt</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>amātūrus eram</i>
<i>Future</i>	<i>amātūrus erō</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>amātūrus fui</i>
<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>amātūrus fueram</i>
<i>Future Perfect</i>	<i>amātūrus fuerō</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Present</i>	<i>amātūrus esse</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>amātūrus fuisse</i>



## (b) PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Present</i>	amandus sum, es, est amandī sumus, ēstis, sunt
<i>Imperfect</i>	amandus eram
<i>Future</i>	amandus erō
<i>Perfect</i>	amandus fui
<i>Pluperfect</i>	amandus fueram
<i>Future Perfect</i>	amandus fuerō

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Present</i>	amandus eſſe
<i>Perfect</i>	amandus fuiſſe

## 348.

## Illustrative Examples.

**Lēgātōs missūrī sumus,** *we are about to (going to) send envoys.*

**Locum mūnītūrī erant,** *they were about to (going to) fortify the place.*

**Lēgātī mittendī sunt,** *envoys should be (ought to be) sent.*

**Lēgātī mittendī erant,** *envoys should have been (ought to have been) sent.*

**Locus mūniendus est,** *the place must be (has to be) fortified.*

**Locus mūniendus erat,** *the place had to be fortified.*

**Locus mūniendus erit,** *the place will have to be fortified.*

a. The active periphrastic conjugation, it will be observed, expresses intention, while the passive periphrastic conjugation expresses necessity or duty. Notice carefully the various translations of the different tenses, and especially the manner of expressing necessity or duty in past time.



## 349.

## VOCABULARY.

**nēmō** (**nēminis**). m., *no one, nobody*.

**noctū**, adv., *by night*.

**omnīnō**, adv., *altogether, in all*; with negatives, *at all*.

**prope**, adv. (248), *near; nearly, almost*.

**quaerō**, ere, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, *ask, inquire*.

**rūrsus**, adv., *again*.

**simul**, adv., *at the same time*.

**tantus**, a, **um**, *so great, such great*.

**turris**, is, f. (acc. **im**, abl. **ī**), *tower*.

**ūnā**, adv., *together, along* (generally used with **cum**).

*Phrases*: **bellum parō**, *prepare for war*.

**pontem in flūmine faciō** } *build a bridge over*  
**flūmen ponte jungō** } *a river.*

N.B.—The declension of **nēmō** is defective. Regularly, for the genitive and ablative, and often for the dative, the corresponding cases of **nūllus** (205) are used.

## EXERCISES.

## 350.

## I.

A.—1. Proelium committendum est; proelium renovandum erat. 2. Proelium factūrī sunt; sīgnum proelīi datūrus erat. 3. Hostēs sunt noctū opprimendī; bellum parātūrī sunt. 4. Simul clāmor rūrsus ortus est. 5. Ūnā mēcum profectūrus fuerat. 6. Nihil omnīnō factūrī sumus; pontem in illō flūmine factūrī erāmus. 7. In trēs omnīnō partēs peditātus distribuendus erit. 8. Intellegit nostrōs turrim propius mōtūrōs esse; negat turrim rūrsus movendam fuisse. 9. Spērat prope nēminem ex pūgnā excessūrum esse. 10. Dē fortitūdine et virtūte mīlitum quaerere cōsuēvit. 11. Cūr tantum spatium aggerēs distant? 12. Quanta erit turrium altitūdō?

B.—13. Simul ab duōbus lateribus impetus ācerrimē faciendus est. 14. Num rūsus terga versūrī estis? 15. Quis sē vōbiscum conjūctūrus est? Nēmō omnīnō. 16. Flūmen ponte jungī jusseram, et cōpiās, quae coāctae erant, trāductūrus eram. 17. Cōpiae, quās coēgerāmus, unā nōbiscum erant trādūcendae. 18. Datō signō, cohortēs ex castrīs noctū ēruptūrae erant. 19. Summa erat difficultās, quod omnia ūnō tempore facienda erant. 20. Tantā celeritāte commōtae, prope omnēs cīvitatēs obsidēs datūrae sunt. 21. Num propter paucitātem dēfēnsōrum et inopiam rei frūmentāriae, dē salūte dēspērātūrī sumus? 22. Sī causam ex captivīs ipse quaesiveris, dicent liberius.

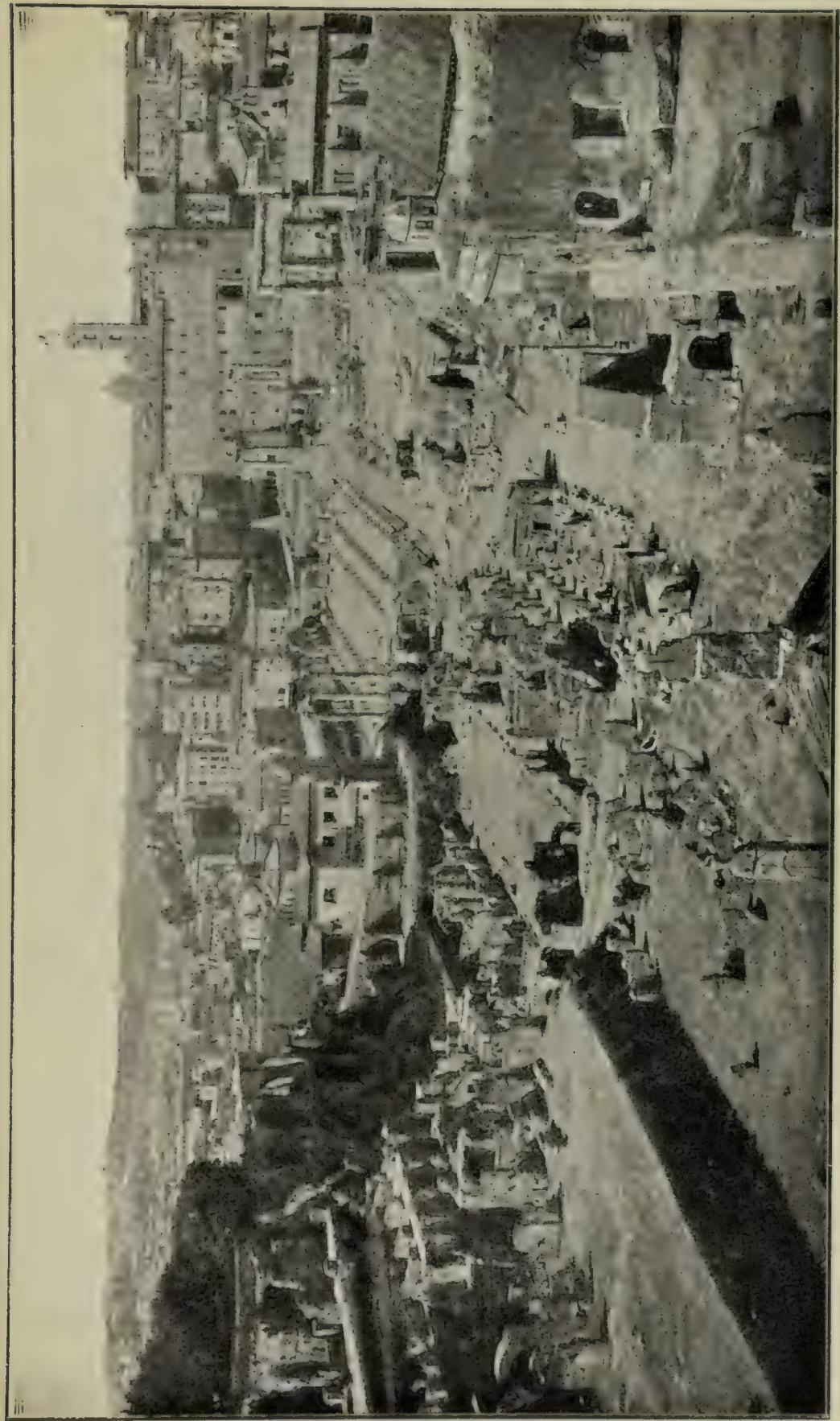
351.

II.

A.—1. The enemy must be driven back; we are going to drive the enemy back. 2. The cohorts should be sent out; he is about to send out the cohorts. 3. Almost all resist vigorously; no one will resist more fiercely. 4. The towns had to be attacked by night. 5. The camp will have to be fortified by a double wall, and a bridge built over the river. 6. He was going to compel us to give three hundred hostages in all. 7. All the horses ought to be removed out of sight at the same time. 8. The next year, having set out again, they were going to carry all their grain with them. 9. He answers that you must be surrendered along with the rest of the slaves. 10. From whom shall I ask about the height of the towers?

B.—11. No lands at all should have been granted to them. 12. Before this time, so great a disaster has happened to no one. 13. Almost daily he asks the reason. 14. They think that no one will venture to approach nearer by night. 15. The advocates of this





THE ROMAN FORUM, LOOKING WEST.





plan ought to have been given up at once. 16. Must the other part of the village be granted to the same army? 17. Which part of the village is Caesar going to grant to us? Neither part. 18. At the same time, the ships in\* which Caesar was going to carry back his army were being delayed by storms. 19. Is he not going to attempt to lead all his men back again? 20. The scouts had to be recalled along with those who were hurling their weapons from (dē) the tower.

## 352.

## WORD LIST VI.

## NOUNS.

aestās	captīvus	nēmō	tempestās
autumnus	hiems	ōrātiō	turris
calamitās	incommodum	ōrdō	vēr

## PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

ego	is	quī	tū
hīc	meus	quis	tuus
īdem	nōs	suī	uter
ille	noster	suus	vester
ipse	quantus	tantus	vōs

## ADVERBS.

cūr	noctū	prope	simul
eō	nōnne	quō	statim
hīc	num	rūrsus	ubi
hūc	numquam	saepe	ūnā
ibi	omnīnō	semper	unde

---

\* Literally 'by means of which.'

## VERBS.

abjiciō	cōnor	jaciō	prōvideō
accēdō	cōspiciō	moror	quaerō
accidō	crēdō	nancīscor	recipiō
accipiō	dēstringō	negō	renūntiō
administrō	ējiciō	orior	sciō
āmittō	expediō	patior	scribō
arbitror	faciō	perturbō	sentiō
cadō	frangō	polliceor	sequor
capiō	fugiō	probō	spērō
cōnficiō	intellegō	proficīscor	suspīcor
conjiciō	interficiō	prōgredior	vereor

## READING LESSON XI.

ROME DELIVERED FROM THE GAULS. (390 B.C.)

353.

## VOCABULARY.

ascendō, ere, -dī, ascēsum,	<i>climb, ascend.</i>
ascēsus, ūs, m.,	<i>ascent.</i>
conditor, -tōris, m.,	<i>founder.</i>
exsilium, ī, n.,	<i>exile.</i>
nē . . . quidem,	<i>not even.</i>
obsideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,	<i>besiege.</i>

Post complūrēs diēs Gallī, incēnsā urbe, arcem expūgnāre cōnāti sunt. Primā lūce, signō datō, multitudō omnis barbarōrum impetum fēcit. Rōmānī, stationibus firmātis, hostēs fortiter exspectant, et ad medium ferē ascēsum prōgredī cōs patiuntur. Tum (*then*) ex locō superiōre tēlis subitō coniectis, hostēs facile repellunt. Gallī jam (*now*) sēnsērunt arcem obsidendam nōn oppūgnandam esse, et, relīctā parte suōrum in urbe, reliquī agrōs longē lātēque vāstant.

Camillus, dē quō suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, in exsilium ab inimicīs suis expulsus erat, et eō tempore in oppidō, quod Ardea appellābātur, habitābat. Certior factus Rōmam occupātam et incēnsam esse, et agrōs Rōmānōs vāstārī, incolās Ardeae convocāvit et hanc ōrātiōnem habuit: “Nōne audivistis, cīvēs, Gallōs accēdere? Quā dē causā veniunt? Quid petunt? Spērant sē Rōmānōs sociōsque Rōmānōrum aut interfectūrōs esse aut ex cīvitatē expulsūrōs. Num populum Rōmānum ā barbaris superārī passūrī estis? Cūr nōn statim auxilium mittimus? Arbitror occāsionem (*opportunity*) nōn āmittendam esse.” Simul pollicitus est sē ducem eōrum fore, bellumque celeriter cōfectūrum esse, et omnēs bonōs cīvēs sē sequī jussit.

Hōc cōsiliō probātō, nūntius ad arcem missus est et Rōmānīs, quī ibi obsidēbantur, nūntiāvit Camillum cum māximīs auxiliīs celeriter ventūrum esse, et jubēre Rōmānōs dē rē pūblicā nōn dēspērāre. Hīc nūntius locum nactus est ubi, propter difficilem ascēsum, hostēs nōn diligenter custōdiēbant (*were keeping guard*), et noctū māgnō cum periculō (*at great risk*) in arcem ascendit. Interim omnēs bellum parāre coepērunt, et plūrimī Rōmānī, quī ad proxima oppida fūgerant, undique ad Camillum convēnērunt.

Dum haec geruntur, interim arx in māgnō periculō fuit. Namque (*for*) Gallī vestīgia (*footprints*) hominis cōspexērunt in eā parte collis ubi nūntius ascenderat, et, suspicātī id quod acciderat, eōdem ascēsus sequī cōnārī cōstituērunt. Nūllum praesidium ibi ā Rōmānīs collocātum erat, quod nēmō crēdebāt hostēs ascendere cōnātūrōs esse, et Gallī, mediā nocte profectī, prope ad summum collem pervēnerant, cum ānserēs sacri (*the sacred geese*) quī in templō Jūnōnis (*the temple of Juno*)

erant, hostēs accēdentēs audiunt, et statim clāmōre (*outcry*) sublātō Rōmānōs excitant (*arouse*). Illī, armīs celeriter captīs, hostēs dē mūrīs jaciunt, et iterum (*a second time*) Gallōs repellunt.

Sed propter paucitātem dēfēnsōrum et inopiam rei frūmentāriae perīculum cotīdiē augēbātur, et Rōmānī prope dē salūte dēspērābant cum exercitus Camillī in cōspectum vēnit. Proeliō factō, Gallī superātī et ad ūnum (*to a man*) interfectī sunt. Nē nūntius quidem calamitātis relīctus est. Camillus propter hās rēs gestās ā senātū populōque Rōmānō dē exsiliō revocatū est, et pater patriae (*of his country*) et conditor alter (*second*) urbis appellābātur.

Haec omnia accidērunt annō trecentēsīmō sexāgēsīmō quārtō ab urbe conditā.

### LESSON LIX.

DATIVE OF AGENT. DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS. ABLATIVE WITH ūtor.

354.

Illustrative Examples.

Lēgātī ā rēge missī sunt, *envoys were sent by the king.*

Lēgātī rēgī mittendī sunt, *envoys should be sent by the king.*

Locus ab exercitū mūnītus erat, *the place had been fortified by the army.*

Locus exercitū mūniendus erat, *the place had to be fortified by the army.*

a. Notice that in the passive periphrastic conjugation, the dative is used with the gerundive to denote the person on whom the duty of acting rests. This is called the *Dative of the Agent*. Contrast the ablative of the agent with **ab** used with the ordinary passive forms of the verb (144).



- b.* Notice further that the Latin periphrastic forms expressing duty or obligation are in the passive voice, and that therefore if an English sentence expressing this idea is in the active voice, it should be changed (mentally) to the corresponding passive before being translated by the Latin passive periphrastic conjugation. Thus, the sentences given above would correspond also to: *the king should send envoys, the army had to fortify the place.*

355.

Illustrative Examples.

Rēgī pārent,            *they obey the king.*  
 Exercituī imperat, *he commands the army.*  
 Caesarī resistunt, *they resist Caesar.*

- a.* Notice that these Latin verbs translated by *obey*, *command* and *resist*, are followed, not by a direct object as the English verbs are, but by the dative. The English verbs are transitive, but the Latin equivalents are intransitive, and might more properly be rendered, *they are obedient, he gives orders, they offer resistance*, so that the dative quite naturally follows.
- b.* To this class belong many verbs denoting *advantage* or *disadvantage*, or *disposition towards*, including verbs meaning to *help, favour, please, trust*, and their opposites, also to *believe, command, obey, persuade, resist*, and *spare*. But not all such verbs are followed by the dative; for example, *jubeō*.
- c.* Notice how the vocabulary indicates that a Latin verb is of this class.

356.

Illustrative Example.

**Hōc gladiō ūtitur, *he uses this sword.***

- a. The deponent verb **ūtor** is followed by the ablative case, and does not, like the English verb *use*, take a direct object. A more literal rendering would be, *he helps himself by means of this sword.*

357.

VOCABULARY.

**appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approach*** (with dat.)  
**cōfidō, ere, -fīsus sum,\* *trust*** (with dat.)  
**imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *command, govern*** (with dat.)  
**noceō, ēre, uī, itum, *harm, injure, damage*** (with dat.)  
**occurrō, ere, -currī, -cursum, *meet*** (with dat.)  
**parcō, ere, pepercī (or parsī,) parsum, *spare*** (with dat.)  
**pāreō, ēre, uī, itum, *obey*** (with dat.)  
**persuādeō, ēre, -suāsī, suāsum, *persuade*** (with dat.)  
**resistō, ere, restitī, *resist, oppose*** (with dat.)  
**ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use*** (with abl.)

## EXERCISES.

358.

I.

A.—1. Interim nāvēs Britanniae appropinquābant. 2. Decimae legiōnī Caesar semper cōfidēbat. 3. Multās hōrās hostibus aegerrimē nostrī resistunt. 4. Omnia sunt vōbīs dīligenter administranda. 5. Facilius gladiīs ūtentur. 6. Ab hōc cōsiliō dēterendus est. 7. Ante hiemem frūmentum Caesarī prōvidendum erat. 8. Populus Rōmānus multis civitātibus imperābat. 9. Cēterīs spē libertātis persuāsīt. 10. Caesarī hūc venientī occurrunt. 11. Nōne haec pontī nocēbunt? 12. Commūnis salūtis causā, eīs qui nōbīs pārent parcēmus.

---

\* **Cōfidō** is a semi-deponent verb (313.)

B.—13. Parem numerum militum finitimae civitati imperabit. 14. Sentit suos ab hostibus premi. 15. Equites, quos Caesar secum transportavit, tibi educendi sunt. 16. Confidebant sese incolis persuasuros esse. 17. Impetus in novissimum agmen huic legioni soli faciendus erat. 18. Liberi populi Galliae mihi ab injuria defendendi sunt. 19. Integris copiis hostium occurrerunt. 20. Mali cives semper rei publicae nocent. 21. Timore perterriti cedunt et in densissimas silvas fugiunt. 22. Armis captis, per medios hostes per-rumpere conati sunt. 23. Dum haec geruntur, flumen ponte jungendum erat. 24. His rebus oppugnatio non impedienda est.

359.

II.

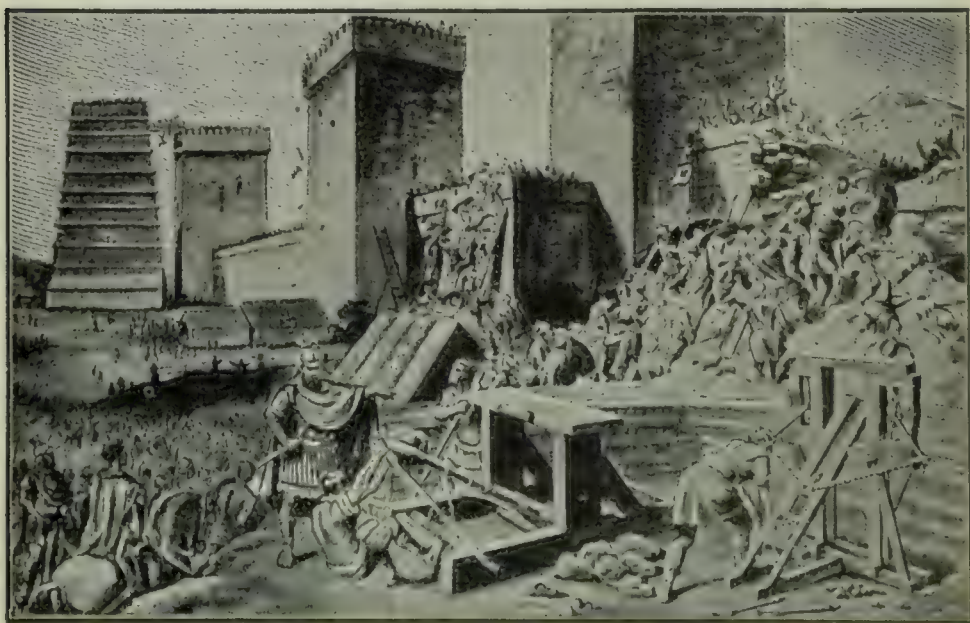
A.—1. By this speech he easily persuades the Belgians. 2. The camp must be attacked again by the whole army at the third hour. 3. Who does not know that the Gauls were conquered by Caesar? 4. We use wider ships in this sea. 5. He will injure no one; he will spare all. 6. You must not lose the military standards; we must prepare for war. 7. All lands obey the rule of the Roman people. 8. In the first place, a good king governs himself. 9. At first he himself will resist us. 10. You should choose the noblest and most discreet men. 11. While they were approaching the fortifications, they met the cavalry that Caesar had sent in advance. 12. He is going to summon the chief men whom he always trusts.

B.—13. The ships which they used were larger. 14. It is difficult to persuade the other daughter. 15. At the same time, he demands three thousand horsemen from the whole province. 16. I think that you should not take away the hope of safety altogether. 17. Caesar



had to withdraw all the troops by night to the nearest hill. 18. The rampart seems to me to be higher than the town. 19. If we halt there, the right wing will soon be surrounded. 20. The left wing must be surrounded as quickly as possible. 21. Influenced by all these things, we shall resist the senate itself. 22. The boys and girls are with difficulty prevented from approaching the banks of this river. 23. Grain has to be brought by us from the remotest parts of the mainland. 24. He hopes to finish this work without any toil.

C.—Decline the following combinations : *eadem nox, tua ōrātiō, hīc labor, vir ipse, quae rēs, haec turris, ille agger, is ager, hōc ipsum tempus, quanta calamitās, illa pars, eadem castra, id iter, quī diēs, exercitus suus, utrum latus (s), idem illud vēr (s), nostra cōsuētūdō (s).*



**Oppugnatio : Attack.**



## LESSON LX.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF **Sum**. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

360. The subjunctive mood in Latin has four tenses—Present, Imperfect, Perfect and Pluperfect. It is sometimes used in independent sentences, but is far more often found in dependent or subordinate clauses of various kinds. The translation of the subjunctive varies considerably according to these different uses, but most commonly it is rendered by the English indicative, as in the present lesson.\*

## 361. Paradigms.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF <b>sum</b> .			
PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
1. <b>sim</b>	<b>sīmus</b>	<b>fuerim</b>	<b>fuerīmus</b>
2. <b>sīs</b>	<b>sītis</b>	<b>fuerīs</b>	<b>fuerītis</b>
3. <b>sit</b>	<b>sint</b>	<b>fuerit</b>	<b>fuerint</b>
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
1. <b>essem</b>	<b>essēmus</b>	<b>fuissem</b>	<b>fuissēmus</b>
2. <b>essēs</b>	<b>essētis</b>	<b>fuissēs</b>	<b>fuissētis</b>
3. <b>esset</b>	<b>essent</b>	<b>fuisset</b>	<b>fuissent</b>

Notice in these forms :—

- (a) The regularity of the personal endings ;
- (b) the resemblance of the imperfect subjunctive to the present infinitive (**esse**) and of the pluperfect subjunctive to the perfect infinitive (**fuisse**) ;
- (c) the almost complete identity of the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect indicative. Even in the matter of quantity, the resemblance often caused the Romans to shorten the **ī** of the subjunctive forms.

---

\* The difficulty of the Latin subjunctive is indeed largely due to the fact that ideas regularly expressed by the English indicative require, in Latin, sometimes the indicative and sometimes the subjunctive. That is, Latin makes distinctions of moods in places where English does not.

## 362.

## Illustrative Examples.

Quae est causa ?	<i>What is the reason ?</i>
Quaerit quae sit causa,	<i>he asks what is the reason.</i>
Quaesivit quae esset causa,	<i>he asked what was the reason.</i>
Ubi fuērunt ?	<i>Where have they been ?</i>
Sciō ubi fuerint,	<i>I know where they have been.</i>
Audīvī ubi fuissent,	<i>I heard where they had been.</i>

- a. In these Latin sentences the indicative mood is used in the actual direct question, but the subjunctive mood when the clause introduced by the interrogative word is dependent on another verb.
- b. A subordinate clause in Latin introduced by an interrogative word is called an *Indirect Question* (or a *Dependent Question*), and has its verb in the subjunctive mood.
- c. The various tenses are translated like the corresponding tenses of the indicative, and as in English are influenced by the tense of the principal verb. The Latin perfect subjunctive, however, it should be observed, is usually to be translated by the perfect with *have*, rather than by the simple past tense.
- d. It is especially important to notice that the verb of the principal clause may mean not only *ask*, but also *learn*, *know*, *tell*, or *perceive*. The term indirect question, then, does not necessarily imply that a question has actually been asked and is being quoted, but merely that a question exists in the mind or at least may easily be conceived ; as, *I saw what he was doing, I know what he will say.*

## EXERCISES.

363.

## I.

1. Quaerunt quae\* sit firmissima civitas ; quaerit quae sint maxima castra. 2. Quanta esset insulae magnitudo reperiēbat. 3. In utra ripa essemus certior factus erat. 4. Quanta fuisset virtus militum demonstravit ; quantum fuisset incommodum ostenderunt. 5. Quantum sit spatium nuntiant. 6. Quibuscum essēs sciēbam. 7. Ab his quaesivit quae civitates in armis essent. 8. Quaerit ex nobis cur non fideles sibi† fuerimus. 9. Scisne quacum legione sim? 10. Renuntiaverunt qui ager esset optimus totius Galliae. 11. Uter fuerit utilior amicus intellegimus. 12. Quibus in locis‡ sit Caesar ex captivis quaerunt. 13. Quis cum iis una fuisset audiverat. 14. Quaesivit quid illi simile bello esset.

## II.

1. He asked which cohort had been on guard. 2. They reported what harbours were suitable. 3. You see how great is the danger. 4. You saw in what (*literally* how great) danger we were. 5. They understand for what reason we have been unfriendly to them.† 6. He suspected what had been the cause of that war. 7. He has been informed where we are and where we have been. 8. He asked what was the custom. 9. He asks what is easier. 10. He shows how great the difficulty has been. 11. He asks the envoys what town is nearest to these territories. 12. He knew who had been the advocates of that war. 13. He learns what (*literally* how great) is the length of this side. 14. We had heard for what reasons you were in arms.

\* The interrogative may be translated 'which' as well as 'who' or 'what.'

† In indirect questions, as in the accusative and infinitive construction (323), the reflexive pronoun *suī* in the dependent clause is used to refer to the subject of the main verb.

‡ For the order of words see the footnote on page 219.

## LESSON LXI.

## SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

364.

## Paradigms.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, ACTIVE VOICE.

*First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.*

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

1. amem	moneam	regam	audiam
2. amēs	moneās	regās	audiās
3. amet	moneat	regat	audiat

## PLURAL.

1. amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	audiāmus
2. amētis	moneātis	regātis	audiātis
3. ament	moneant	regant	audiant

## IMPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. amārem	monērem	regerem	audīrem
2. amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	audirēs
3. amāret	monēret	regeret	audīret

## PLURAL.

1. amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	audirēmus
2. amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	audirētis
3. amārent	monērent	regerent	audīrent

## PERFECT.

## PLUPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

1. amāverim	amāverimus	amāvissē	amāvissēmus
2. amāveris	amāveritis	amāvissēs	amāvissētis
3. amāverit	amāverint	amāvisset	amāvissent

Similarly,

*Second Conj.* monuerim monuissē*Third Conj.* rēxerim rēxissem*Fourth Conj.* audīverim audīvissem



- a.* Observe that in each conjugation, as in **sum** (361), the imperfect subjunctive may be formed directly from the present infinitive active, and the pluperfect subjunctive from the perfect infinitive active, and that the perfect subjunctive is almost identical with the future perfect indicative.
- b.* Notice further that the present subjunctive has in the first conjugation the characteristic vowel **-ē-**, and in the second, third and fourth conjugations the characteristic vowel **-ā-**. What is the characteristic vowel of the present subjunctive of **sum** ?
- c.* For the translation of the various tenses in indirect questions see 362. *c.*
- d.* The subjunctive of verbs of the third conjugation in **-iō** is similarly formed, viz.,

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
capiam	caperem	cēperim	cēpissem

365.

VOCABULARY.

animadvertō, ere, -vertī, -versum,	<i>notice, observe.</i>
doceō, ēre, uī, doctum,	<i>teach, explain.</i>
fluctus, ūs, m.,	<i>wave.</i>
fluō, ere, flūxī, fluxum,	<i>flow.</i>
pars, partis, f.,	<i>part; direction, side.</i>
perspiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum,	<i>see clearly, perceive.</i>

*Phrases:* in eam partem, in that direction } with verbs  
in omnēs partēs, in all directions } of motion.  
ūnā ex parte, on one side.  
ex omnibus partibus, on all sides.  
māgnō cum periculō, at great risk.

## EXERCISES.

366.

I.

A.—1. Per explorātōrēs cōgnōvit quae hostēs facerent. 2. Nūntiābō quō sē recipiant. 3. Docent quā dē causā sē abdidērint. 4. Quīntō diē quae\* ibi perspexisset renūntiāvit. 5. Quaerit in utram partem fluat flūmen. 6. Intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerent. 7. Quaerunt quibus ex regiōnibus veniāmus quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverīmus. 8. Reperīre jussus est quem ūsum belli† habērent Britanni. 9. Quae\* ipse intellegat ostendit. 10. Quaerit cūr nōn respondeās; quaerit cūr respondēre dubitēs. 11. Animadvertit nāvēs fluctibus complērī.

B.—12. Certior factus est quā dē causā discessissent hostēs. 13. Docuit cūr existimāret hōc flūmen per prōvinciam fluere. 14. Ex nōbis quaesīvit cūr in suam prōvinciam vēnissēmus. 15. Animadvertunt quam in partem hostēs iter faciant. 16. Quaesīvit quā dē causā nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmitterent. 17. Vidētis quanta sit māgnitūdō fluctuum. 18. Suspīcor quid postulētis; suspīcor cūr imperium postulāverītis. 19. Quāto cum periculō ēruptionem fēcisset, ostendit. 20. Quaerit quid petam aliud. 21. Ex omnibus partibus oritur clāmor. 22. Virtūtem alterius, fidem alterius perspiciet.

367.

II.

A.—1. He asked why they were coming to him. 2. They informed us where they had found the enemy. 3. I understand at what risk you have done this. 4. He asks why they despair of safety. 5. Are you not aware who inhabit this island? 6. He perceives how large an army the enemy have. 7. He observed from

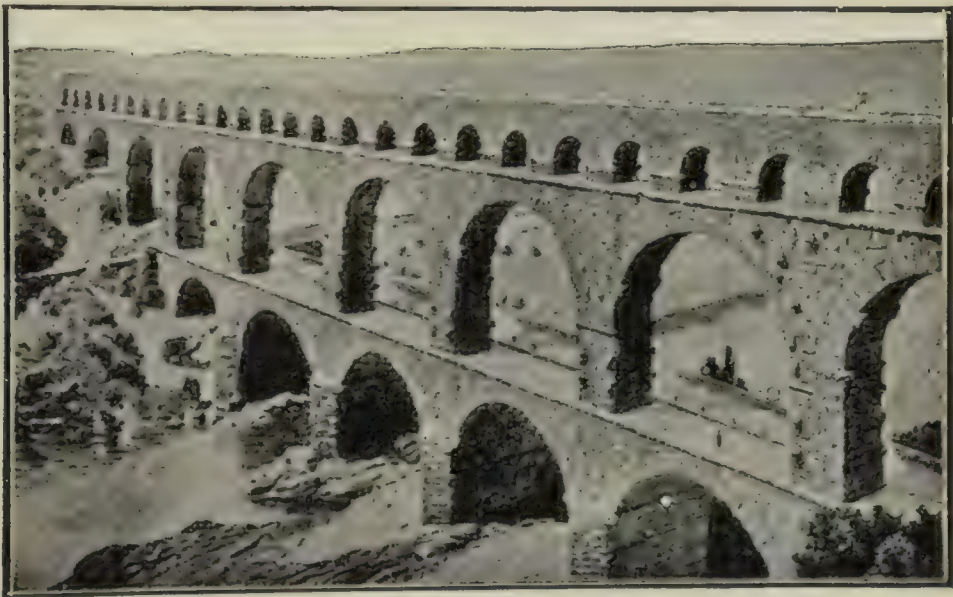
---

\* Translate 'what'; literally 'what things' (293. N.B.).

† Translate 'in war'; literally 'of war.'

what direction they were approaching. 8. He learned where the enemy's forces had encamped. 9. He explains why they have hesitated to leap down into the waves. 10. He explains that they have hesitated to leap down. 11. He asked why the waves were larger there than in our sea.

B.—12. They explain what they have heard or learned about these matters. 13. Caesar understood for what reasons they had said this. 14. He was ordered to find out in what direction Caesar was leading his army. 15. I do not know why they are waging war with us. 16. We do not know what they fear. 17. They pointed out to Caesar what the Gauls were saying about him. 18. He had noticed that the Gauls were fleeing in all directions. 19. He perceived whither the Gauls were fleeing. 20. We shall find out where (*literally* whither) you are accustomed to assemble. 21. He asked whom I believed; he asks which (of the two) I believe. 22. He teaches the boys that the Rhine flows between Gaul and Germany.



Roman Aqueduct in Gaul.



## LESSON LXII.

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.

368.

Paradigms.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PASSIVE VOICE.

*First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.*

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. amer	monear	regar	audiar
2. amēris	moneāris	regāris	audiāris
3. amētur	moneātur	regātur	audiātur

PLURAL.

1. amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	audiāmur
2. amēmini	moneāmini	regāmini	audiāmini
3. amentur	moneantur	regantur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. amārer	monērer	regerer	audīrer
2. amārēris	monērēris	regerēris	audīrēris
3. amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	audīrētur

PLURAL.

1. amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	audīrēmur
2. amārēmini	monērēmini	regerēmini	audīrēmini
3. amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	audirentur

*First Conjugation.*

PERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. amātus sim	amātī simus	amātus essem	amātī essēmus
2. " sis	" sitis	" essēs	" essētis
3. " sit	" sint	" esset	" essent

Similarly,

<i>Second Conj.</i>	monitus sim	monitus essem
<i>Third Conj.</i>	rēctus sim	rēctus essem
<i>Fourth Conj.</i>	auditus sim	auditus essem



**369.** In the subjunctive mood the passive voice is related to the active precisely as in the indicative :—

- a.* In the present and imperfect tenses of the passive the personal endings **-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur** are substituted for those of the active voice.
- b.* In the perfect and pluperfect tenses the passive is formed by combining the perfect participle passive with the present and imperfect subjunctive, respectively, of the verb **sum**.

**370.** (*a*) The subjunctive passive of verbs of the third conjugation in **-iō**, and the subjunctive of deponent verbs, are similarly formed, viz.,

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
capiar	caperer	captus sim	captus essem
cōner	cōnārer	cōnātus sim	cōnātus essem
verear	verērer	veritus sim	veritus essem
sequar	sequerer	secūtus sim	secūtus essem
sortiar	sortīrer	sortītus sim	sortītus essem
patiar	paterer	passus sim	passus essem

(*b*) The periphrastic conjugations also have a subjunctive, formed by using the subjunctive of **sum** ; as,

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
amātūrus sim	amātūrus essem
amandus sim	amandus essem

### **371. Illustrative Examples.**

**Tanta est mīlitum virtūs ut hostēs terga vertant,** *so great is the valour of the soldiers that the enemy turn and flee.*

**Tanta erat mīlitum virtūs ut hostēs nōn resisterent,** *so great was the valour of the soldiers that the enemy did not resist.*

**Accidit ut nostrīs id esset incōgnitum,** *it happened that that was unknown to our men.*

- a. Observe that dependent clauses with **ut** (*that*) and the subjunctive are used in Latin to express a result or consequence, and that in such clauses the present and imperfect subjunctive are used to express the English present and past tenses respectively.\*
- b. This *Subjunctive of Result* is found chiefly after words meaning *so, such* (as **tantus**); and after verbs of *happening* and *resulting* (as **accidit**).†

## 372.

## VOCABULARY.

**adorior, irī, -ortus sum, attack, assault.**

**coorior, irī, -ortus sum, arise, break out.**

**ita, adv., thus ; so.**

**sic, adv., thus ; so.**

**nātiō, -ōnis, f., tribe, nation.**

**tam, adv., so.**

**revertor, ī, -versus sum, return.**

**vix, adv., scarcely, hardly.**

N.B.—With adjectives and adverbs **tam** (or **ita**) should be used for *so* ; with verbs **sic** and (more often) **ita**.

## EXERCISES.

## 373.

## I.

A.—1. Tam subitō impetum fēcērunt ut peditēs terga verterent. 2. Celeriter hostēs in fugam dat sic ut resistat nēmō. 3. Ostendunt quae in conciliō Gallōrum dē eō sint dicta. 4. Ibi ex captivīs cōgnōscit quae in hostium castrīs gerantur. 5. Sic accidit ut ex tantō numerō vix ūlla nāvis āmitterētur. 6. Tanta tempestās coorta est ut nāvēs circiter trīgintā frangerentur. 7. Quaerit cūr tam celeriter revertantur. 8. Ita

\* Occasionally the perfect subjunctive is used to express the English simple past, but this is rare in the best Latin. Of course the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive would be used to translate the English perfect and pluperfect tenses with *have* and *had* ; but these do not often occur.

† In the former case the dependent clause is an adverbial clause, in the latter a substantival or noun clause.

animadverterat quanta incommoda saepe orta essent.

9. Accidit ut hac nātiōnēs mājōrēs cōpiās comparārent.

10. Nostrī tam ācriter adortī sunt ut hostēs ex oppidō expellerentur.

B.—11. Ex locīs superiōribus quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur facile perspexērunt. 12. Tantus fuit timor ut revertī vix audērēmus. 13. Sentit quantā cum virtūte bellum sit gestum. 14. Tam celeriter ēruptiōnem faciunt ut complūrēs circumveniantur. 15. Castra nātūrā locī sic mūniēbantur ut oppūgnāre nōn audērēmus. 16. Ita sī Rōmānī sē recipere coeperint, agmen ab tergō adoriēmur. 17. Tanta est multitudō ut rērum omnium inopia esse videātur. 18. Tam audācter in itinere nostrōs adortī sunt ut impedīmenta Caesari relinquenda essent. 19. Eō diē accidit ut Caesar longē ab agmine discēdere nēminem paterētur. 20. Tantus subito timor exercitum occupāvit ut omnium animī māgnopere perturbārentur.

374.

II.

A.—1. It happened that this village was divided by a river into two parts. 2. He explains what is being done (gerō) in Gaul. 3. So large are the enemy's forces that we do not venture (do not attempt) to attack. 4. So great was the storm that scarcely a fourth part of the ships returned safe. 5. Thus it happened for many reasons that all the tribes were going to renew the war. 6. They have been so terrified by Caesar's approach that numerous embassies are being sent to treat for surrender. 7. So great a storm had arisen that few of the ships had reached the land. 8. He asks whence we have set out and whither we are proceeding. 9. He asked whence we had set out and whither we were proceeding.



B.—10. Such (*literally* so great) storms followed that the assault was greatly hindered. 11. They often asked in what direction they were being led. 12. Thus we learned how great a number of soldiers these nations had promised. 13. So great is the panic (*literally* fear) that I do not venture to draw up the line of battle. 14. Such was the speed of the other messenger that he returned before the third watch. 15. It so happens that we never use smaller ships; it happened that war had scarcely broken out. 16. They pointed out how much plunder they had obtained. 17. So great is the valour of the soldiers that he is going to join battle at once. 18. The enemy were so terrified by this recent victory that they fled to their most distant territories. 19. Thus we had foreseen what had to be done.

### LESSON LXIII.

#### THE COMPOUNDS OF **Sum**.

375. The verb **sum** is compounded with many of the prepositions, in most cases without any irregularity; as, **absum**, **abesse**, **āfuī**. But **possum**, *I am able*, a compound of the adjective **potis**, *able*, and **sum**, is more irregular.

376.

Paradigm.

**Possum, posse, potuī, be able.**

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

1. possum	possumus	possim	possimus
2. potes	potestis	possis	possitis
3. potest	possunt	possit	possint

IMPERFECT.

1. poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
2. poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
3. poterat	poterant	posset	possent



## FUTURE.

poterō, poteris, *etc.*

PERFECT.

potuī, potuistī, *etc.*

potuerim, potueris, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

potueram, potuerās, *etc.*

potuissem, potuissēs, *etc.*

### FUTURE PERFECT.

potuerō, potueris, *etc.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

posse

potuisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.

potēns (*used as adjective*).

a. Notice that **t** is changed to **s** before **s**, and that, as compared with **sum**, the perfect stem does not contain **f**.

377.

### Illustrative Examples.

Haec facere possum,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ am able to do this.} \\ I \text{ can do this.} \end{array} \right.$

Haec facere nōn poteram, { *I was not able to do this.*  
*I was unable to do this.*  
*I could not do this.*

Dixit sē haec facere posse, { he said that he was able to do this.  
he said that he could do this.

Dixit sē haec facere potuisse, *he said that he could have  
one this.*

Superārī nōn possunt, *they cannot be conquered.*

a. Notice in these sentences how **possum** is completed by a present infinitive (compare 123), and how it is translated in the various tenses. The translation by *can* or *could* is generally preferable, and with the passive infinitive is the only translation.

378.

## VOCABULARY.

- absum, abesse, āfuī, *be away, be distant.*  
 adsum, adesse, adfuī, *be present, be at hand.*  
 dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, *be wanting, be lacking.*  
 negōtium, ī, n., *business ; affair.*  
 patior, ī, passus sum, *endure, suffer ; allow.*  
 possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can.*  
 potēns, -entis, *powerful.*  
 potestās, -tātis, f., *power ; opportunity.*  
 praeficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *set over, put in command*  
*(charge) of (with dat.).*  
 praesum, praeesse, praefuī, *be over, be in command (charge)*  
*of, command (with dat.).*

N.B.—**Praesum** and **praeficiō** take the dative of the person commanded, while **praeficiō** has also the person placed in command as a direct object in the accusative. For **prae-**, *before, at the head*, in composition, see 243.

## EXERCISES.

379.

I.

A.—1. Ab hīs sē dēfendere nōn possunt. 2. Impedī-  
 menta sēcum portāre nōn poterant. 3. Nūntiat Rō-  
 mānōs adesse. 4. Tempus dēfuerat. 5. Arbitrātus est  
 negōtium celeriter cōficī posse (potuisse). 6. Tanta  
 tempestās coorta est ut opus cōficere vix possēmus.  
 7. Auxilia sex mīlia passuum absunt. 8. Equitātuī  
 lēgātum praeficit ; omnī equitātuī quem praemiserat  
 lēgātum praefēcit. 9. Cīvitātī potentī praeest ; cīvitātī  
 potentissimae praeficitur. 10. Docent cūr potestā-  
 tem postulent. 11. Aderant omnēs quī huic negōtiō  
 praefuerant. 12. Vōbīs possumus ūtilēs esse amīcī.  
 13. Revertī nōn potuī, quod nāvēs erant inūtilēs. 14. Sī  
 Caesar aderit, hostibus resistere poterunt.

B.—15. Nūllī cīvitātī persuādēre potestis. 16. Haec quis patī potest? Quaerit quis haec patī possit. 17. In litterīs scribit patrem celeriter adfore. 18. Legiōnēs māgnū spatium aberant. 19. Accidit ut nāvēs solvere noctū nōn possēmus. 20. Ex hostium castrīs cōspici nōn poterāmus. 21. Quaesivit quis rei frūmentāriae praefuisset; quaesivit quem rei frūmentāriae praefectūrus essem. 22. Omnia negōtia rei pūblicaē administrat. 23. Equitēs longius prōgredi nōn potuerant. 24. Diūtius sustinēre impetum nōn poterimus. 25. Potestās nōbīs nōn deerit; intellexit sibi cōpiās nōn dēfore. 26. Tantam auctōritātem habet ut rēgēs potentēs amīcitiam petant. 27. Oppidum oppūgnāre cōnātī, expūgnāre nōn potuērunt.

380.

II.

A.—1. You cannot march through the province. 2. He has been unable to persuade me. 3. They could not withstand the attacks of our men. 4. You are in my power; you are powerful. 5. Nothing is wanting; everything is lacking. 6. He was in command of the cavalry which had been sent in advance. 7. He asked whom they had put in command of the army. 8. He thinks that he can do this without any danger. 9. He perceived what they could do. 10. Another town is said to have been farther distant. 11. Having finished this business, he can return. 12. We had not been able to use our swords. 13. They cannot defend their own territories. 14. This alone seems to have been lacking. 15. They thought Caesar himself was present.

B.—16. On account of the scarcity of corn, he will not be able to wait. 17. He reported that he had been unable to learn this. 18. I shall put my son in charge of this business. 19. It will be dangerous to spare the

most powerful of the leading men. 20. The children could not be restrained by their mother. 21. We can very easily prevent them from injuring you. 22. He trusted the lieutenants whom he had put in command of the legion. 23. He was aware that cavalry and ships were wanting to the Romans. 24. For the same reason the camp could not be pitched. 25. He learns for what reason they cannot take up arms. 26. Two brothers command these legions. 27. The storm was so great that two ships had not been able to reach the harbour.

## 381.

## WORD LIST F.

VERBS. OF *SAYING, THINKING, PERCEIVING.*

announce	explain	notice	say
answer	feel	observe	say . . not
ascertain	find	perceive	see
be aware	hear	point out	show
believe	hope	promise	suspect
bring back word	inform	remember	teach
consider	know	reply	think
declare	learn	report	understand
deny	mention		write

## SPECIAL VERBS : IN LATIN WITH DATIVE.

approach	harm	oppose	set over
be over	injure	persuade	spare
command	meet	resist	trust
govern	obey		

## MISCELLANEOUS VERBS.

arise	be able	be lacking	inquire
ask	be at hand	endure	return
assault	be distant	flow	use



## NOUNS.

business	opportunity	side	tribe
direction	power	tower	wave

## INTERROGATIVE WORDS.

where	whither	how great	which
whence	why	who	which (of two)

## ADVERBS.

here	hither	altogether, at all
there	thither	together (with)
where	whither	at the same time
thus, so	almost	again
near	scarcely	by night

## READING LESSON XII.

TITUS MANLIUS TORQUATUS. (361 B.C.; 340 B.C.)

382.

## VOCABULARY.

*adulēscēns, -entis, m., young man.*

*cōsul, cōsulis, m., consul* (the chief magistrate of Rome, two being elected annually).

*corpus, -oris, n., body.*

*dētrahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, remove, strip.*

*Latīnī, ōrum, m., the Latins* (the people of Latium).

*spolia, ōrum, n. pl., spoils.*

*torquis, is, m., necklace, collar.*

Post trīgintā circiter annōs accidit ut Gallī rūsus populum Rōmānum superāre cōnārentur. Quam māximis cōpiis coāctis ad flūmen, quod tria mīlia passuum ab urbe aberat, prōgressī sunt, ibique castra posuērunt. Rōmānī, Gallōs adesse certiōrēs factī, omnibus cum

cōpiīs ab urbe profectī sunt, et prope pontem cōnsēdērunt quī flūmen jungēbat (*spanned*). Complūra levia proelia facta sunt, sed neuter exercitus repellī poterat. Tandem (*at length*) ūnus ex Gallīs, cui propter māgnitūdinem corporis et fortitūdinem nēmō resistere potuerat, ad pontem prōgressus est et fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad pūgnam prōvocāvit (*challenged*). “Sic” inquit (*said he*) “omnēs intellegent utra nātiō sit melior.” Sed tantus fuit timor Rōmānōrum ut nēminī persuādere posset.

Tandem Titus Mānlius, adulēscēns nōbilissimus, imperātōrī Rōmānōrum appropinquāvit et dīxit “Sī mihi potestās facta\* erit, ego huic Gallō occurram, et ostendam quanta sit virtūs mīlitis Rōmānī.” Potestāte factā, Mānlius sē ad pūgnam expēdīvit. Neque diū pūgnāvērunt, nam (*for*) ita ācriter et audācter Mānlius hostem adortus est ut Gallus gladiō ūtī vix posset et brevī interficerētur. Hostēs hāc victōriā ita perterritī sunt ut posterā nocte castra movērent, neque rūsus cum exercitū Rōmānō proelium committere audērent. Mānlius ad castra ā mīlitibus reductus est, torquem gerēns (*wearing*) quem dē corpore Gallī dētrāxerat; et hāc dē causā semper post id tempus Torquātus appellābātur.

Post multōs annōs bellum coortum est inter Rōmānōs et Latīnōs, quī diū sociī fuerant populī Rōmānī. Cōsulēs Titus Mānlius Torquātus, quī ter (*thrice*) cōsul factus erat, et Pūblius Decius exercitum Rōmānum edūxērunt et castra posuērunt nōn longē ab exercitū Latīnōrum.

Tum (*then*) equitēs in omnēs partēs dīmissī sunt, sed, quod multī in duōbus exercitibus fuerant amīcī, jussī sunt solum cōgnōscere quae in hostium castrīs gereantur, sed nōn proelium committere neque ūllam injū-

---

\* The phrase **potestātem facīō** means *give opportunity, give permission*.

riam facere. Complūrēs hōrum equitum, quibus Titus Mānlius, cōsulis fīlius, praefectus erat, dum castris Latīnōrum appropinquant, equitātuī hostium occurrunt; et is quī equitātuī praeerat, ubi (*when*) perspexit quis accēderet, Mānlium, quem diū cōgnōverat, ad pūgnam prōvocāvit. Īrā (*by anger*) adductus, neque memor imperiī patris, Mānlius, dēstrīctō gladiō, statim hostem adortus est et interfēcit.

Tum arma dē corpore ējus dētrahit et celeriter ad castra revertitur, et patrī quid fēcērit renūntiat: “Haec spolia, pater, capta ex hoste interfectō tibi portō.” Hīs rēbus auditis, cōsul militēs convocāvit et haec dīxit: “Titus Mānlius, fīlius meus, cum hoste pūgnāvit neque imperiō cōsulum pārēbat. Commūnis salūtis causā, imperātor militārem disciplīnam (*discipline*) solvere (*to destroy*) nēmīnem patī potest. In hōc bellō tantum est perīculum ut praestet fīlium āmittere quam rei pūblicae nocēre.” Hāc ōrātiōne habitā fīlium interficī iussit, neque ab hōc cōsiliō dēterrērī potuit.



Torquis: Collar. (*The Dying Gaul.*)



## LESSON LXIV.

## GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

383.

## Illustrative Examples.

Sunt hominēs māgnae virtūtis,	} <i>they are men of great</i>	
Sunt hominēs māgnā virtūte,		<i>valour.</i>
Bonō animō sumus,	<i>we are of good courage.</i>	
Diērum decem habent frūmentum,	<i>they have ten days' grain.</i>	

a. In these sentences observe how phrases composed of a noun and a modifying adjective, in either the genitive or the ablative case, are used to describe some quality or characteristic of a person or thing. This construction is known as the *Genitive* or *Ablative of Quality*.\*

b. When the description refers to number, the genitive must be used ; physical characteristics should be expressed by the ablative ; in other cases either the genitive or the ablative may be used.

384.

## VOCABULARY.

adulēscēns, -entis, m.,	<i>young man.</i>
classis, is, f.,	<i>fleet.</i>
corpus, -oris, n.,	<i>body.</i>
efficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,	<i>make ; construct, build.</i>
genus, -eris, n.,	<i>kind, sort.</i>
incrēdibilis, e,	<i>incredible.</i>
ingēns, -entis,	<i>huge, vast.</i>
trīdium, ī, n.,	<i>three days.</i>

*Phrase : māgnitūdō corporis, stature.*

---

\* This usage is known also as the Descriptive Genitive (or Ablative), and as the Genitive (or Ablative) of Characteristic.



## EXERCISES.

385.

## I.

1. Filium, summā virtūte adulēscētem, ad eōs mittit.  
 2. Montibus undique continentur māgnā altitūdine.  
 3. Ab hīs paucōrum diērum iter aberant. 4. Classem  
 nāvium ducentārum superiōre aestāte effēcerat. 5.  
 Arma omnis generis habēmus; omne genus armōrum  
 habēmus. 6. Hī Germānī erant ingentī māgnitūdine  
 corporum et incrēdibilī virtūte. 7. Trīduī\* iter prō-  
 gressī, rūrsus revertuntur. 8. Lūcius, adulēscēns summā  
 fidē, dēligitur. 9. Novō genere pūgnae perterritī, sē  
 ex silvīs ējiciunt. 10. Haec cīvitas est fīrma et māgnae  
 auctōritātis. 11. Castra pedum duodecim† vāllō fos-  
 sāque duodēvigintī pedum mūnītūrī sunt. 12. Hūjus  
 generis hostibus resistere nōn poterant.

## II.

1. They have built ships of an incredible size. 2.  
 About six hundred ships of the same sort must be built.  
 3. A forest of vast size extends through the midst of  
 the territory. 4. These trenches are of the same  
 depth. 5. They marched for three days through  
 marshes of vast extent. 6. He put Marcus and Lucius,  
 young men of very great influence, in command of this  
 fleet. 7. They are men of an unfriendly spirit. 8. The  
 towers are of such great height that they cannot be  
 moved. 9. They hurled missiles of every sort at the  
 huge bodies of the barbarians. 10. The legion advanced  
 a three days' journey in light marching order. 11.  
 Men of such great valour will never surrender.

---

\* **Trīduī** being a compound noun = **trīum diērum**, we have here only an apparent exception to the rule that the genitive or ablative of quality must be a noun with a modifying adjective.

† The height of a wall and the width of a trench are the important dimensions and in Latin. these words are often left to be understood.

## LESSON LXV.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

386.

## Illustrative Examples.

Conveniunt	<i>they assemble</i>
ut bellum gerant,	{ <i>that they may wage war.</i> <i>in order that they may wage war.</i> <i>in order to wage war.</i> <i>to wage war.</i>
Convēnērunt	<i>they assembled</i>
ut bellum gererent,	{ <i>that they might wage war.</i> <i>in order to wage war.</i> <i>to wage war.</i>
Arma capiunt,	<i>they take up arms,</i>
nē hōc accidat,	{ <i>that this may not happen.</i> <i>lest this happen.</i>
Arma cēpērunt,	<i>they took up arms,</i>
nē hōc accideret,	{ <i>that this might not happen.</i> <i>lest this should happen.</i>
Statim dēsilit,	<i>he leaps down at once,</i>
nē capiātur,	{ <i>that he may not be taken.</i> <i>in order not to be taken.</i> <i>so as not to be taken.</i>
Statim dēsilit,	<i>he leaps down at once, so that he</i>
ut nōn capiātur,	<i>is not taken.</i>

These sentences illustrate the following points:—

- a. Subordinate clauses with the subjunctive are used in Latin to express purpose.
- b. These clauses of purpose are introduced by **ut**, or if negative by **nē**, while **ut nōn** is used to express result, not purpose (see the last sentence above).

- c.* In Latin, as in English, the tense of the dependent verb is influenced by the tense of the principal verb; the present subjunctive being used where English would use *may*, the imperfect subjunctive where English would use *might*.
- d.* The idea of purpose is expressed in English in a variety of ways, one of the commonest being by the infinitive with *to*. But the infinitive should not be used in Latin to express purpose.

387. (*a*) The principle by which the tense used in a dependent clause is influenced by the tense of the main verb is known in Latin Grammar as the *Sequence of Tenses*. The general rule is as follows :—

1. *Primary Sequence*. The present, future and future perfect indicative (called the *Primary Tenses*) are followed by the present or the perfect subjunctive.

2. *Secondary Sequence*. The imperfect, perfect and pluperfect indicative (called the *Secondary* or *Historical Tenses*) are followed by the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive. But the perfect indicative, when translated by *have*, may take primary sequence, and the historical present (59. fn.) secondary sequence.

(*b*) These rules apply generally to all kinds of dependent subjunctive clauses.\* In most cases the Latin sequence corresponds so closely to English usage that the tense of the English is a sufficient guide (362. *c*; 371. *a*).

388.

Illustrative Examples.

Lēgātōs mittunt	{ they send envoys to seek peace
quī pācem petant,	{ (literally, who are to seek peace),
Lēgātōs mīsērunt	{ they sent envoys to seek peace,
quī pācem peterent,	{ (literally, who were to seek peace).

---

\* In clauses of purpose, only the present and imperfect tenses are used.



- a. Notice that the subjunctive expressing purpose may be used in a relative clause. The relative pronoun replaces *ut*, and has of course an antecedent. This usage occurs chiefly after *mittō* and its compounds; sometimes also after *relinquō* and *dēligō*.

## 389.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>commeātus, ūs, m.,</i>	<i>supplies, provisions.</i>
<i>cōsequor, ī, -secūtus sum,</i>	<i>overtake; attain, acquire.</i>
<i>īnsequor, ī, -secūtus sum,</i>	<i>follow up, pursue.</i>
<i>magistrātus, ūs, m.,</i>	<i>magistrate.</i>
<i>praefectus, ī, m.,</i>	<i>officer, commander</i> <i>(especially of cavalry).</i>
<i>servitūs, -tūtis, f.,</i>	<i>slavery.</i>
<i>subsequor, ī, -secūtus sum,</i>	<i>follow closely, follow after.</i>
<i>tribūnus, ī, m.,</i>	<i>tribune (a military officer).</i>

N.B.—A Roman army had its commander-in-chief (*imperātor*), its staff officers (*lēgātī*); in each legion six tribunes (*tribūnī*) and sixty centurions (*centuriōnēs*); and its cavalry officers (*praefectī*).

## EXERCISES.

## 390.

## I.

A.—1. *Commēatūs causā morātur; morātur ut cōpiam commeatūs nanciscātur.* 2. *Ut hostēs cōsequī posset, pontem in flūmine fēcit.* 3. *Hostēs īnsequī nōn audet nē māgnam calamitātem accipiat.* 4. *Māgnam partem equitātūs mīsīt quae rēgem īnsequerētur.* 5. *Omnēs ex cōspectū remōvit equōs ut spem fugae tolleret.* 6. *Magistrātūs dēligunt quī cīvitatī praesint.* 7. *Nē nostrī incommodum acciperent, cohortēs sēcum in eam partem subsequī iussit.*





THE FORUM, LOOKING EAST. (*Restoration.*)



THE FORUM, LOOKING WEST. (*Restoration.*)



B.—8. Praestat interficī quam servitūtem patī. 9. Praefectōs tribūnōsque jussit cōpiās longiōre itinere dūcere, nē ex hostium castris cōspicerentur. 10. Tantam auctōritātem cōsecūtus est ut prīncipātum obtineat tōtius Galliae. 11. Lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī jussit ut novissimum agmen hostium adorīrētur. 12. Lēgātī ad Caesarem missī sunt quī dicerent sē parātōs esse obsidēs dare. 13. Partem cōpiārum praemisit quae castra minōra oppugnāret, agrōsque vāstāret. 14. Caesar in Britanniam proficiscētur, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur.

## 391.

## II.

A.—1. He reconnoitres all the roads in order that he may march without danger. 2. He sent the cavalry in advance that they might reconnoitre the roads and seek supplies. 3. The leader of the Gauls restrains his men lest we learn of his approach. 4. He sends the officers of the cavalry in advance to choose a suitable place. 5. He makes the camp so large that it cannot easily be surrounded; he makes the camp larger that the enemy may not be able to surround it. 6. They fought bravely for the sake of freedom; they fought bravely to attain freedom; they fought bravely that they might not be held in slavery. 7. He summons the tribunes and the centurions in order to explain what must be done.

B.—8. He sends the cavalry to pursue the enemy; he determines to follow the enemy closely; he hopes to overtake the enemy.\* 9. They sent envoys to promise that they would lay down their arms. 10. In order not to be prevented from setting sail, he determined to set out without supplies. 11. The magistrates and leading

---

\* See 386, 123 and 328 for various ways of translating the present infinitive with 'to.'

men of Gaul suspected that Caesar was taking them across to Britain in order to kill them all there. 12. He sends an officer in advance to see in what direction the enemy are marching. 13. He left the lieutenant on the continent to find out what was taking place in Gaul. 14. They began to throw away their arms so as not to be captured.

---

## LESSON LXVI.

### Ferō.

392.

Paradigm.

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear*.

*Active.*

*Passive.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERFECT	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUTURE	feram		ferar	
PERFECT	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUPERFECT	tuleram		lātus eram	
FUTURE PERFECT	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT	feram	ferar
IMPERFECT	ferrem	ferrer
PERFECT	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUPERFECT	tulissem	lātus essem

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT	ferre	ferri
PERFECT	tulisse	lātus esse
FUTURE	lātūrus esse	



PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT	ferēns	PERFECT	lātus
FUTURE	lātūrus	GERUNDIVE	ferendus

393. (a) **Ferō** is irregular in the present indicative, present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive. In all the other forms **ferō** is conjugated precisely like verbs of the third conjugation allowing for the peculiarity of the principal parts.

(b) The prepositions with which **ferō** is compounded often undergo changes to harmonize their final sound with the initial letters (f, t and l) of the three stems; for example **ad** and **ferō** make **afferō**, **attulī**, **allātum**.

394.

VOCABULARY.

**cōferō**, **ferre**, **contulī**, **collātum**, *collect, gather.*  
**dēferō**, **ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, *carry down; bring; report.\**  
**fāma**, **ae**, **f.**, *rumour, report.*  
**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, *bear, carry; endure, stand.*  
**īnferō**, **ferre**, **intulī**, **illātum**, *bring; cause, inflict.†*  
**perferō**, **ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**. *(carry to the end), bring; report\*; bear, submit to.*  
**referō**, **referre**, **rettulī**, **relā'um**, *carry back; report.\**

*Phrases :* **auxilium ferō** (w. **dat.**), *bring (give, lend) aid.*  
**bellum īnferō** (w. **dat.**), *make war (on or upon).*  
**sīgna īnferō** (w. **in** and **acc.**) *advance against*  
*or on (literally bear onward the standards).*  
**fāmam perferō**, *bring a report.*  
**pedem referō**, *fall back, give way.*

---

\* **Dēferō** of those who disclose or voluntarily report something; **referō** of those who as part of their duty bring back information; **perferō** with reference to the point reached by the report. All three words are followed by **ad** and the **Acc.**

† With **īnferō** the person *on* or *upon* whom something is inflicted is put in the dative case.

## EXERCISES.

395.

I.

A.—1. Auxilium ferimus; arma fertis. 2. Frūmentum cōferri iubet; frūmentum cōfertur. 3. Multa vulnera intulērunt; multa vulnera illāta sunt. 4. Hās litterās servus ad Caesarem dēfert; litterae ad eum dēferuntur. 5. Celeriter fāma ad omnēs Galliae civitātēs perferētur. 6. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs esse dīxērunt. 7. Negant sē populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. 8. Quantus est numerus eōrum quī arma ferre possunt? 9. Tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut omnēs ferē nāvēs ad Galliam referrentur. 10. Māgnā illātā calamitāte, aliās terrās petunt. 11. Frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōferēbātur.

B.—12. Ea rēs dēfertur ad Caesarem; haec statim dēferēmus. 13. Legiōnēs sēsē conjungunt et sīgna in hostēs īferunt. 14. Eīs quī premī videntur auxilium ferendum est. 15. Cōsiliō Caesaris cōgnitō et perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt. 16. Sī bellum intulerit, quid verēminī? 17. Nē haec rēs dēferātur, nūntium necant. 18. Hūc Caesar omnēs obsidēs et impedīmentōrum māgnam partem contulerat. 19. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera, nostrī subitō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. 20. Commissō procliō, nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt.

396.

II.

A.—1. You are bringing aid; you had brought aid. 2. He is said to have brought aid; while bringing aid, they were slain. 3. He asked who was bringing aid; he asked to whom aid was being brought. 4. They said that the grain was being collected. 5. Exhausted

by wounds, they began to give way. 6. Young men of such valour should not submit to slavery. 7. The ships were carried down to the lower part of the island. 8. He promised to make war neither upon them nor upon their allies. 9. Do you not see what great disasters they have borne? 10. The military standards used to be gathered to (*literally* into) one place. 11. After seeking peace, you have made war on me without cause.

B.—12. He sets out at once in order to bring aid; they join battle at once lest aid be brought. 13. Alarmed by these things the barbarians fell back. 14. The left wing was ordered to advance, because the right wing seemed to be hard pressed. 15. On this being reported (*dēferō*) to the magistrates, they determined to make war. 16. Meanwhile a report is brought to the fleet of (*dē*) Caesar's victory. 17. They report (*referō*) that the arms have been collected and hostages given up. 18. Ships of this sort will stand the storms more easily. 19. They understood how great a disaster they had brought (*īferō*) upon the state; they understood how great a disaster had been brought upon us. 20. When the allies fall back, the legionary soldiers will advance.

---

## LESSON LXVII.

### SUBJUNCTIVE WITH *Cum*.

397.

Illustrative Examples.

*Cum exercitum cōgeret, lēgātōs mīsērunt, when he was collecting an army, they sent envoys.*

*Hōc cum dīxisset, ex nāvī dēsīluit, when he had said this, he leaped down from the ship.*

*Cum id nūntiātum esset, statim profectus est, when this was announced, he set out at once.*



**Cum** nāvēs essent inūtilēs, revertī nōn poterat, *as (or since) the ships were useless, he could not return.*

These sentences illustrate the following points :—

- a.* **Cum** (translated sometimes *when*, sometimes *since* or *as*) is used with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to express in some cases the time, in others the cause of an action in the past.
- b.* In such clauses referring to the past, the imperfect subjunctive is used when the time of the dependent verb is the same as that of the main verb, the pluperfect when it is earlier than that of the main verb.
- c.* The subjunctive with **cum** is translated by the English indicative. Notice particularly that in English after *when*, etc., the simple past tense is often equivalent to the pluperfect, and that in such cases the subjunctive with **cum** should be in the pluperfect.
- d.* When **cum** with the subjunctive is translated *when*, it will in most cases be found not merely to express the time but also to describe the circumstances or situation.\*
- e.* An emphatic word or word of connection may precede the conjunction **cum**, although forming part of the **cum** clause, as in the second sentence.

N.B.—It will further be seen, on reviewing 303, that **cum** with the pluperfect subjunctive could be used to express any of the participial phrases there given.

---

\* **Cum** is used also with the indicative in Latin, chiefly in the following cases: (1) to express mere time; as, *When Caesar conquered Gaul, it was inhabited by three races*; (2) to express time, circumstances, or situation in present or future time (224); (3) when **cum** has the force of *whenever*.

In the sense of *since* or *as*, **cum** always takes the subjunctive.



398.

## VOCABULARY.

**apertus**, a, um, *open, clear.***īstituō**, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *undertake, set about; build, establish.***jam**, adv., *now, by this time, already.***mors**, **mortis**, f., *death.***nōndum**, adv., *not yet.***via**, ae, f., *way, road, route, journey.**Phrase: latis apertum, the unprotected flank (i.e., the right side, unprotected by the shield).*

N.B.—**īstituō** may take a complementary infinitive (123); as, **Haec facere īstituō**, *I undertake to do this, or, I set about doing this.*

## EXERCISES.

399.

## I.

A.—1. Cum jam appropinquārent Britanniae, tempestās subitō coorta est. 2. Eō cum pervēnissent, paucōs diēs ibi morātī sunt. 3. Cum lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnissent, ex cōsuētūdine obsidēs imperāvit. 4. His cum persuādēre nōndum potuissent, hāc viā iter facere nōn ausī sunt. 5. Cum esset Caesar in hibernīs, certior factus est Gallōs celerrimās nāvēs īstituere. 6. Cum jam trīduī viam prōgressī essēmus, dē morte imperātōris certiōrēs factī sumus. 7. His rēbus cum iter impedīrētur, cōpiae in locō apertō cōstitērunt. 8. Nostri cum sē in castra reciperent, hostibus occurrērunt. 9. Hōs cum reliquī cōspexissent, subsecūtī sunt.

B.—10. Cum mīlia passuum tria Caesar abesset, barbarī oppida incendērunt et pecora in silvās compulērunt. 11. Caesar cum cōstituisset in continentī hiemāre, frūmentum in Britannīā nōn prōvisum erat. 12. Cum jam merīdiēs appropinquāret, ad ea castra,

quae suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit. 13. Cum sē suaque omnia in oppida contulissent, bellum parāre instituērunt. 14. Cum jam mūrō turrēs appropinquāvissent, Gallī flentēs pācem petere coepērunt. 15. Cum mortis periculō territī essent, in fluctūs dēsilīre dubitābant. 16. Equitēs cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī nostra vīdissent, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. 17. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī tēla conjicerent, nostrī subitō ēruptionem fēcērunt. 18. Cum agmen ex viā excesserit, ab latere apertō adoriēmur.

## 400.

## II.

A.—1. When he was bringing aid to his brother, he was himself surrounded. 2. When we had marched for three days through their territories, we came to a lake of great width. 3. When he ordered all the senate to come to him, they did not obey. 4. Since he could not overtake the army, he recalled the cavalry. 5. When he came there, larger forces of the Britons had already assembled. 6. As the winter was not yet ended, he could not set about the work. 7. Having found out (*literally* when he had found out) by what road they were marching, he sent the cavalry in that direction. 8. Thinking (*literally* since we thought) that after his death it was dangerous to set out, we approved this plan.

B.—9. When he had approached (*accēdō*) nearer, he was ordered to throw away his arms. 10. As he believed the rest of the army was following closely, he drew up his line of battle on open ground. 11. On learning that Caesar was going to set out that night, they determined to await his departure. 12. When the Gauls saw that our legions were being hard pressed, they hastened towards the camp. 13. As the enemy's troops seemed

to be increasing, he set about posting garrisons. 14. When he reported what was being done on the left wing, these cohorts were ordered to advance. 15. As the open ground did not extend far, our men scarcely ventured to pursue.

## LESSON LXVIII.

Volō, Nōlō, Mālō. DATIVE OF PURPOSE AND INTEREST.

401.

Paradigms.

Volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish.*

Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling.*

Mālō, mälle, māluī, *prefer.*

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPERFECT	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUTURE	volam	nōlam	mālam
PERFECT	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUPERFECT	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUTURE PERFECT	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velitis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint

IMPERFECT	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERFECT	voluerim	noluerim	māluerim
PLUPERFECT	voluissē	noluisse	māluisse
INFINITIVE.			
PRESENT	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERFECT	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

402. (a) **Nōlō** is a contraction of **nevolō** = **nōn volō** ; **mālō** a contraction of **mavolō** = **magis volō**, *I wish more*.

(b) Notice that these verbs are irregular in the present indicative, present infinitive, present and imperfect subjunctive ; otherwise they are conjugated precisely like verbs of the third conjugation. The present subjunctive has the same characteristic vowel **-ī-** as **sum**.

#### 403. Illustrative Examples.

<b>Liber esse vult,</b>	<i>he wishes to be free.</i>
<b>Mē liberum esse vult,</b>	<i>he wishes me to be free.</i>
<b>Revocārī nōlēbat,</b>	<i>{ he did not wish to be recalled ; he was unwilling to be recalled.</i>
<b>Haec facere mālunt,</b>	<i>{ they prefer to do this ; they had rather do this.</i>

a. These sentences illustrate :—

- (1) the translation of **volō**, **nōlō** and **mālō** ;
- (2) the use of the present infinitive as a complement of these verbs ;
- (3) the use of a subject accusative with the infinitive to denote a different subject from that of the main verb ;



- (4) the case of a word in the predicate referring to the subject of the main verb.

404. Illustrative Examples.

Locum oppidō dēligit, *he chooses a place for the town.*

Caesar timet cohortī, *Caesar fears for the cohort.*

- a. The dative is sometimes to be translated by *for* rather than by *to*, chiefly with a few phrases to signify purpose or intention; or, again, to denote that in which interest or concern is felt.

405. VOCABULARY.

agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive, move forward; do.*

cōnsulō, ere, -sulūī, -sultum, *consult; take thought.\**

satis, adv. and indeclinable adj., *enough; sufficiently.*

studēo, ēre, uī, *be eager, be zealous.*

*Phrases:* agō cum, *treat or confer with.*

diem cōstituō, *fix (or appoint) a day.*

satis faciō, *satisfy, with dative (literally do enough for).*

novae rēs, *change, revolution.*

EXERCISES.

406. I.

A.—1. Audīre volumus; sē dēdere nōlent; discēdere mālēbant. 2. Redūcī nōluerāmus; incōgnitī esse mālēmus; vīsne adesse? 3. Posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit. 4. Mūnitiōnī castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbam. 5. Iīs legiōnibus, quās ūnā cum lēgātō miserat, timēbat. 6. Hīs dē rēbus tē cōnsulere vult; tēcum agere mālō. 7. Reī pūblicae bonī cīvēs semper cōnsulunt. 8. Ostendit id sibi satis futūrum esse. 9. Hī tibi student, illī mihi.

\* Cōnsulō, when meaning *consult*, takes the accusative; when meaning *take thought (for)*, the dative.

10. Proficīscī dubitābat quod post tergum hostem relinquere nōlēbat. 11. Quid agerētur dēferre nōlle vidēbantur. 12. Quaerit quibuscum agere velim.

B.—13. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur. 14. Omnēs ferē Gallī novīs rēbus studēbant. 15. Num servitūtem perferre māvultis? 16. Dēmōstrāvimus quās in partēs auxilia proficīscī vellēmus. 17. Ita multis dē causīs nāvibus veritus est. 18. Diem conciliō cōstituere nōlō. 19. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 20. Mōns quem ā lēgātō occupārī voluistī, ab hostibus tenētur. 21. Hōc praesidium huic reī satis esse arbitrābantur. 22. Sē senātuī populōque Rōmānō satis factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. 23. Amīcī exīstimārī volēbāmus. 24. Huic reī homō summae fortitūdinis dēligendus est.

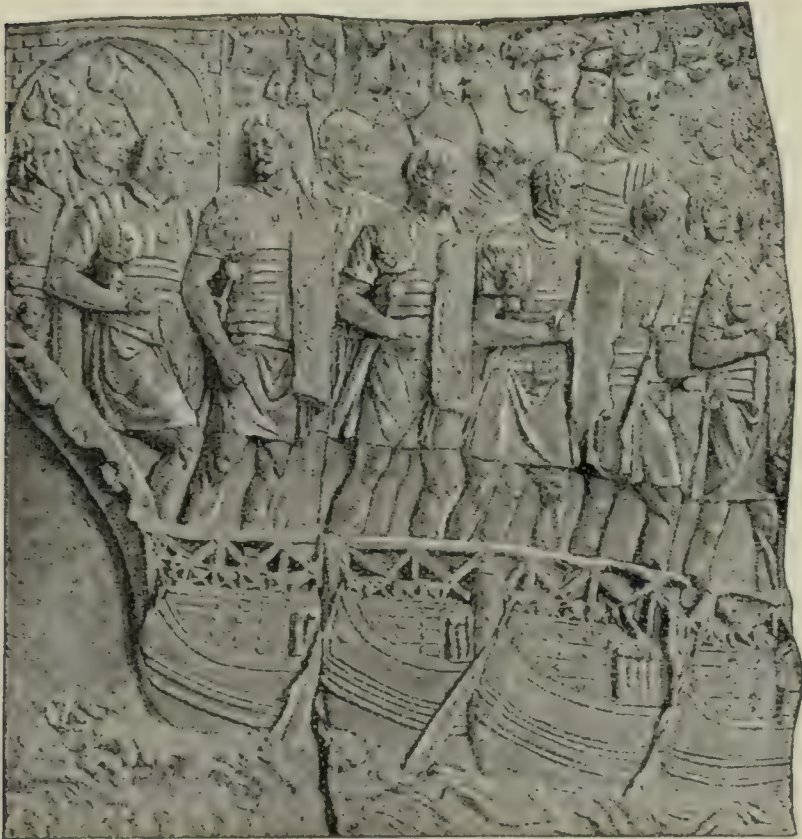
## 407.

## II.

A.—1. You wish to be Roman citizens; you do not wish to be a soldier; we prefer to dwell here. 2. He asked why we did not wish to return here; he asked where we preferred to dwell; he asked where we wished to be sent. 3. He had fixed a day for the cavalry battle. 4. It is scarcely enough for me. 5. He wishes to do nothing else; he prefers to do nothing at all. 6. They said that they wished to treat with him about these matters. 7. He asks how large a number wishes to follow him. 8. They are unwilling to take thought for the whole state; they prefer to take thought for themselves. 9. Since they are eager for a change, they collect as large a fleet as possible. 10. He sends scouts in advance to choose a suitable place for a camp.

B.—11. They fear the sea without cause. 12. He has fears for the safety of the legion; he feared for the legions. 13. Since he wished to consult the chief men,

he appointed a day for this business. 14. He is unwilling to leap down into the water. 15. He felt that they had been unwilling to satisfy him. 16. All men wish to be free; everyone is eager for freedom. 17. Have our men chosen a place for the camp? 18. I suspected for what reason they had wished war to be waged. 19. He says he had rather be killed than be severely wounded. 20. He was aware why they had preferred to encamp across the river.



**Soldiers Crossing a Bridge of Boats.** (*From Trajan's Column.*)



## LESSON LXIX.

## SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

408.

## Illustrative Examples.

*Cōpiae quās exspectat pervēnērunt, the troops which he is awaiting have arrived.*

*Audit cōpiās quās exspectet pervēnisse, he hears that the troops which he is awaiting have arrived.*

*Dixērunt cōpiās quās exspectāret pervēnisse, they said that the troops which he was awaiting had arrived.*

*Commōtī sunt quod cōpiae missae sunt, they are alarmed because troops have been sent.*

*Crēdit eōs commōtōs esse quod cōpiae missae sint, he believes they are alarmed because troops have been sent.*

*Negāvērunt sē commōtōs esse quod cōpiae missae essent, they denied that they were alarmed because troops had been sent.*

*Jussus est cōpiās quās coēgisset mittere, he was ordered to send the troops which he had collected.*

*Quaesivit quis coēgisset cōpiās quae mitterentur, he asked who had collected the troops which were being sent.*

These sentences illustrate the following points:—

- a. Relative and other subordinate clauses which ordinarily have the indicative, have the subjunctive instead, when dependent on a clause which is itself dependent on some verb of *saying, thinking, knowing or perceiving, ordering or asking.*
- b. This rule holds not only of indirect statements, but of indirect questions and commands, all of which are included under the term *Indirect Discourse.* The indicative in fact has no place in the indirect quotation of another's words or thoughts.



- c. The tenses of the subjunctive follow the rules for the sequence of tenses (387). It should be observed that in English the tense of the dependent clause is similarly influenced by that of the main verb.

409.

## VOCABULARY.

**circumdō, dare, -dedī, -datum, surround, enclose.**

**Helvētīi, ōrum, m. plur., the Helvetians** (a Gallic tribe dwelling in what is now Switzerland).

**impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, obtain one's request, obtain.**

**reddō, ere, reddidī, redditum, give back, restore.**

*Phrase: ad salūtem contendō, hasten to a place of safety.*

N.B.—The compounds of **dō** with monosyllabic prepositions are regularly of the third conjugation like **reddō\***; compare **abdō, dēdō, trādō** (= **trāns-dō**). But compounds with dissyllabic words are of the first conjugation like **dō** itself, as **circumdō**.

## EXERCISES.

410.

I.

A.—1. Obsidēs, quōs habēmus, reddēmus. 2. Pollicentur sē obsidēs, quōs habeant, redditūrōs esse. 3. Pollicitī sunt sē obsidēs, quōs habērent, redditūrōs esse. 4. Obsidēs quī acceptī sunt, redditī sunt. 5. Dicit obsidēs quī acceptī sint, redditōs esse. 6. Dixit obsidēs quī acceptī essent, redditōs esse. 7. Scripsit sē Gallōs quī ea loca incolerent expulisse. 8. Intellegēbat eum locum, unde Helvētīi discessissent, prōvinciae nostrae fīnitimum esse. 9. Arbitrantur facile fore sē dēfendere quod prope ex omnibus partibus locus flūmine et palūde circumdatus sit. 10. Id cum impetrāvissent,† pollicitī sunt sē in finēs suōs unde essent profectī reversūrōs esse.

\* The prefix **re-** has the form **red-** before vowels, as well as with **-dō**.

† The object of **impetrō** can often be best rendered by an adjective modifying the word *request*; as, **hōc impetrō, I obtain this request**.

B.—11. *Helvētiī lēgātōs mīserunt quī dīcerent sē velle iter per prōvinciam facere, quod aliud iter habērent nūllum.* 12. *Audīverant id, quod ipsī aegerrimē fēcissent, illum fēcisse facillimē.* 13. *Crēdunt in aciē prae-stāre interfici quam libertātem quam accēperint āmittere.* 14. *Jussī sunt ea quae audīvissent ad Helvētiōs dēferre.* 15. *Renūntiāvit montem quem ā lēgātō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī.* 16. *Num crēditis Gallōs ea quae polliceantur factūrōs?* 17. *Scrīpsit summam fuisse difficultātem, quod omnia ūnō tempore essent agenda.* 18. *Quaerit cūr ea quae accēperint reddere nōlint.* 19. *Cōgnōvit Helvētiōs, ēruptiōne factā, eīsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contendisse.* 20. *Ostendērunt Caesarem, quod ad hostium castra accēderet, expeditās legiōnēs dūcere.*

## 411

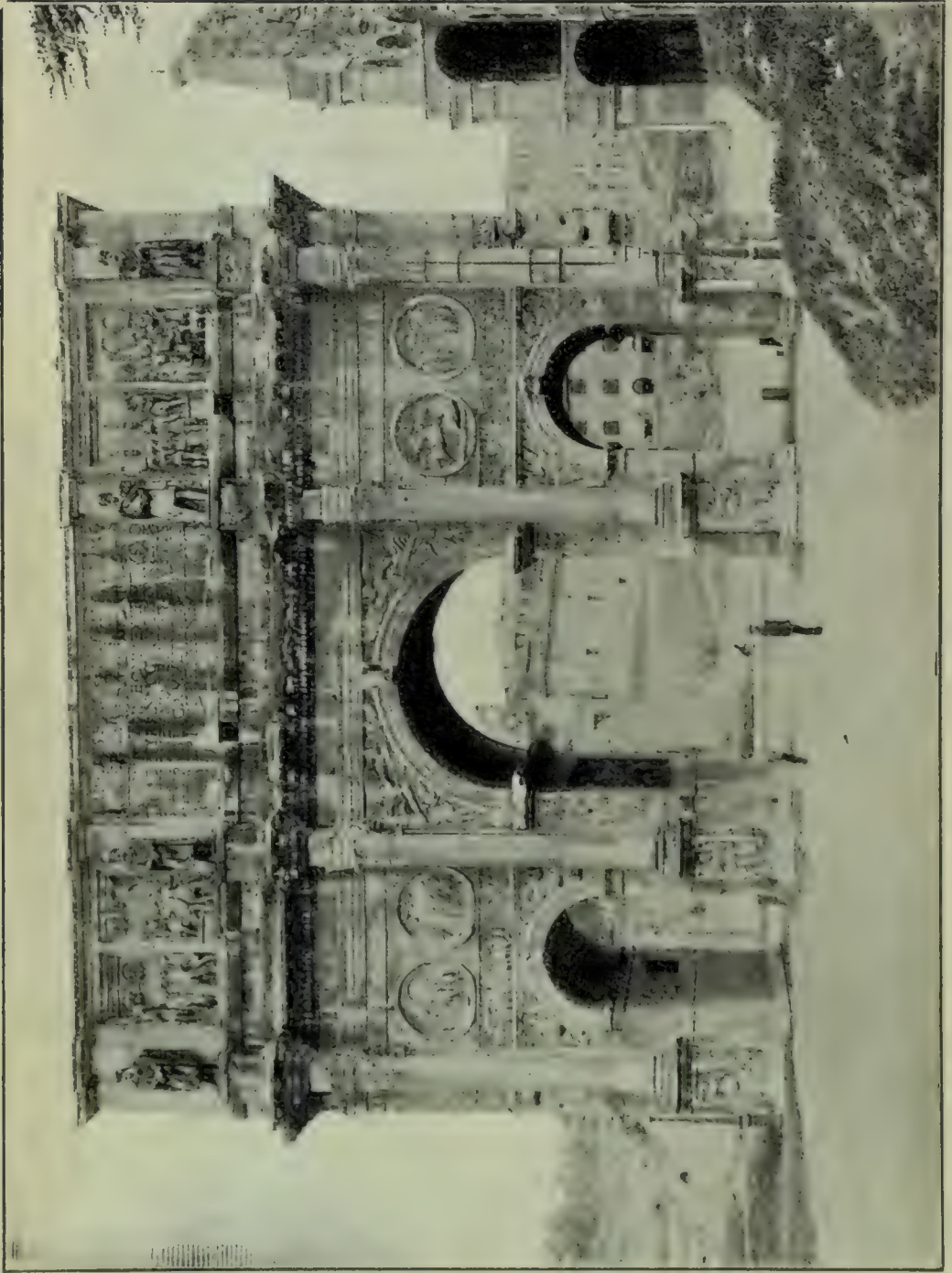
## II.

A.—1. They have surrounded with a double wall the town which they are defending. 2. He learns that they have surrounded with a double wall the town which they are defending. 3. He found that they had surrounded with a double wall the town which they were defending. 4. The towns which they have taken by storm are surrounded\* by forests. 5. He reports that the towns which they have taken by storm are surrounded by forests. 6. He wrote that the towns which had been taken by storm were surrounded by forests. 7. He replied that he had fears for the prisoners whom they were unwilling to restore. 8. The Helvetians hope to obtain from him what they have been seeking. 9. He said that he preferred to be left on the continent, because he feared the sea. 10. He was ordered to

---

\* Use the perfect tense (243. N.B.).





ARCH OF CONSTANTINE.



return to the camp where the baggage of the whole army had been left.

B.—11. He announces that he will lead the legion he has with him into our province. 12. They thought that it was easy to obtain what they wished. 13. They promised to do what he had required. 14. He orders the prisoners whom they are holding in slavery to be given back. 15. They saw that the Helvetians had been thrown into confusion because they had been surrounded by the cavalry. 16. He points out that these are the same enemies with whom we have often waged war. 17. He asked who was in command of the forces that were being sent. 18. He perceives that the Helvetians are hastening towards those who are finishing these fortifications. 19. He learns that the ships which these nations use are smaller. 20. He learned that several ships had been carried back to the same harbour from which (*literally* whence) they had set out.

## 412.

## WORD LIST VII.

## NOUNS.

adulēscēns	fluctus	nātiō	praefectus
classis	genus	negōtium	servitūs
commeātus	magistrātus	pars	tribūnus
corpus	mors	potestās	trīdium
fāma			via

## ADJECTIVES.

apertus	incrēdibilis	ingēns	potēns	satis
---------	--------------	--------	--------	-------

## ADVERBS.

ita	nōndum	sic	vix
jam	satis	tam	

## VERBS.

absum	coorior	īstituō	possum
adorior	dēferō	mālō	praeficiō
adsum	dēsum	noceō	praesum
agō	doceō	nōlō	reddō
animadvertō	efficiō	occurrō	referō
appropinquō	ferō	parcō	resistō
circumdō	fluō	pāreō	revertor
cōferō	imperō	patior	studeō
cōfidō	impetrō	perferō	subsequor
cōsequor	īferō	perspiciō	ūtor
cōsulō	īsequor	persuādeō	volō

## READING LESSON XIII.

THE SELF-DEVOTION OF DECIUS. (343 B.C.; 340 B.C.)

413.

## VOCABULARY.

dēvoveō, ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *devote, sacrifice.*

Samnītēs, ium, m. pl., *the Samnites* (a tribe residing in the centre of Italy among the Apennines).

vallēs, is, f., *valley.*

Cum Gallōs Rōmānī expulissent, bellum dē principātū Ītaliae coortum est cum Samnītibus, quōrum finēs in mediā erant Ītaliā, et montibus māgnā altitūdine continēbantur. Samnītēs tantae erant virtūtis, tantumque in rē militārī ūsum habēbant, ut numquam populus Rōmānus cum audāciōre hoste bellum gereret.

Cōsul Rōmānus, dum exercitum contrā Samnītēs dūcit, prope māgnam calamitātem accēpit. Nam (*for*) explorātōrēs nōn praemiserat ut sine periculō iter faceret, et hostēs, cum cōgnōvissent Rōmānōs eā viā iter factūrōs esse, sē in silvās et superiōra loca abdiderant, ut

Rōmānōs ab lateribus duōbus subitō adorīrentur. Cum jam māxima pars exercitūs in vallem silvīs circumdatam prōgressa esset, fāma ad cōsulem perfertur hostēs adesse. Ille sēnsit summum esse perīculum, quod Rōmānī prope circumventī essent, sed, cum nōllet hostem post tergum relinquere, exercitum sīgna convertere jubēre dubitābat.

Dum exercituī timet, neque scit quid faciendum sit, Pūblius Decius tribūnus, adulēscēns summā virtūte, appropinquāvit et haec dīxit : “ Hostēs adventum reliquī exercitūs expectāre videntur, et cum novissimum agmen in cōspectum vēnerit, nōn diūtius morābuntur sed statim impetum facient. Ūna est spēs salūtis. Vidēsne collem illum, quem hostēs nōndum occupāvērunt? Ex illō colle hostēs ā tergō adorīrī poterimus, sī in nostrōs impetum facere cōnātī erunt. Ita impetus impediētur, neque Samnītēs audēbunt vōs īnsequī, nē māgnum incommodum ipsī accipiant. Paucās cohortēs huic reī satis fore arbitror. Nōs volumus interficī ut reliquī ex valle excēdant.”

Hōc cōsiliō probātō, cōsul Decium cum paucīs cohortibus expeditīs mīsīt quī collem occupāret. Ipse cum reliquīs cōpiīs, iisdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnerat, ad salūtem contendit. Interim Decius in māgnō erat perīculō. Nam hostēs cum animadvertissent quid agerētur, īrā (*by anger*) adductī, omnēs sē ā legiōnibus ad Decium convertunt. Collem mūrō circumdare īnstituunt ut omnēs Rōmānī caperentur. Sed cum jam nox appropinquāret neque tempus mūnitiōnī relinquerētur, posterum diem oppūgnātiōnī cōstituērunt ; sed mediā nocte Rōmānī, ēruptiōne factā, per mediōs hostēs audācissimē perrumpunt incolumēsque omnēs sē ad suōs recipiunt.



Propter hās rēs gestās Decius māgnam inter Rōmānōs auctōritātem cōsecutus est, et post trēs annōs cōsul factus est, eōdem annō quō Mānlius Torquātus, alter cōsul, dē quō suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, filium suum interficī iussit. Post mortem adulēscentis illius, proelium commissum est. Superiōre nocte uterque (*each*) cōsul somniāverat (*had dreamed*) sē virum vidēre ingentī māgnitūdine corporis, quī nūntiāret\*: “Alter exercitus imperātorem, alter victōriam āmittet.”

Proeliō commissō, Decius animadvertit Mānlium, quī dextrō cornū praeerat, hostēs repellere, sed sinistrum cornū, cui ipse praefectus erat, premī ab hostibus et pedem referre. Itaque (*accordingly*) nē Rōmānī superārentur, sē prō (*on behalf of, w. abl.*) exercitū dēvovēre cōstituit, et statim in mediōs hostēs sē conjēcit ut auxilium labōrantibus suis ferret. Ibī fortiter pūgnāns brevī cecidit, multīs vulneribus cōfectus. Hōc cum reliquī cōspexissent, subsecūtī sunt et hostēs in fugam dedērunt.

Ita illis temporibus cīvēs rei pūblicae semper cōsulēbant. Hūjus generis mīlitibus nēmō resistere poterat.

## LESSON LXX.

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

414.

Illustrative Examples.

Erant virtūte parēs, *they were equal in valour.*

Omnia oppida, numerō duodecim, incendunt, *they burn all their towns, twelve in number.*

- a. The ablative without a preposition is used, as in these sentences, to show in what respect a statement or term is to be taken as applicable. This usage is known as the *Ablative of Specification*.

\* For the mood see 408. a, **somniō** being a verb of *thinking* or *perceiving*.



## 415. Illustrative Examples.

Summā celeritāte ad castra contendunt, *with the utmost swiftness they hasten towards the camp.*

Māgnō cum periculō et māgnā cum virtūte rēs sunt administrātae, *operations have been conducted at great risk and with great valour.*

Cōnsuetūdine suā dēsiluērunt, *according to their custom, they leaped down.*

- a. The *Ablative of Manner*, both with and without the preposition **cum**, is used to express the manner or the attendant circumstances of an action. In the exercises which follow, **cum** should not be used except with the words **diligentia** and **periculum**.\*
- b. The ablative is also used without a preposition, to denote that in accordance with which something is done, as in the last sentence.

## 416. VOCABULARY.

diligentia, ae, f.,	care, diligence.
modus, ī, m.,	manner ; means ; kind, sort.
nōmen, -minis, n.,	name.
praestō, āre, -stitī, -stātum or -stitum,	be superior ; surpass (with dative).
ratio, -ōnis, f.,	method ; manner, way.
studium, ī, n.,	zeal, eagerness.
superō, āre, āvī, ātum,	surpass, excel.
tumultus, ūs, m.,	noise, uproar, commotion.
valeō, ēre, uī, itum,	be strong.
vōx, vōcis, f.,	voice ; cry.

*Phrases:* māgnā vōce, *in a loud voice*; (so also with clāmor).  
 commūnī cōnsiliō, *by common consent* (lit. *plan*).  
 plūrimum valeō, *be very strong, be strongest*.

---

\* No general rule for the use or omission of **cum** with the ablative of manner can be given with advantage at this stage of the pupil's progress.

## EXERCISES.

417.

I.

A.—1. Interim ad lēgātum incrēdibilī celeritātē dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur. 2. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet. 3. Adulēscentem, Lūcium nōmine, equitibus praeficit. 4. Dispositīs praesidiīs, māgnā cum dīligentiā mūnitiōnēs dēfendunt. 5. Hostēs māximō clāmōre novissimum agmen adortī sunt. 6. Summō studiō vīgintī nāvēs hūjus modī instituunt. 7. Hīc vir cēterīs virtūte et ūsū reī militāris praestābat. 8. Māgnā vōce causam tumultūs quaesīvit. 9. Eādem ratiōne omnia commūnī cōnsiliō facta erant.

B.—10. Cum summā dīligentiā mīlitēs in castrīs continet. 11. Simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus, portās occupārī jubet. 12. Neque hāc recentī victōriā neque nōmine populī Rōmānī dētterrērī possunt. 13. Quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat. 14. Quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō ēdūcerentur, quaerere coepērunt. 15. Sic commūnī cōnsiliō imperium tōtius Galliae obtinēbat. 16. Respondit se cōstituisse, quod haec cīvitās hominum multitūdine superāret, sescentōs omnīnō obsidēs imperāre. 17. Omnī modō\* huic reī studēbimus, ne opprimāmur. 18. Sēsē parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus\* Caesarī satis facere.

418.

II.

A.—1. They were said to excel the others in valour. 2. Our ships are superior to the enemy's fleet in speed alone. 3. When he had said this in a loud voice, he leaped down into the waves. 4. He perceived at what

---

\* These expressions have the same meaning, *by every means* or *in every way*.

(*literally* how great) risk they had done this. 5. At first the river flows with very great swiftness. 6. First they collected all their infantry forces, in which they were very strong. 7. He ordered the camp to be moved at daybreak with less commotion. 8. War should have been waged according to another method. 9. With the same zeal they began to fortify their camp according to our custom.

B.—10. This was the name of the island; the island was called Britain. 11. An island of vast extent, Britain by name, was not far distant from Gaul. 12. They set out at midnight amid (*literally* with) great commotion. 13. By common consent the other bank had been granted to the allies. 14. The camp had not been fortified on this side with the same care. 15. He orders all the cavalry, fifteen thousand in number, to assemble at the beginning of spring. 16. He remembered that he had come with another purpose (*cōsilium*). 17. They surpass us in everything. 18. They can by **no** means overtake you.

---

## LESSON LXXI.

Eō, Fīō.

419.

Paradigm.

Eō, ire, īvī or īī, itum, *go*.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT	eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
	īs	ītis	eās	eātis
	it	eunt	eat	eant
IMPERFECT	ībam, ībās, <i>etc.</i>		īrem	
FUTURE	ībō, ībis, <i>etc.</i>			



PERFECT	īvī or iī	īverim or ierim
PLUPERFECT	īveram or ieram	īvissem or iissem
FUTURE PERFECT	īverō or ierō.	

	INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.
PRESENT	īre	PRESENT	iēns, ( <i>gen.</i> euntis.)
PERFECT	īvisse or iisse	FUTURE	itūrus
FUTURE	itūrus esse		

- a.* Notice that **eō**, while very irregular, belongs on the whole to the fourth conjugation, the stem vowel **i**, however, becoming **e** before **a**, **o** and **u**, as in **eō**, **eunt**, **eam**, **euntis**, but **iēns**; the future indicative is formed after the model of the first and second conjugations.
- b.* In the perfect system the forms without **v** are those commonly used, both in the simple verb and in its compounds.

## 420.

## Paradigm.

**Fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.**

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT	fīō (fīmus)		fīam fīāmus
	fīs (fītis)		fīās fīātis
	fit fīunt		fīat fīant
IMPERFECT	fīēbam		fierem
FUTURE	fīam		
PERFECT	factus sum		factus sim
PLUPERFECT	factus eram		factus essem
FUTURE PERFECT	factus erō		
	INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.
PRESENT	fierī	PERFECT	factus
PERFECT	factus esse	GERUNDIVE	faciendus.

- a.* In the present system **fīō** has the regular forms of the active voice of the fourth conjugation, except



in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive.  
The vowel **i** is long, except in **fit** and before **-er**.

6. **Fīō** is used as the passive of **faciō**, which has the regular passive forms only in the perfect system. The compounds of **faciō** with prepositions have their passives throughout formed regularly from the active voice; as, **interficior**, **interfici**, **interfectus sum**; **cōnficior**, **cōnfici**, **cōnfectus sum**.

#### 421. VOCABULARY.

<b>adeō</b> , <b>īre</b> , <b>iī</b> , <b>itum</b> ,	<i>advance; approach, visit.</i>
<b>aditus</b> , <b>ūs</b> , <b>m.</b> ,	<i>approach; means of approach.</i>
<b>eō</b> , <b>īre</b> , <b>ivī</b> or <b>iī</b> , <b>itum</b> ,	<i>go, advance.</i>
<b>exeō</b> , <b>īre</b> , <b>iī</b> , <b>itum</b> ,	<i>go forth; leave (with <b>ex</b> and <b>abl.</b>).</i>
<b>fīō</b> , <b>fieri</b> , <b>factus sum</b> ,	<i>be made, be done; happen.</i>
<b>ineō</b> , <b>īre</b> , <b>iī</b> , <b>itum</b> ,	<i>enter; enter upon, begin.</i>
<b>redeō</b> , <b>īre</b> , <b>iī</b> , <b>itum</b> ,	<i>return.</i>
<b>trānseō</b> , <b>īre</b> , <b>iī</b> , <b>itum</b> ,	<i>cross; cross over.</i>

*Phrases*: **cōnsilium ineō** (or **capiō**), *form (adopt) a plan.*  
**initā aestāte**, *at the beginning of summer*  
(ablative absolute).

N.B.—**Adeō**, **ineō** and **trānseō** may be used transitively and govern the accusative case. As transitive verbs, they have passives formed in the regular way from the active; as **adīrī**, **initus**, **trānseundus** (gerundive).

#### EXERCISES.

##### 422.

##### I.

A.—1. **Hāc viā īre nōn poterant**; **eādem viā ībant**.  
2. **Rhēnum nāvibus trānseunt**; **Rhēnum trānsire cōnsuēvērunt**. 3. **Quaesivit unde redīrēmus**; **sciō quō eātis**. 4. **Propter paucitātem nostrōrum nihil fieri poterat**. 5. **Eōdem tempore ab latere apertō impetus fiēbat**. 6. **Initā hieme in prōvinciam ē Galliā exhibunt**.

7. *Insulam adire et aditū cōgnōscere volēbat.* 8. *Peditātū repulsō, fit equestre proelium; sine labōre opus efficitur.* 9. *Explōrātōrēs jussit quid fieret cōgnōscere; quid fiat cōgnōscant.* 10. *Scrīpsit sē duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsiisse.* 11. *Liberius et audācius dē bellō cōsilia inībant.* 12. *Equitēs, in castra redeuntēs, hostibus occurrunt.*

B.—13. *Tertiā hōrā exit ūnā cum nūntiō.* 14. *Quid fieri vellet, ostendit.* 15. *Omnēs vicōs quōs adire potuerant, incenderant.* 16. *Hōc idem reliquīs fit diēbus.* 17. *Quid faciendum esset, prōviderat.* 18. *Proximō annō cōstituit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum.* 19. *Hīs initis cōsiliis, frūmentum ex agrīs comportant.* 20. *Cum ad suōs rediisset, nūntiāvit sē aditum reperisse.* 21. *Duās legiōnēs praemisit ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret.* 22. *Ipse, eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, trīdium prōgressus est.* 23. *Tantā celeritāte milites ierunt ut hostēs impetum sustinere nōn possent.* 24. *Caesar dixit sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret.*

## 423.

## II.

A.—1. They were going by that road; they will go by another road. 2. On account of the scarcity of ships, they have not yet crossed; they cannot cross because ships are lacking. 3. He orders a sally to be made; he orders them to be put to death. 4. Meanwhile they are informed of his death. 5. They are reconnoitring the roads that they may go forth from their territories. 6. We shall often visit these nations; he is going to visit the remaining states before autumn. 7. They had left the town at the beginning of the second watch. 8. He was aware what was happening. 9. They believed that no one would cross over into

Britain. 10. He was informed that those who had crossed the river had not yet returned. 11. They report that the camp has an easy approach. 12. They believe he is returning (has returned, will return); they hear he is restoring (has restored, will restore) the prisoners.

B.—13. Influenced by this speech they form a new plan. 14. We shall not allow the Helvetians to go through our territories. 15. If he returns, he will be put to death; when he returns he will be made king. 16. That river the Helvetians were already crossing. 17. Outposts should be stationed lest a sally be suddenly made. 18. Alarmed by the approach of so great a multitude, they determine to prevent the Germans from crossing. 19. While crossing the marsh he was wounded by a spear. 20. He points out what he wishes done (*literally* to be done.) 21. This same thing is done also in the adjacent districts. 22. The river cannot be crossed; the river is crossed with difficulty. 23. If the ships are detained here by storms, a surrender will be made; the business will be finished in a short time. 24. They posted garrisons with the greatest care, that the Germans might not cross over.



Coin of Hadrian.



## LESSON LXXII.

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

424.

Illustrative Examples.

**Nōbīs persuādet ut ad hostēs sēcum trānseāmus,** *he persuades us to cross over to the enemy with him.*

**Suīs imperāvit nē tēla conjicerent,** *he ordered his men not to hurl missiles.*

**Petīvit ut in Galliā relinquerētur,** *he asked to be left (or that he might be left) in Gaul.*

In connection with these sentences note the following points :—

- a.* After verbs meaning *urge, ask or command*, Latin uses dependent clauses with **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive, where English has the infinitive (or, less frequently, a dependent clause with *that*).
- b.* The **ut** or **nē** clause is a substantive or noun clause telling what is urged, asked or commanded.\*
- c.* **Jubeō** furnishes an important exception to the general rule.
- d.* The sequence of tenses is the same as in clauses of purpose, the present subjunctive being used after primary tenses, the imperfect after secondary tenses.†
- e.* The reflexives **suī** and **suus** in the subordinate clause will refer to the subject of the main verb, as in all forms of indirect discourse (323. *b*, 363. *fn.*).

---

\* Latin conceives this as something willed or desired, and accordingly uses the same form of expression as in the ordinary clause of purpose (386).

† The historical present in Latin (59. *fn.*) may take either primary sequence (according to its form), or secondary sequence (according to its meaning). Compare 427, sentences 2 and 5, or 14 and 15.



425. Here may profitably be reviewed the sections which explain various ways of expressing in Latin the English infinitive with *to* :

- 123. Complementary infinitive : with *audeō*, *coepī*, *cōgō*, *cōnor*, *cōstituō*, *cōsuēvī*, *contendō*, *dubitō*, *jubeō*, *patior*, *possum*, *volō*, *etc.*
- 320. With passive verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, and with *videor* (*seem*).
- 328. With *polliceor* and *spērō*.
- 386. Adverbial clauses of purpose.
- 388. Relative clauses of purpose.
- 424. Substantive clauses of purpose.

426.

VOCABULARY.

<i>atque</i> or <i>ac</i> , conj.,	<i>and</i> ; <i>and also</i> .
<i>cohortor</i> , <i>ārī</i> , <i>ātus sum</i> ,	<i>encourage</i> , <i>urge</i> , <i>exhort</i> .
<i>hortor</i> , <i>ārī</i> , <i>ātus sum</i> ,	<i>encourage</i> , <i>urge</i> .
<i>imperō</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> ,	<i>order</i> , <i>command</i> (with dat.).
<i>moneō</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>uī</i> , <i>itum</i> ,	<i>advise</i> , <i>warn</i> .
<i>orō</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> ,	<i>beg</i> , <i>entreat</i> .
<i>persuādeō</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>-suāsī</i> , <i>-suāsum</i> ,	<i>persuade</i> , <i>induce</i> (with dat.).
<i>petō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>-īvī</i> (or <i>-iī</i> ), <i>-itum</i> ,	<i>ask</i> , <i>request</i> (with <i>ab</i> and <i>abl.</i> )*.

N.B.—*Atque* is used before vowels or consonants, *ac* before consonants only. Of the four Latin words for *and*, *et* simply connects; *-que* joins more closely than *et* terms which naturally go together, or related clauses and phrases; *atque* and *ac* add something of importance, something to be more or less emphasized.

---

\* Distinguish clearly between *petō* with a substantive clause of purpose (= *ask* or *request* with the infinitive) and *quaerō* with an indirect question (= *ask* or *inquire* followed by an interrogative clause).

## EXERCISES.

427.

I.

A.—1. Helvētiis persuāsit ut dē hīs finibus cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent. 2. Monet centuriōnēs nē signa in hostēs inferant. 3. Suīs ut idem faciant imperat. 4. Audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. 5. Hāc ōrātiōne hīs persuādet nē diūtius morārentur. 6. Hortātur peditēs ut similī ratiōne per mediōs hostēs perrumpant. 7. Petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcāmus. 8. Monuī lēgātum ut celeriter reverterētur; pollicitus est sē quam celerrimē reversūrum; celerius revertī nōn ausus est. 9. Cohortātus militēs ut ipsum Caesarem adesse existimārent, dat signum proeliī.

B.—10. Lēgātō imperāvit ut quae gererentur cōgnōsceret. 11. Nōs ōrat nē hōc cōnsilium ineāmus. 12. Servō spē libertātis persuādēbit ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. 13. Auctōrēs bellī jussit capī atque interfici. 14. Monet ut omnia longē lātēque oppida incenderentur. 15. Belgās hortātur ut commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant. 16. Flentēs ā Rōmānīs petēbant nē sibi nocērent. 17. Militēs cohortātus est nē perturbārentur hōc incommodō. 18. Petēbant ut equitēs quī praemissi essent\* revocārentur.

428.

II.

A.—1. He urged his men to renew the battle; he urged his men not to give way. 2. They persuade their neighbours to set out along with them. 3. He orders this young man to visit the nearest states. 4. He advised the leading men and the senate to despatch embassies in all directions. 5. He asks and urges that we fix a day for the meeting. 6. After encouraging

---

\* For the subjunctive see 408. a. b.

the soldiers, he warned them not to lose the military standards. 7. They are begging Caesar to give them aid; they were begging (me)\* to give them aid. 8. He ordered (jubeō and imperō) the scouts to find an easier approach; he sent scouts to find the easiest approach; they hoped to find a less difficult approach. 9. They seem to despair of themselves and of the state.

B.—10. They requested Caesar not to move his camp nearer. 11. He ordered the leader of the Germans not to injure the allies of the Roman people. 12. He exhorts the troops to withstand bravely the enemy's onset. 13. He promised to induce them to allow the Helvetians to go through these territories. 14. They begged the commander not to advance farther. 15. He prefers to be called king and friend by the senate and Roman people. 16. The tribunes and centurions should be advised to take thought for their own and the soldiers' safety. 17. We wish to persuade you not to cross the Rhine. 18. According to his custom, he urged the troops to attend carefully to everything.

### LESSON LXXIII.

#### REVIEW OF GENITIVE AND DATIVE CASES.

429. (a) The genitive case as used in these lessons may be classified under five heads: Partitive Genitive (174), Genitive of Quality (383), Possessive Genitive, Subjective Genitive and Objective Genitive.

(b) The *Possessive Genitive* is used with a noun to denote the owner; as, *agrī Helvētiōrum*, *the lands of the Helvetians*; *impedimenta nostrī exercitūs*, *the baggage of our army*; *filiī rēgis*, *the king's sons*.

---

\* The person is clearly indicated by the subject of the following verb.



(c) The *Subjective Genitive* is used with nouns expressing action or feeling, to denote the person who acts or feels; as, **Caesaris adventus**, *Caesar's arrival*; **militum studium**, *the zeal of the soldiers*.

(d) The *Objective Genitive* is used with nouns expressing action or feeling, to denote that to which the action or feeling is directed; as, **timor bellī**, *the fear of war*; **mūnitiō castrōrum**, *the fortifying of the camp*; **spēs salūtis**, *the hope of safety*.

The objective genitive is used also with many adjectives to complete their meaning, especially with adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge or ignorance*; as, **memor vestri**, *mindful of you*.

430. The dative case as used in these lessons may be classified under four heads: the Dative of Indirect Object (39), the Dative of the Agent (354), the Dative of Interest (404) and the Dative of Purpose (404). Of special importance is that variety of the dative of indirect object found with certain intransitive verbs which are ordinarily rendered by English transitive verbs with a direct object (355). Closely related to the dative of indirect object also is the dative completing the meaning of certain adjectives (173).

431.

Illustrative Examples.

**Gallis māgnō erat impedimentō**, *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls*.

**Hās cohortēs castris praesidiō relinquit**, *he leaves these cohorts as garrison for the camp (or to guard the camp)*.

**Auxiliō Caesarī veniēbant**, *they were coming to Caesar's aid (more literally, as aid for Caesar)*.

α. In these sentences the dative of purpose (**impedimentō, praesidiō, auxiliō**) is used in the predicate



to denote the purpose served (that which something tends to be or is intended to be), and is accompanied by the dative of interest (**Gallīs, castrīs, Caesarī**).

- b.* This usage (sometimes called the Double Dative) is confined to a few nouns with such verbs as **sum, mittō, veniō** and **relinquō**. With **sum** the dative of purpose has almost the force of the ordinary predicate noun.

#### 432. VOCABULARY.

**cupidus, a, um,** *desirous, fond(of); eager (for),* (with genitive).

**imperītus, a, um,** *inexperienced (in); unacquainted (with),* (with genitive).

**perītus, a, um,** *skilful, skilled (in); acquainted (with),* (with genitive).

**subsidium, ī, n.,** *support, reinforcements.*

*Phrase: ūsuī sum, be useful, be of service* (literally *be for an advantage.*)

N.B.—The objective genitive, whether with nouns or adjectives, may often require translation by some other preposition than *of*, but this will always be a preposition equivalent to *as regards*.

#### EXERCISES.

##### 433.

##### I.

A. — 1. Vāllō pedum novem hīberna circumdat.  
2. Hāc dē causā mihi Rhēnus est trānseundus. 3. Nostrīs labōrantibus subsidium fert. 4. Hōc māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābantur. 5. Virōs summae virtūtis ac rei militāris perītissimōs huic negōtiō dēligunt. 6. Neque ad concilia veniunt neque imperiō Caesaris pārent. 7. Frāter rēgis cupidus imperiī est et vir māгнаe auctōritātis. 8. Militēs cohortātus est ut hārum victō-

riarum memoriam retinērent. 9. Tantus erat timor mortis ut fugae similis discessus cōpiarum esse vidēretur. 10. Milites quī praesidiō castris relictī erant, cum clamōrēs barbarōrum audīvissent, subsidiō suis iērunt.

B.—11. Hic rei frumentariae commeātusque causā morātūrī sunt. 12. Māgnam multitudinem hostium fugientium interfēcērunt. 13. Monuit filium ut memor nostrī esset; ille pollicitus est sē nōbīs semper fidēlem fore. 14. Caesarī decima legiō praemittenda erat, cui māximē cōfidēbat. 15. Milites legiōnum duarum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, jam in cōspectum hostium vēnerant. 16. Num tantae altitudinis turrim sēsē mōtūrōs esse cōfidunt? 17. Māgnae partis hārum regiōnum imperium diū obtinēbat. 18. Tam nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī erant ut Caesarī obsidēs dare nōllent. 19. Num recentium injūriarum memoriam dēpōnere possum? 20. Oppidī oppugnātiō locī nātūrā impediēbātur.

## 434.

## II.

A.—1. Influenced by the hope of booty, they have made war on us. 2. He left a guard of five cohorts for the rest of the baggage. 3. On being informed of the flight of the allies, he sent all the cavalry to the assistance of his men. 4. He found that a large part of the state was eager for a revolution. 5. We ought to burn the town, that it may not be of service to the Romans. 6. On the top of the hill he drew up a line of four legions. 7. Our men were so inexperienced in this kind of fighting that they were no match for the enemy.

B.—8. He sent large forces of infantry and cavalry to the town to support our men. 9. They persuaded Caesar not to give the Germans lands in Gaul. 10. This seems to me to be unlike that. 11. The bravest

and most skilful of the centurions of this legion have fallen in sight of their commander. 12. Who was in command of the cavalry that the Gauls had sent to aid Caesar? 13. The exploits of the Romans are unknown to none of us (are known to all of us). 14. A forest of vast size extends through the middle of the province.

C.—15. Everything was lacking to us which was of service; they reported to Caesar that there was the greatest scarcity of everything that was of service. 16. He assigned the warships to the legions, the transports to the cavalry. 17. On account of the length of the column, he feared for the whole army. 18. They had not yet heard the shouts of those who were coming to (their) aid. 19. Which of the two does he obey? He is obedient to the rule of neither. 20. He demanded three thousand horsemen from the rest of the state.

---

## LESSON LXXIV.

### REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES.

435. The accusative case as used in these lessons may be classified under six heads: Direct Object of transitive verbs (32), Predicate Accusative (54), Accusative with Prepositions (97, 98), Subject of Infinitive (complementary 123, indirect discourse 320), Accusative of Duration of Time (159) and Accusative of Extent of Space (231).

The accusative is used not only with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *contrā*, *in*, *inter*, *per*, *post*, *propter* and *trāns*, but with several others, of which the most important are *apud*, *circum*, *intrā*, *ob*, *praeter* and *sub*.



**436.** The ablative case as used in these lessons may be classified under nine heads: Ablative of Means (47, 145), including the ablative with **ūtor** (356); Ablative with Prepositions (97, 98), including the ablative of agent (144); Ablative of Time When (159); Ablative of Comparison (242); Ablative Absolute (298, 299, 303); Ablative of Quality (383); Ablative of Specification (414); Ablative of Manner (415); and Ablative of Separation (437).

The ablative is used not only with the prepositions **ab**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, **in** and **sine**, but with several others, of which the most important are **prō** and **sub**.

**437.****Illustrative Examples.**

**Agrīs expulsī, in Galliam trānseunt,** *being driven from their lands, they cross over into Gaul.*

**Inimīcōs ex finibus expellunt,** *they drive their enemies out of the state.*

**Ex finibus excēdunt,** *they withdraw from their territories,*  
**Finibus excēdunt,** *or, they leave their territories.*

- a.* The ablative in these sentences is used both with and without a preposition, to denote that from which there is removal or exclusion. This usage is called the *Ablative of Separation*.
- b.* The idea of separation is commonly expressed by the ablative with **ab**, **ex** or **dē**, especially in the literal local sense. With certain verbs, such as **excēdō**, **expellō**, **ēgredior**, **prohibeō**, **interclūdō**, **dējiciō** and **dēsistō** the preposition may either be used or be omitted; with verbs of *freeing*, *depriving* or *lacking* (such as **liberō**) the preposition is regularly omitted, as also with adjectives of *freedom* and *want*.



438.

## VOCABULARY.

apud, prep. w. acc.,	<i>with, among.</i>
circum, prep. w. acc.,	<i>around, about.</i>
dējiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum,	<i>cast down ; dislodge.</i>
dēsistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum,	<i>cease; abandon (with abl.)</i>
ēgredior, ī, ēgressus sum,	<i>go forth, leave.</i>
interclūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum,	<i>cut off.</i>
intrā, prep. w. acc.,	<i>within.</i>
liberō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>free.</i>
ob, prep. w. acc.,	<i>on account of, because of.</i>
praeter, prep. w. acc.,	<i>except.</i>
prō, prep. w. abl.,	<i>before, in front of.</i>
sub, prep. w. abl.,	<i>under, at foot of ; w. acc., close to.</i>
<i>Phrases : ob hanc rem, ob hanc causam, for this reason.</i>	

sub noctem, *at nightfall.*sub lūcem, *just before dawn.*itinere prohibeō (or interclūdō), *keep from marching, keep from advancing.*nāvī (or nāvibus) ēgredior, *land, disembark.*spē dējiciō, *disappoint in a hope (literally cast down from a hope).*

## EXERCISES.

439.

I.

A.—1. Locis superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. 2. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab Rōmānīs octō. 3. Omnēs praeter Rōmānōs virtūte atque ūsū bellī superāmus. 4. Sic pācem cum Germānīs cōfirmāvērunt, quibuscum multōs annōs continenter bellum gesserant. 5. Barbarī, eā spē dējectī, oppūgnātiōne dēsistunt. 6. Centuriō ipse prō castris fortissimē pūgnāns interficitur ; reliquī sēsē incolumēs

intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. 7. Docet ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs esse et incrēdibilī virtūte.

B.—8. Cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, sub altissimō monte cōsēdērunt. 9. Ob hās causās eīsdem nāvibus exercitum reportāvit quibus superiōre aestāte ūsus erat. 10. Rōmānōs rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfidēbant. 11. Accidit ut hīc vir apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus esset ac potentissimus. 12. Crēbris nūntiīs litterisque commōtus, dē fidē Belgārum dubitāre coepit. 13. Nōn aequum est Germānōs suis finibus ēgredi atque in Galliam trānsire. 14. Alii arbitrantur aggerem altiōrem esse mūrō, alii dēmōstrant aggerem vix pedēs duodēvigintī esse altum.

C.—15. Omnī periculō liberābit eōs quī sub imperiō populī Rōmānī sunt. 16. Dum haec apud Helvētiōs geruntur, per explōrātōrēs cōgnōscit hostēs māgnū spatium abesse. 17. Servitūtem aliō nōmine appellant; servitūtem dēditiōnem appellant. 18. Primā nocte ē castris ēgressi, eōdem quō vēnerant itinere ad Rhēnum contendunt. 19. Pecora dēdūcere suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōferre instituunt, eō cōsiliō\* ut frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibeant. 20. Tantā dīligentiā omnēs suōs intrā castra continēbat, ut hostēs suspicārentur nostrōs neque numerō neque virtūte sibi parēs esse.

## 440.

## II.

A.—1. At the beginning of the second watch, they left the camp amid (*literally* with) great commotion. 2. He learned that this island, Britain by name, was smaller than Gaul, but that the Britons were equal to the Gauls in number. 3. For this reason he filled with

\* Translate *With this design*, explained by the following substantive clause of purpose, in apposition with *cōsiliō*.

water two trenches fifteen feet wide (and) of the same depth. 4. We call boys sons, and girls daughters. 5. The soldiers who had been stationed on guard before the gates of the camp, throwing away their arms, took to flight. 6. Being dislodged from the wall and tower, they suddenly made a sortie from (*literally* by means of) all the gates. 7. He said that Caesar was doing more than he had promised.

B.—8. After waiting for several days, he set sail at nightfall; he proceeded by night eight miles; just before dawn he reached the harbour; at daybreak he disembarked. 9. Being freed from this danger, he ordered all the legions except the tenth to take up their position at the foot of the wall. 10. They will by no means keep the legions who are wintering about that town from marching. 11. They said they had marched twenty miles the preceding day before noon. 12. They are going to free the children whom they have been keeping with (*apud*) them in slavery. 13. Exhausted by their wounds, they withdraw (*excēdō*) from the battle.

C.—14. These towers were about two hundred feet apart. 15. As the enemy had hidden themselves in their thickest forests, he abandoned this plan. 16. He always has a large number of slaves about him, that he may be freed from all toil (*literally* toils). 17. They asked Caesar to keep the cavalry from fighting for three days. 18. At the first attack the enemy are thrown into confusion on the right wing, and are driven within their walls. 19. Burdened by the heavy weight of their arms, the legionary soldiers whom he had brought over hesitated to disembark. 20. Being unable to throw our ranks into confusion by this kind of fighting, they suddenly began a cavalry battle.



## 441.

## WORD LIST G.

N.B.—Words marked with an asterisk occur in the remaining Lessons LXXV. to LXXX.

## WAR.

commander-in-chief	make war	keep from
staff officer	*fight	marching
tribune	advance	unprotected flank
centurion	fall back	*obtain plunder
cavalry officer	cut off	adopt a plan
bring ( <i>or</i> give) aid	enclose	*carry out a plan
support (noun)	dislodge	be of service
encourage	supplies	be strong
pursue	*pillage	be superior
follow closely	fleet	*forage (verb)
overtake	*sail	disembark

## TIME.

at nightfall	already	fix a day
just before dawn	not yet	three days
*season	*beginning	at the beginning (of
*interval of time		summer, etc.)

## MISCELLANEOUS NOUNS.

magistrate	*vigour	rumour
young man	stature	name
revolution	voice	way, route
commotion	death	approach
*violence, force	slavery	kind, sort
by common consent	zeal	method
body	care	means

## ADJECTIVES AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

incredible	huge	skilful	
desirous	loud	inexperienced	
occupied	open	enough	
*any	*each	*some	*certain



## MISCELLANEOUS VERBS.

set about	carry	induce
do	cross	urge
be done	approach	warn
cause	go	command
build	return	advise
make, be made	restore	ask = request
*give an opportunity	enter	ask = inquire
*put an end to	go forth	consult
*set the example	collect	treat with
take thought	surround	entreat
be disappointed	free	obtain (a request)
be eager	become	acquire
report	cease	endure, bear
bring a report	surpass	submit to
carry back	satisfy	carry down

## READING LESSON XIV.

THE HONOUR OF FABRICIUS (280-278 B.C.).

442.

## VOCABULARY.

*cursus, ūs, m., course.**Ēpirus, ī, f., Epirus* (a district in the north of Greece).*Graecia, ae, f., Greece.**Graecus, a, um, Greek.**medicus, ī, m., physician.**orbis, is, m., circle; orbis terrarum, the world.**praemium, ī, n., reward.**pretium, ī, n., price, ransom.**sōl, sōlis, m., the sun.**Tarentīnī, ōrum, m., the Tarentines* (the inhabitants of Tarentum, a city in southern Italy).*venēnum, ī, n., poison.*

Rōmānī cum jam imperium tōtius ferē Ītalīae cōsecūtī essent, bellum Tarentīnīs, quī in īnferiōre parte Ītalīae incolēbant, intulērunt. Tarentīnī lēgātōs ad rēgem Ēpīrī, Pyrrhum nōmine, mīsērunt, quī peterent ut auxilium contrā Rōmānōs sibi ferret. Ēpīrus illō tempore longē plūrimum omnium cīvitatū Graeciae valēbat, et Graecī milītēs omnibus cēterīs virtūte et ūsū rei milītāris praestāre exīstimābantur. Pyrrhus, vir summae virtūtis ac bellī perītissimus, pollicitus est sē auxilium quod peterent lēgātī lātūrum esse, atque in Ītaliā nōn solum māgnās cōpias equitatūs peditatūsque trānsdūxit sed etiam complūrēs elephantōs (*elephants*) quibus Rōmānī in bellō ūtī nōn cōsueverant.

Hūjus generis pūgnae Rōmānī tam imperītī erant ut primō hostibus nōn parēs essent. Ingentī māgnitūdine elephantōrum perterritī pedem rettulērunt, et ordinibus perturbātis, māgnus numerus milītum captus atque interfectus est. Sed tam ācriter restiterant ut Pyrrhus post proelium dīceret sē, cum milītibz tantae virtūtis, facile orbem terrārum superāre posse. Ob hanc causam dē victoriā dēspērāvisse vidētur, atque aliā ratiōne superāre īstituīsse. Nam (*for*) cum Rōmānī lēgātōs ad Pyrrhum dē captīvīs mīsissent, rēx novum cōsilium īniit, atque ut amīcitiam populī Rōmānī cōsequerētur, respondit sē captīvōs quōs habēret sine pretiō reddītūrum.

Hūjus lēgatiōnis princeps fuit Cāius Fabricius, vir fidēlissimus ac prūdētissimus, quī cōsul fuerat et māgnae inter civēs auctōritātis erat. Hunc virum rēx māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur. Itaque (*therefore*) Fabricium ad sē vocat atque quid fierī velit ostendit; hortātur eum ut Rōmānōs moneat ut pācem sēcum

faciant, atque ex illā parte Italiae discēdant. Simul pollicitus est sē Fabriciō incredibilia praemia datūrum esse. Sed nullō omnīnō modō Fabriciō persuādere poterat, atque eā spē dējectus, hōc cōnsiliō dēstitit. Atque lēgātī, quī ad senātum ab rēge missī erant, renūntiāvērunt Rōmānōs pācem numquam cum eīs factūrōs esse quī suis finibus ēgressī essent atque in Rōmānum agrum trāsiissent.

Proximō annō Rōmānī rūsus pulsī sunt et in fugam conjectī; sed Pyrrhus tam multōs ex suis āmisit ut vix praestāre viderētur superāre quam superārī. Hīs proeliis factis, tertiō annō bellī Fabricius cōsul fit et contrā Pyrrhum cum exercitū initā aestāte proficiscitur. Dum Rōmānī bellum parant, medicus Pyrrhī nocte ad Fabricium venit et dēmōstrat sē parātum esse Pyrrhum interficere. “Sī satis māgnū praemium” inquit (*said he*) “mihi dederis, ego in castra hostium redībō atque rēgem, quī dē fidē meā nōn dubitat, venēnō necābō.”

Hunc Fabricius statim ad Pyrrhum redūcī jussit, et unā cum cō nūntium mīsīt quī hās litterās ad rēgem dēferret: “Tū, Pyrrhe, malīs hominibus cōfidere vidēris, bonīs bellum īfers. Cōsul Rōmānus tē monet ut mājore cum diligentiā salūtī tuae cōsulās. Hīc medicus tam nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperītus erat ut nōn scīret Rōmānōs nullā aliā ratiōne quam virtūte hostēs sūperāre cōsuēvisse.” Hīs litterīs acceptis, Pyrrhus māgnā vōce dīxit facilius esse sōlem ā cursū āvertere (*to turn aside*) quam Fabriciō persuādere ut injūriam ūllam faceret.

Post complūrēs annōs, cum jam Rōmānī nullō modō hīs victōriīs commovērī vidērentur, Pyrrhus, tertiō proeliō superātus, ab Italiā discēdere cōstituit, neque postea (*thereafter*) populō Rōmānō bellum īferre ausus est.



## LESSON LXXV.

## GERUND.

443.

## Paradigms.

## GERUND.

	<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Dative.</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>	<i>Ablative.</i>
<i>Conj. I.</i>	amandī	amandō	amandum	amandō
<i>Conj. II.</i>	monendī	monendō	monendum	monendō
<i>Conj. III.</i>	regendī	regendō	regendum	regendō
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	audiendī	audiendō	audiendum	audiendō
<i>Conj. III. in -iō</i>	capiendī	capiendō	capiendum	capiendō
<b>Ferō</b>	ferendī	ferendō	ferendum	ferendō
<b>Eō</b>	eundī	eundō	eundum	eundō

## DEPONENTS.

<i>Conj. I.</i>	cōnandī	cōnandō	cōnandum	cōnandō
<i>Conj. II.</i>	verendī	verendō	verendum	verendō
<i>Conj. III.</i>	sequendī	sequendō	sequendum	sequendō
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	sortiendī	sortiendō	sortiendum	sortiendō
<i>Conj. III. in -ior</i>	patiendī	patiendō	patiendum	patiendō

a. The *Gerund* is a verbal noun found only in the genitive, dative, accusative and ablative singular. It is formed from the present stem and belongs to the active voice, being one of the few active forms possessed by deponent verbs. Of the irregular verbs, only **ferō** and **eō** have the gerund.

444.

## Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnandī cupidī sunt, *they are fond of fighting.*

Pūgnandī causā prōgrediuntur, *they advance for the purpose of fighting (or, in order to fight).*

Ad pūgnandum inūtilēs erant, } *they were useless for*  
 Ad pūgnam inūtilēs erant, } *fighting.*



- a. The Latin gerund corresponds closely in use to the English gerund or verbal noun in *-ing*.\* It seldom occurs except in the genitive with adjectives and nouns (especially with **causa**), and in the accusative with the preposition **ad**, meaning *with a view to, for*.†

445.

## VOCABULARY.

bellō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>make war.</i>
dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>fight, engage.</i>
frūmentor, ārī, ātus sum,	<i>forage.</i>
initium, ī, n.,	<i>beginning.</i>
nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>sail (with in and acc. = to).</i>
praedor, ārī, ātus sum,	<i>plunder, pillage.</i>

*Phrases* : facultātem dare, } *give an opportunity.*  
 potestātem facere, }  
 finem facere, *make an end of, put an end to*  
 (with genitive).  
 initium facere, *be the first to, set the example*  
 of (with genitive).

## EXERCISES.

446.

## I

- A.—1. Reliquās nāvēs parātās ad nāvigandum invēnit.  
 2. Cōgnōverat equitātum praedandī frūmentandīque causā trāns flūmen missum esse. 3. Spērābat fore

\* The distinction between the participle and the gerund, both ending in English in *-ing*, though with different endings in Latin, should be carefully observed. Contrast the following :

## PARTICIPLE.

*He saw them fleeing.*  
*Rising early, we set out at once.*  
*We lost sight of those crossing the river.*

## GERUND.

*They are ashamed of fleeing.*  
*Rising early will be beneficial.*  
*We lost much time in crossing the river.*

† The nominative of the gerund is replaced in Latin by the present infinitive (124); as, **Facile est haec facere**, *doing this is easy* (literally *to do this is easy*).

nūllam fugiendī facultātem. 4. Cōpiās bellandī causā trādūxerat. 5. Hunc ad ēgrediendum idōneum locum arbitrātur. 6. In mediīs Belgārum fīnibus hiemandī causā cōnsēderat. 7. Altera pars exercitūs itinere prohibenda est. 8. Caesar omnibus obsidibus quī apud sē erant discēdendī potestātem fēcit. 9. Cum hostēs trāseundī initium nōn fēcissent, Caesar suōs intrā castra redūxit. 10. Monet eōs ut finem ōrandī faciant.

B.—11. Ea quae ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. 12. Equitēs frūmentandī causā praemit-tendī erant. 13. In hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocat. 14. Cūr nōn flendī finem faciunt? 15. Spē bellandī dējectī erant. 16. Potestās revertendī deerat. 17. Helvētīi erant tam bellandī cupidī ut continenter fīnitimīs bellum īferrent. 18. Cotīdiē īnstrūctā aciē, pūgnandī potestātem facit. 19. Cum finem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, lēgātī dē dēditiōne ad eum vērunt. 20. Quīnque cohortēs, quās nōn satis fīrmās ad dīmīcandum esse existimābat, praesidiō castrīs relīquit.

## 447.

## II.

A.—1. They had been summoned for the purpose of consulting. 2. Several ships had been shattered, and the rest were useless for sailing. 3. They again left the camp in order to pillage. 4. He is desirous of returning here. 5. After that time there will not be an opportunity of coming. 6. The example of fleeing is set by the cavalry. 7. They are equal neither in number nor in zeal for\* fighting. 8. These nations are eager for making war, but they are not ready for (ad) war. 9. No opportunity of leaping down is given. 10. He perceived that those who had crossed the river in order to forage had not yet returned.

---

\*See 432. N.B.

B.—11. For these reasons the difficulty of sailing was very great. 12. He had now got suitable weather for setting out. 13. The spirit of the enemy is so ready for engaging, that time is lacking for these matters. 14. This was the reason for (*literally* cause of) crossing. 15. They have not yet put an end to the pursuit (*literally* made an end of following). 16. Which of the two was the first to set out? 17. Large forces had assembled for the purpose of making war. 18. Suddenly making a sally, they left the enemy no opportunity of finding out what was being done. 19. They are skilled both in resisting and in pursuing. 20. They scarcely ventured to send an embassy for the purpose of persuading Caesar not to advance.



Portus et Classis: Harbour and Fleet.



## LESSON LXXVI.

## GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.

448. In the sentences of the previous lesson no example occurred of a gerund with an object in the accusative, such as, **Hīs potestātem facit lēgātōs mittendī**, *he gives them the opportunity of sending envoys*. This construction is found in Latin, but as a rule is avoided (regularly so after prepositions).

In preference to the gerund governing the accusative, Latin uses the gerundive construction (449).

## 449. Illustrative Examples.

**Summa erat difficultās** *the difficulty of building the*  
     { **faciendī pontis,** *bridge was very great.*  
     { **(faciendī pontem),**

**Lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt** *they sent envoys to him for*  
     { **pācis petendae causā,** *the purpose of seeking*  
     { **(pācem petendī causā),** *peace.*

**Nāvēs sunt inūtilēs ad cōpiās** *the ships are useless for*  
     **portandās,** *carrying troops.*

a. In all such sentences as these, Latin prefers not to use the gerund governing a substantive in the accusative (as in the phrases in parentheses), but instead, puts the substantive in the case in which the gerund would have been, and uses the gerundive in agreement with it. This usage is termed the *Gerundive Construction*.\*

450. (a) A more literal rendering of the Latin sentences in 449 would be as follows :—

*The difficulty of the bridge to be built was very great ;*  
*They send envoys to him for the sake of peace to be sought ;*  
*The ships are useless with a view to troops to be carried.*

---

\* With intransitive verbs, including those like **persuādeō** which take the dative case (355), the gerund, not the gerundive construction, is used.



One should in all cases, however, translate the gerundive construction as he would the corresponding construction with the gerund, i.e., by a verbal noun in *-ing* in the active voice followed by an object.

(b) The same meaning is thus expressed by two widely differing grammatical constructions :—

The gerund is a verbal *noun*, of the *active* voice, governing its object ; the gerundive is a verbal *adjective*, of the *passive* voice, agreeing with its substantive.

451. It should be observed that the gerund and the gerundive with *causā* or with *ad* furnish additional ways of expressing purpose in Latin ; these constructions are confined, however, to short clauses. Thus the sentence, *They sent envoys to him for the purpose of seeking peace*, may be translated :—

Lēgātōs ad eum mīserunt	{	pācis petendae causā (449)
		ad pācem petendam (449)
		ut pācem peterent (386)
		quī pācem peterent (388)

(For a fifth method see 470.)

N.B.—Here also should be reviewed the passive periphrastic conjugation, the other common use of the gerundive (346-348).

#### 452. VOCABULARY.

occupātus, a, um, *occupied, busy, engaged.*

spatium, ī, n., *space, time, interval.*

*Phrases :* praedam faciō, *obtain plunder.*

tempus annī, *season, time of year.*

rēs cōficiō, *complete arrangements, carry out plans.*

N.B.—*Spatium* is chiefly used of the time required or left for doing something, or of an interval of time.

## EXERCISES.

453.

I.

A.—1. In agrīs vāstandīs occupātī erant. 2. Rūrsus ad īnsequendōs hostēs proficīscitur. 3. Caesar in hīs locīs nāvium parandārum causā morābātur. 4. Quanta praedae faciendae facultās darētur dēmōstrāvērunt. 5. Ā Caesare petēbant ut ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. 6. Spē expūgnandī oppidī adductus, mājōrēs cōpiās cōgere coepit. 7. Omnia deerant quae ad pontem faciendum ūsuī erant. 8. Praedandī ac bellī īferendī causā trānsierant.

B.—9. Ad eam regiōnem vāstandam equitātum ēmisit. 10. Ējus locī relinquendī facultās paucīs dabitur. 11. Nāvēs lātiōrēs faciendae sunt ad multitudinem equōrum trānsportandam. 12. Nēminem bellī īferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. 13. Nōne dīxistis vōs esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimōs? 14. Dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō hōc cōsiliū inierat. 15. Ad eas rēs cōficiendās negant trīduum sibi satis esse. 16. Multis dē causīs acciderat ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī populōque Rōmānō resistendī cōsiliū caperent.

454.

II.

A.—1. They assemble from all sides to defend the town (the camp, the province, the fortifications, their allies). 2. The next day he set out for the province in order to ask aid. 3. On account of the season he had no opportunity of waging war. 4. They had formed this plan of injuring the enemy. 5. They are occupied in fortifying the camp and in foraging. 6. Time had not been given them for (ad) drawing their swords or hurling their missiles. 7. He answered that this legion should be sent for the purpose of seeking supplies.

B.—9. A young man of great influence among the Gauls is chosen to carry out these plans. 10. The opportunity must not be given them of marching through the province. 11. Raising a shout, they hasten to the edge (*literally* beginning) of the woods in order to give aid. 12. He sends several scouts in advance to ascertain these things. 13. In forming their plans they never take thought for themselves. 14. The season was scarcely suitable for sailing to Britain. 15. As time had not been left for encouraging the soldiers, he at once gave the signal for (*literally* of) joining battle. 16. He chose a suitable place before the camp for drawing up the line of battle.

## LESSON LXXVII.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. REVIEW OF PRONOUNS.

455.

#### Paradigm.

#### THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN, **quis**.

		SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	{	quis	qua	quid	quī	quae	qua
	{	quī	(quae)	quod			(quae)
<i>Gen.</i>		cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>		cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	{	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	qua
	{			quod			(quae)
<i>Abl.</i>		quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Compare the declension of **quis** indefinite with that of **quis** interrogative (341) and **quī** relative (254).

The forms **quis** and **quid** are used as pronouns, **quī** and **quod** as pronominal adjectives in agreement with a noun. The feminine is used only as an adjective.



456. (a) Certain compounds also of **quis** or **quī** are used as indefinite pronouns. Such are :—

aliquis, aliquī	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
quisquam		quidquam (quicquam)
quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque
quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
quīvīs	quaevīs	quidvīs, quodvīs

(b) **Aliquī** and the forms with **quod** are used as adjectives. It should be further noticed that only **quis** and **aliquis** have **qua** in the nominative singular feminine and nominative and accusative plural neuter; the other compounds have **quae**.

(c) **Aliquis** is declined in every respect like **quis**. **Quisquam**, **quisque**, **quīdam** and **quīvīs** are declined like **quis** or **quī** with the syllables **-quam**, **-que**, **-dam** and **-vīs** respectively suffixed to each form. But **quisquam** has only the masculine and neuter singular in use, and in the declension of **quīdam**, as in that of **īdem** (306), **m** becomes **n** before **d**, e.g. **quendam** for **quemdam**.

(d) Another indefinite pronoun is **uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque**, a compound of **uter**, and declined like it (205, 208).

## 457.

## Illustrative Examples.

**Cohortem ibi collocāvit nē quis flūmen trānsīret**, *he stationed a cohort there lest anyone should cross the river.*

**Negat sē cuiquam nocuisse**, *he denies that he has injured anyone.*

**Negat se ūllī cīvitatī nocuisse**, *he denies that he has injured any state.*

**Ad quemvīs numerum hostium adīre audent**, *they dare to advance against any number of the enemy.*



- a. Of the various Latin words meaning *any*, **quis** is used after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē** and **num**; **quisquam** is used as a pronoun and **ūllus** as an adjective, in negative sentences\*, where the idea of *no one* or *none* is suggested; **quīvis** (meaning *anyone you wish*) is used in affirmative sentences, where the idea of *any and every* is suggested.

458.

Illustrative Examples.

**Aliquis** reperiētur, *some one will be found.*  
**Nōnnūllōs** ex suis āmittunt, *they lose some of their men.*  
**Quīdam** Gallus dēligitur, *a certain Gaul is chosen.*

- a. **Aliquis** (generally singular) means *some or other*, as opposed to *none*, but quite indefinite. **Nōnnūllī** (generally plural) has the force of *some few, a number*. **Quīdam** means *some, or a certain number*, of what is not specified, but might be specified more exactly if necessary. *Some . . . others* is to be translated by **aliī . . . aliī** (207).

459.

Illustrative Examples.

**Mīlitum** quemque cōsistere jubet, *he orders each of the soldiers to take up his position.*

**In utrāque** rīpā flūminis dīmicābant, *they were fighting on each bank (or on both banks) of the river.*

- a. Of the two Latin words meaning *each*, **quisque** is used when more than two are spoken of, and is especially frequent with the reflexive†; **uterque** means *each of two*, and thus, by a free translation, *both*. Compare **uter** and **neuter** (208).

---

\* This will include clauses containing such words as **vix**, **nequē** and **sine**.

† **Quisque** regularly follows the reflexive, as **sibi quemque, suum cuique**.

460. The various classes of pronouns should now be reviewed. The pronouns are classified as follows :—

Personal pronouns (266, 267).

Reflexive pronouns (277, 278).

Possessive pronouns (279-281).

Demonstrative pronouns (292, 293 ; 306, 307).

Relative pronouns (254, 255).

Interrogative pronouns (340, 341).

Indefinite pronouns (455-459).

#### EXERCISES.

461.

I.

A.—1. Stationēs positae sunt nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret. 2. Sibi quemque cōsulere jussit. 3. Cuidam ex equitibus persuādet ut sēcum proficiscātur. 4. Neque obsidēs vōbīs dabimus neque cūjusquam imperiō pārēbimus. 5. Sic accidit ut neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis āmitterētur. 6. Aliquōs ex utrāque nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexit. 7. Cōsiliō eōrum probātō, ipse cōdem itinere in prōvinciam nostram revertitur. 8. Accidit ut nōnnūllī milītēs praesidiō relictī essent. 9. Postulāsne ā mē nē quam multitūdinem hominum ex Germāniā in Galliam trādūcam? 10. Equitēs post fugam suōrum sē in finēs Germānōrum recēperant, sēque cum iis conjūxerant.

B.—11. Ob eam rem eundem numerum obsidum cuique civitātī imperat. 12. Clāmōre sublātō, ab utrōque latere impetum fēcērunt. 13. Cum quibusdam prīncipibus vult agere. 14. Ad hunc sē ab illō omnēs convertunt. 15. Praestat quidvis patī quam nōs dēdere. 16. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut graviter premī vidēbuntur, vōs subsidiō mittam. 17. Quantam quisque multitūdinem ad id bellum pollicitus

esset, cōgnōverant. 18.  $\bar{E}$  suis aliquem ad tē mittet. 19. Alii spērant sē bellum sine ūllō labōre et periculō cōfectūrōs. 20. Ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant neque quisquam proeliō excēdēbat.

462.

I.

A.—1. He says that he cannot give any lands to us. 2. For that reason he summoned to him the leading men of each state. 3. The leaders of both armies (*literally* each army) are unwilling to set the example of recalling the cavalry. 4. On the same day a means of approach was observed by a certain soldier. 5. We hope to have some opportunity of following. 6. He ordered all the horses to be removed, lest any hope remain (*literally* be left) in flight. 7. Embassies were sent to him from some (other, the other, certain, these, the same, both, no) states. 8. Some were unwilling to give up their arms, others preferred to surrender. 9. Scarcely anyone visits that island except sailors.

B.—10. You must build the ships sufficiently strong to stand any storm. 11. He himself informed us that all the other Belgians were in arms, and that the Germans had joined them. 12. Certain of these came to him that same day. 13. They asked him to choose some place for the meeting; they ask me not to choose anyone for this business. 14. They compel us to report what each of us has heard about each matter. 15. If anyone learns anything, he will report (it) to the magistrates. 16. Our men are hard pressed and no (*literally* and not any) reinforcements can be sent. 17. He begged that they should injure no one (*literally* that they should not injure anyone). 18. He advised them to say nothing.



## LESSON LXXVIII.

IMPERATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.

463.

## Paradigms.

## THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	(a) <i>Active Voice.</i>		(b) <i>Irregular Verbs.</i>		
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
<i>Conj. I.</i>	amā	amāte	<b>Sum</b>	es	este
<i>Conj. II.</i>	monē	monēte	<b>Nōlō</b>	nōlī	nōlīte
<i>Conj. III.</i>	rege	regite	<b>Eō</b>	ī	īte
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	audī	audīte	<b>Ferō</b>	fer*	ferite
<i>Conj. III. (in -iō)</i>	cape	capite			
	(c) <i>Passive Voice.</i>		(d) <i>Deponents.</i>		
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
<i>Conj. I.</i>	amāre	amāminī	cōnāre	cōnāminī	
<i>Conj. II.</i>	monēre	monēminī	verēre	verēminī	
<i>Conj. III.</i>	regere	regiminī	sequere	sequiminī	
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	audīre	audīminī	sortīre	sortīminī	
<i>Conj. III. (in -ior)</i>	capere	capiminī	patere	patiminī	

a. In the case of the regular verbs, notice the relation in form of the endings of the singular of the imperative (active, passive and deponent) to the endings of the present infinitive active (122), and also of the endings of the plural of the imperative (passive and deponent) to the endings of the second plural present indicative passive (165).

464.

## Illustrative Examples.

Mihi crēde,	<i>believe me.</i>
Ēgredere ex oppidō,	<i>leave the town.</i>
Nōlī ex oppidō ēgredī,	<i>do not leave the town.</i>
Nōlīte cēdere,	<i>do not yield.</i>

\* The imperative singular of **dīcō**, **dūcō** and **faciō** is similarly shortened to **dīc**, **dūc** and **fac**.



- a.* The simple imperative is used, as in these sentences, to express commands and entreaties, while in prohibitions (*i.e.* negative commands and entreaties) the imperative of **nōlō** is used with a complementary infinitive.

465. Illustrative Examples.

**Redeāmus,** *let us return.*  
**Captīvus interficiātur,** *let the prisoner be put to death.*  
**Nē redire audeant,** *let them not venture to return.*

- a.* While the subjunctive in Latin is most commonly found in dependent sentences, it is also used in independent sentences with varying meanings. One such usage is illustrated in these sentences, namely, that which is sometimes termed the *Volitive Subjunctive* (from **volō**, *I will*). The volitive subjunctive is used in the present tense (*a*) in the first person (plural) to express an exhortation, and (*b*) in the third person (singular or plural) to express a command. The negative is **nē**, not **nōn**; the subject is of course in the nominative (contrast the English construction).\*

466. Illustrative Examples.

**Facultās nōbīs dētur,** *may an opportunity be given us.*  
**Incolumēs redeātis,** *may you return in safety.*  
**Nē hōc accidat,** *may this not happen.*

- a.* The present subjunctive is also used independently to express a wish that something may or may not take place, the negative being **nē**. This usage is termed the *Optative Subjunctive* (from **optō**, *I desire*).

---

\* When the subjunctive expresses an exhortation, it is often termed the Hortatory Subjunctive, and when expressing a command the Jussive Subjunctive, from **hortor** and **jubeō** respectively.

## EXERCISES.

467.

I.

A.—1. Māgnā vōce suōs hortātur, “In fluctūs dē-silīte, mīlitēs. Nōlīte dubitāre nāvī ēgredī.” 2. Nē in dēditiōnem veniāmus. 3. Nē quod incommodum accipiant. 4. Auxilium nōbīs fer, Caesar; pedem referte, mīlitēs. 5. Omnis senātus necētur. 6. Hōc utrīque ūsuī sit. 7. Adorīminī agmen novissimum. 8. Signa convertite; sīgna īferantur. 9. Nōlī perturbārī; gladium dēstringe. 10. Aliud cōnsilium incāmus. 11. Īte; redīte; revertiminī. 12. Sibi quisque cōsulat.

B.—13. Tertiā initā vigiliā, loca superiōra occupentur. 14. Fīnem facite dīmicanđī; nōlīte initium facere fugae. 15. Alter equitātuī praesit, alter cohortibus. 16. Patere nōs praedam facere. 17. Hās litterās dēfer ad mātrem meam. 18. Omnī periculō liberer. 19. Inimīcī populi Rōmānī civitatē expellantur. 20. Hārum rērum gestārū nōlīte memoriā dēpōnere; memoria amīcitiae nostrae semper retineātur. 21. Rē frūmentāriā nē interclūdāmur. 22. Aliquam facultātem nōbīs dā praedae faciendae. 23. Bonō animō es. 24. Haec, quae petimus, impetrēmus.

468.

II.

A.—1. Let us await the fleet there. 2. Let us not delay here (any) longer. 3. Do not make war on us. 4. May they not be put to flight; may they not suffer defeat. 5. Set out along with us. 6. Be prudent; do not be bold. 7. May you attain your freedom. 8. Let someone be present. 9. Spare us; do not injure anyone. 10. At the same time let an attack be made on the unprotected flank. 11. Let us not despair of safety;

do not despair of the state. 12. Let the forces be increased; may the number of defenders increase.

B.—13. Let us not turn and flee. 14. Appoint a day for the meeting. 15. May your influence be very strong with them. 16. Set sail at midnight; disembark just before dawn. 17. Let the legion be led thither in light marching order. 18. Follow closely the Gauls fleeing towards the river; do not give them any opportunity of fleeing into Germany. 19. Let us take up arms at the beginning of spring. 20. May we not be disappointed in this hope. 21. Do not fear for the ships. 22. Let us keep the Romans from marching. 23. Abandon the assault. 24. Let bad citizens lose their citizenship.

# LESSON LXXIX.

## SUPINE. REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS.

469.

### Paradigm.

#### THE SUPINE.

*Conj. I. Conj. II. Conj. III. Conj. IV. Conj. III.*  
(in -iō.)

Acc.	amātum	monitum	rēctum	audītum	captum
ABL.	amātū	monitū	rēctū	audītū	captū

a. The *Supine* is a verbal noun (with active force) of the fourth declension, and found only in the accusative and ablative singular.

b. The principal parts of the verb include one which is identical in form with the supine, and which is therefore said to furnish the supine stem. But as the supine is a form of rare occurrence in Latin, many grammars prefer to regard this principal part as the neuter singular of the perfect participle passive, and to speak therefore of the participial (not the supine) stem.



470.

Illustrative Examples.

*Lēgātōs ad eum mīserunt pācem petītum, they sent envoys to him to seek peace.*

*Facile est factū, it is easy to do (literally in the doing).*

- a. The accusative supine is used, as in the first sentence, to denote purpose, after verbs of motion, such as **veniō, mittō, eō**.
- b. The ablative supine is used, as in the second sentence, to state in what respect a statement or term is applicable. Compare the ablative of specification (414). This usage is found chiefly with the supines **factū** and **dictū**, after such adjectives as **facilis, difficilis** and **optimus**.
- c. The accusative supine furnishes a fifth (though infrequent) mode of expressing purpose, in addition to those given in 451.

471. (a) With the exception of the comparatively rare future imperative (active and passive) and future infinitive passive, all the regular forms of the Latin verb have now been studied, and may be reviewed at this stage.

(b) The Latin verb has :—

two voices, Active and Passive (Deponent verbs being an important exception);

four regular conjugations (including the verbs of the third conjugation in **-iō**); in addition to the regular conjugations, there are also the active and passive periphrastic conjugations, and certain irregular verbs, especially **sum, possum, ferō, eō, fiō, volō, nōlō** and **mālō**.

the indicative mood (active and passive), with six tenses (present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect and future perfect);



the subjunctive mood (active and passive), with four tenses (present, imperfect, perfect and pluperfect);  
 the imperative mood (active and passive), with two divisions sometimes called present and future;  
 the infinitive (active and passive), with three tenses (present, perfect and future);  
 the participles, including the present and future participles of the active voice, and the perfect participle and the gerundive of the passive voice.  
 the gerund and the supine of the active voice.

472.

## VOCABULARY.

*nisi, if not; unless, except.*

*rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, ask.\**

*vīs, irregular, f., in singular, force, violence, might; in plural, strength, vigour.*

N.B.—*Vīs* has in the singular the nominative *vīs*, accusative *vim*, and ablative *vī*, in common use; the plural is *vīrēs, vīrium, vīribus, vīrēs, vīrēs, vīribus*.

## EXERCISES.

473.

## I.

A.—1. Dum ea geruntur, legiō ex cōsuētūdine ūna frūmentātum missa est. 2. Facilius est dictū quam factū. 3. Nāvēs factae sunt ad quamvīs vim perferendam. 4. Lēgātōs ad eōs mittit, rōgātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcant. 5. Vī coāctī erant commeātum ad eum portāre. 6. Negant sē quidquam nisi commūnī cōsiliō āctūrōs esse. 7. Prīncipātū dējectī,† novīs rēbus studēbant. 8. Pedestrēs cōpiās ēductūrus est; ab hōc cōsiliō dēterrendus est. 9. Respondet optimum‡ factū esse flūmen ponte jungere. 10. Vīrēs mīlitum integrae esse videntur.

\* *Rogō* is used like both *petō* and *quaerō* (426. fn.), but with acc.

† Translate *dējiciō* here by *deprive*.

‡ Translate *the best thing to do*; similarly 19.

B.—11. Cēterī, cum haec animadvertissent, sua omnia in oppida contulērunt. 12. Scīsne quō eās? Num terrēminī? Nōnne ūtilissimum erit? 13. Datō signō, ē castrīs ērumpant; ēruptiōnem faciant; ēruptiō fiat. 14. Eum locum, quem probāverat, duplicī mūrō firmāre instituit. 15. Hīs rēbus permōtī, māgnopere perturbābantur; nāvibus verēbar. 16. Ubi habitātis? Incolimus extrēmōs finēs Belgārum. 17. Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs. 18. Monitum vēnimus tē, nōn ōrātum. 19. Facile factū est propius accēdere. 20. Lēgātī vōbīs ad Caesarem satis faciendī causā mittendī erant.

## 474.

## II.

A.—1. He sends out five cohorts to forage. 2. Nothing is easier to say. 3. They ask what is best to do. 4. Being unable to defend themselves, they sent envoys to Caesar to ask aid. 5. So great a storm has arisen that we cannot endure the violence of the waves. 6. What do you wish except to seize our lands by (per) violence? 7. No one has yielded; some have fallen. 8. We shall be seen by someone; we were approaching the sea. 9. We found the soldiers occupied in pitching the camp. 10. They met the foot-soldiers fleeing. 11. This report will be borne to the most distant regions.

B.—12. They had rushed out of the camp that they might not be surrounded. 13. The swiftest of the warships had been shattered; a shout arises. 14. Let us dare to endure anything; we shall go out (excō) lest we hear anything. 15. He put his brother in command of the left wing; he himself was in command of the right. 16. They remember that this will be very difficult to do. 17. The commanders of cavalry had not yet perceived what was being done (*use both*

agō *and* faciō). 18. He is said to have been superior in strength of body. 19. They will surround (*use both* circumveniō *and* circumdō); they will restore; they will return (*use both* redeō *and* revertor). 20. On his approach they send envoys to ask reinforcements, that they may be able to withstand the might of the enemy.

### LESSON LXXX.

#### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVE.

475. A *conditional sentence* is a complex sentence consisting of two clauses: (*a*) a subordinate clause containing some supposition, and introduced usually in English by *if* or *unless*, in Latin by **sī** or **nisi**; (*b*) a principal clause containing the conclusion which follows the supposition. These clauses are termed respectively the *Protasis* and the *Apodosis*.

In conditional sentences in Latin both the indicative and the subjunctive are used, but regularly the same mood occurs in both clauses, that is, either both clauses have the indicative or both have the subjunctive.

#### 476. Illustrative Examples.

**Sī Rōmānus cīvis est, liber est,** *if he is a Roman citizen, he is free.*

**Sī hōc fēcērunt, inimicī erant,** *if they did this, they were enemies.*

- a.* These sentences present a form of conditional sentence referring to present or past time, which states what logically follows upon something which may or may not be true. The indicative mood is used in both English and Latin, the tenses having their usual values.



477.

## Illustrative Examples.

**Sī Caesar adesset, ācrius pūgnārent,** *if Caesar were present, they would fight more vigorously.*

**Sī Caesar adfuisset, ācrius pūgnāvissent,** *if Caesar had been present, they would have fought more vigorously.*

- a. These sentences also refer to present or past time, but they do not deal with a supposed case which may or may not be true. Rather, it is implied that as a matter of fact Caesar was *not* present, and therefore the fighting was *not* so vigorous. In conditional sentences *contrary to fact*, Latin uses the subjunctive in both clauses, the imperfect subjunctive for present time, the pluperfect subjunctive for past time.

478.

## Illustrative Examples.

(1) **Sī obsidēs miserint, pācem faciēmus,** *if they send hostages, we shall make peace.*

**Sī amīcī esse vidēbuntur, cōpiās redūcet,** *if they (shall) seem to be friendly, he will lead back his troops.*

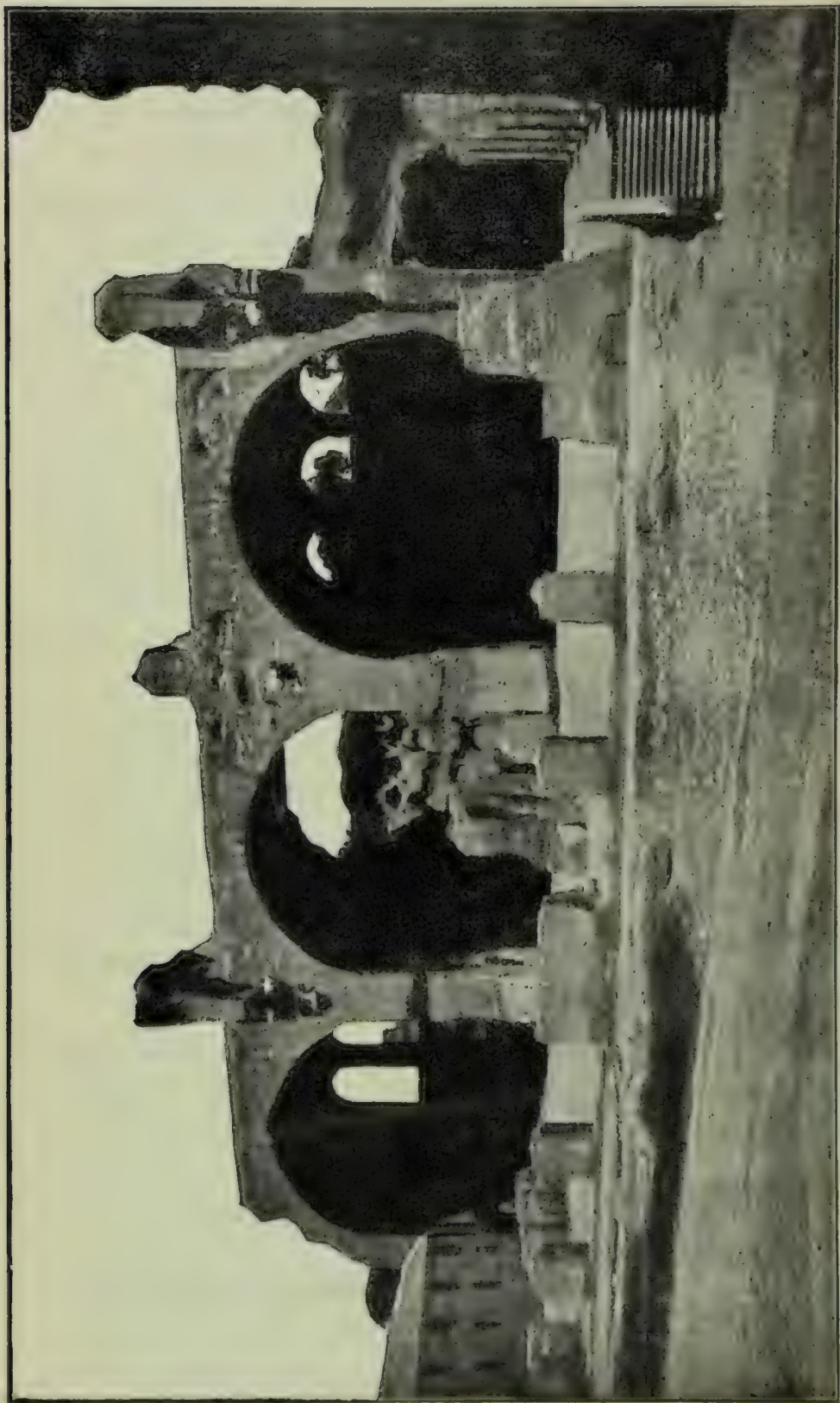
(2) **Sī obsidēs mittant, pācem faciāmus,** *if they were to send hostages, we should make peace.*

**Sī amīcī esse videantur, cōpiās redūcat,** *if they should seem to be friendly, he would lead back his troops.*

- a. All these conditional sentences refer to the future. The two groups of suppositions and conclusions relate to the same state of affairs, but the latter group (2) refers to them less simply and directly than the former (1), treating them rather as conceivable cases. These two groups are often distinguished as the *more vivid* and the *less vivid* form of future conditions.







THE BASILICA OF CONSTANTINE.

*b.* It will be noticed that in the more vivid future conditional sentences, English ordinarily uses *shall* or *will*, and in the less vivid, *should* or *would* or *were to*; and further that in the protasis of the more vivid form Latin has the future or future perfect indicative (for the use of these tenses review 224), and in both clauses of the less vivid form the present subjunctive.

479. Two methods of classifying these four kinds of conditional sentences may be suggested:—

*a.* First method:

Present or Past Time	{ Simple (476). Contrary to Fact (477).
Future Time	{ More vivid (478, 1). Less vivid (478, 2).

*b.* Second method:

Logical	{ Present or past time (476). Future time (478, 1).
Ideal (478, 2).	
Unreal (477).	

480. The following uses of the Latin subjunctive have now been studied:—

In indirect questions (362).

In clauses of purpose—

adverbial, with **ut** or **nē** (386).

relative, with **quī** (388).

substantive, with **ut** or **nē** (424).

In clauses of result (371).

With **cum**, causal or temporal (397).

In subordinate clauses in indirect discourse (408)

In conditional sentences (477, 478).

In independent clauses of exhortation, command or wish (465, 466).

## EXERCISES.

481.

I.

A.—1. Māgna praedae faciendae facultās dabitur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulerimus. 2. Si hōc fēcissent, vīribus corporum praestitissent. 3. Sī periculōsum hōc esse existimās, cūr nōn aliquem mittis quī auxilium rōget? 4. Si primī ōrdinēs graviter prementur, auxilium ferēmus. 5. Sī hanc rem impetret, omnī periculō liberētur. 6. Nisi subsidium noctū missum esset, diūtius vim hostium sustinēre nōn potuissēmus. 7. Etiam sī ācerrimē factus crit impetus, pedem nōn referēmus sed prō castrīs pūgnantēs cadēmus. 8. Sī obsidēs ā vōbīs Caesarī dentur, ut ea quae polliceāminī vōs facturōs intellegat, pācem vōbīscum faciat. 9. Hunc collem sī tenēbunt nostrī, hostēs aquā commeātūque prohibēbunt. 10. Sī hōc fiat, omnīnō spēs fugae tollātur.

B.—11. Hāc orātiōne quam in conciliō habuerat, persuāserat Helvētiīs ut finibus suis exīrent. 12. Cum jam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent, fugā dēstitērunt. 13. Primō perspicere nōn possunt unde aut quam in partem hōc flūmen fluat. 14. Fīnem subsequendī faciāmus, nē ab nostrīs interclūdāmur. 15. Morte suōrum ita perterritī erant, ut summō tumultū ad alteram rīpam trāsiissent. 16. Respondit adulēscēntem summā fortitudīne dēlēctum esse, Lūcium nōmine, quī apud Gallōs māgnam auctōritātem habēret. 17. Sī prūdēns fuisset, sēnsisset quid hīc agerētur. 18. Prīmum nōs cohortātus est ut ante autumnum ējus modī classem efficerēmus. 19. Renūntiant sē tēla intrā mūnitionēs conjicere nōn potuisse, quod castra fossā incredibilī lātitudīne circumdata essent. 20. Cum haec nātiō, de quā suprā scripsimus, plūrimū tōtius ferē Galliae equitātū valeat, longē lātēque circum sē finēs vāstāvērunt.



482.

II.

A.—1. If anything happens, I shall return here at once. 2. If anything should happen, I should return there at once. 3. If you can hear their voices, they are not far distant. 4. If you were to set out at dawn, you would reach the lake at nightfall. 5. Unless you do this, I shall go alone. 6. If they had been inexperienced in sailing, they would not have reached land so easily. 7. Since the lower part of the island faces the continent, the inhabitants would often cross over, if they were skilled in sailing. 8. If they should prefer to cross the Rhine, lands would be given them in Gaul. 9. If the number of the enemy increases, the Gauls will gather all their property into one place. 10. Thus, even if they are fond of making war or of pillaging, opportunity is lacking.

B.—11. Since Caesar himself is present, they are more eager for fighting. 12. If Caesar himself is present, they will fight with greater zeal. 13. He begged them not to seek safety in flight. 14. For these reasons, if they had attempted to cross by (per) force, we should have prevented (them). 15. Because of the season, let them not attempt to visit the most distant nations. 16. These reported that they had found all the troops occupied in foraging, except those who had been left to guard the baggage. 17. He commands the tribunes, centurions and officers of cavalry to seize the approaches and roads in a similar manner. 18. Unless the magistrates satisfy me, I shall spare no one. 19. If he should ask me what is the best thing to do, I should urge him not to set the example of flight. 20. Since all men are by nature eager for freedom, we wish to be made free.

## 483.

## WORD LIST VIII.

## NOUNS.

aditus	modus	spatium	tumultus
diligentia	nōmen	studium	vīs
initium	ratio	subsidium	vōx

## ADJECTIVES.

cupidus	imperitus	occupatus	peritus
---------	-----------	-----------	---------

## PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

aliquis	quis	quisque	ūllus
nōnnūllī	quisquam	quīvīs	uterque
quīdam			

## VERBS

adeō	eō	interclūdō	praedor
bellō	exeō	liberō	praestō
cohortor	fiō	moneō	redeō
dējiciō	frūmentor	nāvigō	rogō
dēsistō	hortor	ōrō	superō
dīmicō	imperō	persuādeō	trānseō
ēgredior	ineō	petō	valeō

## PREPOSITIONS.

ab	contrā	inter	praeter
ad	cum	intrā	prō
ante	dē	ob	propter
apud	ex	per	sine
circum	in	post	sub
			trāns

## CONJUNCTIONS.

ac, atque	dum	neque	sed
aut	et, -que	nisi	si
cum	nē	quod	ut

## READING LESSON XV.

THE STORY OF REGULUS. (256 B.C.; 250 B.C.)

484.

## VOCABULARY.

*Āfrica*, ae, f., *Africa*.*Carthāginiēnsēs*, ium, m. pl., *the Carthaginians* (inhabiting the city of Carthage in North Africa).*catēna*, ae, f., *chain, fetter*; in plur. freely, *prison*.*cōservō*, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep*.*crūdēlis*, e, *cruel*.*Graecus*, ī, m., *Greek*.*Pūnicus*, a, um, *Punic, Carthaginian*.*senectūs*, -tūtis, f., *old age*.*uxor*, -ōris, f., *wife*.

Nōnō annō primī Pūnicī bellī, quod populus Rōmānus contrā Carthāginiēnsēs gerēbat, Rōmānī cōnsilium in Āfricam trānseundī iniērunt bellī inferendī causā. Ad hās rēs cōficiendās classis trecentārum trīgintā nāvium effecta est, et plūrimī mīlitēs, spē praedae faciendae adductī, ad portum convēnērunt. Rēgulus cōsul, quī huic classī praefectus erat, idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem nactus, initā aestāte nāvēs solvit, et classe Carthāginiēnsium superātā, ad Āfricam pervēnit. Ibi mīlitēs, nāvibus ēgressī, complūra proelia fēcērunt et multa oppida cēpērunt. Primō Carthāginiēnsēs neque virtūte neque studiō pūgnandī Rōmānīs parēs erant. Multīs incommodīs acceptīs, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Graecōs mīsērunt rogātum ut sibi auxilium ferrent, et aliquem mitterent quī exercituī praeesset.

Dux quīdam, Xanthippus nōmine, rei mīlitāris perītissimus, missus est, atque proximō annō, cum jam Carthāginiēnsēs ad dīmicandum parātōs esse



arbitrārētur, cōpiās suās contrā Rōmānōs cōduxit, quī in agrīs vāstandīs occupatī erant. Proeliō commissō, Rōmānī tantam calamitātem accēpērunt ut ferē omnēs aut caperentur aut interficerentur. Vix duo mīlia sē ad mare recēpērunt, et Rēgulus ipse ab hostibus captus et in catēnās coniectus est.

Sed Rōmānī cōsiliō dēsistere ac finem dīmīcandī facere nōlēbant, atque mājōribus cōpiīs coactīs bellum renovāvērunt. Post quīnque annōs Carthāginiēnsēs, māgnā acceptā calamitāte, lēgatiōnem ad senātum dē pāce mittere cōstituērunt. Simul Rēgulum adeunt et certiōrem eum dē hōc cōsiliō faciunt : “ Lēgātōs misūrī sumus Rōmānīs persuādendī causā ut pācem faciant. Visne ūnā cum illis proficīscī et populō Rōmānō ostendere quid optimum sit factū? Atque sī senātus quōsdam adulēscentēs nōbilēs, quī captī sunt, nōbīs nōn reddiderit, hūc statim ipse redībīs? Nam (*for*) nisi haec tē factūrum pollicitus eris, nōn tē ire patiēmur.”

Cum Rēgulus pollicitus esset, lēgātī profectī sunt, sed cum ad urbem vēnissent, Rēgulus nōluit in mūnitiōnēs ingredi (*to enter*), quod cīvis esse Rōmānus dēstitisset. Spērābant Carthāginiēnsēs Rēgulum, ut ipse liber fieret, Rōmānōs monitūrum esse nē captīvōs retinērent, sed pācem cum hostibus cōfirmārent. Sed cum senātus quōsdam misit quī cum eō agerent, haec dixit : “ Monitum vōs, Patrēs, vēnī, nē pācem faciātis. Carthāginiēnsēs, proeliīs frāctī, vix ūllam spem habent neque quisquam eōrum diūtius bellandī est cupidus. Bonō animō este; cīvēs nē dē victoriā dēspērent. Nōlite captīvōs reddere; vīrēs cūjusque illōrum integrae sunt; ego, senectūte cōfectus, ūsuī esse rei pūblicae nūllō modō possum. Nōlite mihi timēre: praestat quidvis patī quam rei pūblicae nocēre.”



Hāc ōrātiōne senātūi persuāsit nē quem captivum redderet. Atque cum nōnnūllī eum retinēre cōnārentur, hortātus est amicōs ut finem flendī et ōrandī facerent, et dīxit sē illō diē, quō captus esset, cīvitatē amīsisse. Tum (*then*) uxōrem et liberōs ā complexū (*his embrace*) remōvit, et ad Āfricā rediit, nūllā vī coāctus praeter fidem (*pledge*) quam dederat hostī. Tamen (*and yet*) sciēbat sē ad certissimā mortem et ad crūdēlissimōs hostēs sē revertī, sed fidem esse cōservandā existi-mābat. Sed sī sibi cōsuluisset, nōn rei pūblicae, num fāma tantae fortitūdinis ad ultimās regiōnēs perlāta esset?



Templum : Temple.

## SUPPLEMENTARY READING LESSONS.

## CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN IN GAUL.

(B.C. 58.)

## (a) The Helvetian War.

485. Helvētīi proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt; reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praeccēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. Sed undique locī nātūrā continentur: ūnā ex parte est flūmen Rhēnus altissimus et lātissimus; alterā\* ex parte mōns Jūra altissimus; tertiā ex parte flūmen Rhodanus nostram prōvinciam† ab Helvētīīs dīvidit. Hīs dē causīs Helvētīi nōn lātē vagārī poterant, nec facile finitimīs bellum inferre. Itaque, cum essent hominēs bellandī cupidī, angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur. Hīs rēbus adductī, oppida sua omnia vicōsque incendere et dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre cōstituērunt et optimam partem tōtīus Galliae occupāre. Itineribus omnīnō duōbus domō exīre poterant; quōrum ūnum erat per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius. Caesar, cui prōvincia Gallia eō annō dēcrēta erat, audīvit Helvētīōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī. Statim ab urbe‡ proficīscitur et in Galliam pervenit.

486. Ubi dē ejus adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; sed Caesar negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. Mox Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētīōs per agrum Sēquanōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā prōvinciā nostrā absunt. Intellegēbat

---

\* Translate by *a second* (521).

† Since 118 B.C. the southern part of Gaul had been a Roman province. (Hence the modern name *Provence*.) See map facing page 344.

‡ Rome is meant.

periculōsum prōvinciae fore, sī hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimicī, prōvinciae fīnitimī essent.\* Ob eās causās in Ītaliā contendit; duās ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs ex hibernīs ēdūcit; cum hīs quīque legiōnibus in Galliā per Alpēs ire contendit. Helvētiī jam per finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant, eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Itaque nē omnēs fortūnae sociōrum cōsumerentur, Caesar ē castrīs profectus ad Helvētiōs pervēnit.† Trēs jam partēs Helvētiōrum flūmen Ararim trānsierant; cēterōs aggressus, māgnam partem eōrum occidit, reliquī sēsē in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Hōc proeliō factō, ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōsequī posset, pontem facit, atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Tum per multōs diēs Caesar Helvētiōs īnsequitur, novissimumque agmen lacessit.

487. Tandem ut rei frūmentāriae prōspiceret, iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit, atque ad oppidum Aeduōrum māximum et cōpiōsissimum ire contendit. Helvētiī Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs esse et discēdere ā sē exīstimābant. Itaque, itinere conversō, nostrōs īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt. Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciemque īnstruit. Helvētiī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī sub prīmā nostrā aciem successērunt. Caesar, cohortātus suōs, proelium commisit. Diū atque ācriter pūgnāvērunt. Sed cum diūtius sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, Helvētiī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad Caesarem mīsērunt. Caesar Helvētiōs in finēs suōs, unde profectī erant, revertī jussit, et oppida vicōsque

\* Translate by *should* (or *were to*) *be*. Sī with the imperf. or pluperf. subjunctive may represent future conditions put in indirect discourse (408).

† Translate by *came up with*.



restituere. Helvētiōrum trecenta et sexāgintā octō mīlia domō exierant; vix centum et decem mīlia domum rediērunt.

(b) **The War with Ariovistus.**

488. Hōc bellō cōfectō, tōtius ferē Galliae prīncipēs ad Caesarem convēnērunt atque petiērunt ut sibi auxilium ferret contrā Ariovistum, rēgem Germānōrum, quī multa mīlia suōrum in Galliam trādūxisset optimumque agrum occupāvisset, atque Gallōs ex finibus pelleret. Dēmōstrant Ariovistum Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcisse et nunc crūdēliter imperāre atque obsidēs\* nōbilissimōrum liberōs poscere; neque posse ējus imperium diūtius sustinērī. His rēbus cōgnitis, Caesar Gallōrum animōs cōfirmāvit, pollicitusque est sē Galliam ab Ariovistī injūriā dēfēnsūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā prīncipēs dīmisit. Simul Germānōs cōsuēscere† in Galliam trānsire populō Rōmānō periculōsum esse vidēbat, nē, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiam contenderent. Itaque cōstituit ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mittere quī ab eō postulārent ut aliquem locum colloquiō diceret.

489. Quod‡ cum nōllet Ariovistus facere, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs mittit quī postulārent primum nē amplius Germānōs trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde ut obsidēs Gallīs redderet nēve bellum iis inferret. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit sē Gallōs vīcisse atque jūre bellī ūtī cōstituisse; sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque Gallīs injūriā§ bellum illātūrum sī im-

\* Translate by *as hostages*; for the case see 54.

† See 124.

‡ To emphasize the connection with the preceding words, Latin often uses *quī* for *hic* or *is*, placing it even before a conjunction. Here translate by *this*, literally *which*.

§ Translate by *wrongfully* (415). For *pārērent* and *vellet* see 480, fn.



periō suō pārērent ; atque sī Caesar vellet sēcum congregī, intellectūrum quanta esset virtūs invictōrum Germānōrum.

490. Eōdem tempore Caesar certior factus est Germānōs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finēs Aeduōrum populārī, et māgnam multitudinem Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī vēnisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur. Quibus\* rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus, mātūrāre cōstituit, nē nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē conjungeret. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē comparātā, māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere. In eō oppidō omnium rerum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat facultās, idque nātūrā locī ēgregiē mūniēbātur. Hūc Caesar contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

491. Dum paucōs diēs ibi rei frūmentāriae causā morātur, milītēs falsīs rūmōribus māgnopere perturbāti sunt. Nam Gallī ac mercātōrēs Germānōs ingentī māgnitūdine esse corporum, incredibilīque virtūte praedicābant. Caesar cum animadvertisset milītēs propter timōrem castra movēre ac sīgna contrā hostēs ferre nōlle, convocātō conciliō, dēmōnstrat Germānōs saepe ab Helvētiīs superātōs esse, quī tamen parēs esse exercitui Rōmānō nōn potuissent. Tum affīrmāvit sē proximā nocte quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, atque sī praetereā nēmō sequeretur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā,

---

\* See 489. fn. †

summa alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est, atque quārtā vigiliā, ut\* dīxerat, profectus est cum omnī exercitū. Septimō diē ab explorātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās mīlia passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

492. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit quī dīcerent Ariovistum, cum Caesar propius accessisset, colloquī cum eō jam velle: simul postulābat nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret, sed ut uterque cum equitātū venīret; verērī† sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur. Plānitiēs erat māgna inter castra Ariovistī et Caesaris. Eō uterque cum equitātū ad colloquium venit atque cum paucīs equitibus in mediam plānitiem prōgreditur. Reliquī equitēs mediocrī intervāllō‡ cōstitērunt.

493. Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis ostendit quanta ā sē senātūque beneficia Ariovistus accēpisset; simul docēbat Aeduōs diū sociōs populī Rōmānī fuisse. Postulāvit deinde eadem quae§ lēgātī. Ariovistus respondit sē rogātum esse ā Gallīs ut Rhēnum trānsīret; nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum postea intulisse; atque inīquum esse exercitum Rōmānum in suōs finēs venīre. Postulāvit igitur ut Caesar dēcēderet et liberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trāderet. Dum haec in colloquīo geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius accēdere, et lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conjicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit, suisque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs

---

\* **Ut** in the sense of *as* takes the indicative.

† Indirect discourse, the verb of *saying* being understood.

‡ The ablative, as well as the accusative, is used to express distance. Translate here by *at*.

§ Translate by *made the same demands as*.

rejicerent, nē pulsī hostēs dicere possent sē in colloquiō per insidiās circumventōs. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, multō mājus studium pūgnandī exercituī injectum est.

494. Post paucōs diēs Ariovistus, castrīs mōtis, praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus\* ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō ut frūmentō commeātūque Caesarem interclūderet. Tum diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūxit. Ariovistus autem, etsī dīmīcandī potestās nōn deerat, hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit†, et equestri proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum ubi Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplici īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse‡, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Tum cōpiās Ariovistus mīsīt quae nostrōs mūnitiōne prohibērent. Caesar tamen, ut antea cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītis castrīs, duās legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra mājōra redūxit.

495. Proximō diē Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā mājōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellexit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Posterō diē praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit, atque triplici īnstrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās ēdūxērunt,

\* For the ablative see 492, fn. †

† Translate by *kept in camp*.

‡ Translate by *to remain under arms*.



omnemque aciem rēdis et carris circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinqueretur. Eō mulierēs imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentēs milites flentes implorābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent.

496. Caesar ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri ācritē in hostēs, signō datō, impetum fecērunt, itaque\* hostēs celeriter prōcurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostēs conjiciendī nōn darētur. Rejectis pilis, comminus gladiis pūgnant. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudīne suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset Pūblius Crassus, quī equitātū praerat, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostris subsidiō misit. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere destitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnerunt. Ibi perpaucī salutem reppererunt; in† hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam deligātā ad rīpam nactus, eā profūgit. Reliquos omnēs cōsecutī equitēs nostri interfecerunt.

Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūtiātō, Suēbī qui ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum reverti coepērunt. Caesar unā aestāte duobus māximis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in‡ Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit. Hibernis Labiēnum lēgātum praefecit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam profectus est.

---

\* Itaque here = ita + que; contrast Itaque, 487, l. 5.

† Translate here by *among*.

‡ Translate here by *among*; the phrase modifies a verb of motion.



## THE STORY OF ULYSSES.

*(Chiefly from Ritchie, Fabulae Faciles.)*

## The Trojan War.

497. Ōlim Paris, fīlius Priamī rēgis Trōjānōrum, cum in Graeciam mare trānsiisset, Helenam, uxōrem Menelāi rēgis Spartaē, abdūxit. Itaque Menelāus omnēs rēgēs Graeciae convocāvit, et ōrāvit ut auxilium sibi ferrent. Mox, classe mīlle ducentārum nāvium coāctā, māgnīs cum cōpiīs profectus est ut injūriam ulcīscerētur. Agamemnōn, Menelāi frāter, tōtī exercituī Graecōrum praefectus est; et ūnā cum hīs duōbus rēgibus Achillēs, quī omnibus hominibus virtūte praestābat, et Ulixēs, vir summae prūdentiae, nāvēs solvērunt.

Graeci, nāvibus ēgressi, Trōjam vāllō fossāque circumdare nōn cōnātī sunt, sed in lītore nōn longē ā nāvibus cōnsēdērunt. Inter mare et urbem plānitīēs erat māgna, atque ibi Trōjānī, aciē instrūctā, saepe cum Graecīs proelia committēbant. Post novem annōs Graeci plūrima oppida expūgnāverant, quae circum Trōjam socii Priamī habēbant, et tanta incommoda Trōjānī accēperant ut minus saepe proelium facere audērent.

498. Decimō annō bellī, contrōversia māgna inter Agamemnona\* et Achillem orta est, atque Achillēs, irā incēnsus, pūgnā abstinēre cōstituit. Trōjānī, cum haec cōgnōvissent, Graecōs audācius adortī sunt, atque nāvēs eōrum incendissent, nisi Patroclus, quī Achilli amīcissimus erat, eum rogāvisset ut auxiliō Graecīs venīret. Neque Achilli persuādere potuit ut ipse in

---

\* Some nouns of the third declension, borrowed from the Greek, have the Greek ending -a in the accusative singular.

proelium rediret ; sed Achillēs arma et equōs suōs Patroclō dedit et milītēs suōs subsidiō Graecīs labōrantibus mīsīt. Adventū eōrum Trōjānī repulsī sunt ; sed Patroclus ipse ab Hectore, fortissimō ex filiīs Priamī, interfectus est. Tum Achillēs, māgnō dolōre affectus, mortem amīcī ulciscī contendit, et, rūsus armīs captīs, in mediōs hostēs irruit atque Hectora interfecit. Sed post paucōs diēs ipse, ā Paride vulnerātus, cecidit, et Graecī dē victoriā jam dēspērāre coepērunt.

499. Cum jam multī hortārentur ut in Graeciam reverterentur, Ulixēs Graecīs persuāsīt ut aliud cōsiliū inīrent. Equus ligneus ingentī māgnitūdine est effectus atque virīs armātīs complētus est. Tum reliquī Graecī in nāvēs conscendērunt et sē in Graeciam nāvigāre simulābant. Trōjānī, nōn insidiās suspicātī, equum in urbem trāxērunt, cum arbitrārentur Graecōs mūnerī eum deīs reliquisse. Sed noctū Ulixēs et Menelāus cēterīque quī sē in equō abdiderant, ēgressī sunt et custōdēs portārum necāvērunt. Tum reliquī Graecī, signō datō, in urbem ex nāvibus irrūpērunt. Trōjānī aut interfectī sunt aut in servitūtem abductī ; Trōja ipsa incēnsa est.

500. Tandem Graecī, longō bellō fessī, domum redire cōstituērunt. Omnibus igitur rēbus ad profectiōnem parātīs, nāvēs dēdūxērunt et idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem nactī māgnō cum gaudiō nāvēs solvērunt. Ulixēs, quī rēgnū insulae Ithacae obtinuerat, paulō antequam cum reliquīs Graecīs ad bellum profectus est, puellam fōrmōsissimam nōmine Pēnelopēn\* in mātrimonium dūxerat. Nunc igitur, cum jam decem annōs

---

\* Some nouns of the first declension, borrowed from the Greek, have (in the singular) **-ē** in the nom., **-ēs** in the gen., **-ēn** in the acc., and **-ē** in the abl.



THE SPOILS OF JERUSALEM. (*From the Arch of Titus*)





quasi in exsiliō cōsūmpsisset, māgnā cupiditāte patriae et uxōris videndae ārdēbat. Postquam tamen pauca mīlia passuum ā litore Trōjae prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla nāvium cursum tenēre posset, sed passim disjicerentur. Nāvis autem illa, quā ipse Ulixēs vehēbātur, vī tempestātis ad merīdiem dēlāta, decimō diē ad lītus Libyae pervēnit.

### The Lotus Eaters.

**501.** Ancoris jactīs, Ulixēs cōstituit nōnnūllōs ē sociīs in terram expōnere, quī aquam ad nāvem referrent et quālis esset nātūra ējus regiōnis cōgnōscerent. Hī igitur ē nāvī ēgressī imperāta facere parābant. Dum tamen fontem quaerunt, quīdam ex incolīs occurrunt atque hospitio accēpērunt. Accidit autem\* ut mīrō quōdam frūctū quem lōtum appellābant hī hominēs viverent. Quem cum Graeci gustāvissent, patriae et sociōrum statim oblītī, affīrmāvērunt semper sē in eā terrā māsūrōs, ut dulcī illō cibō in perpetuum fruerentur.

**502.** Ulixēs, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum exspectāvisset, veritus nē† sociī in periculō essent, nōnnūllōs ē reliquīs mīsīt, ut, quae causa esset morae, cōgnōscerent. Hī igitur in terram expositī, cum ad vīcum quī nōn longē aberat pervēnissent, sociōs suōs quasi vīnō ēbriōs repperērunt, atque eis persuādere cōnābantur, ut sēcum ad nāvem redīrent. Illī tamen resistere ac manū sē dēfendere coepērunt, saepe clāmitantēs sē numquam ex eō locō discessūrōs. Quae cum ita essent‡, nūntiī rē infectā ad Ulixem rediērunt. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis, Ulixēs ipse cum omnibus quī in nāvī

\* Translate **autem** by *now*, and **frūctū** by *on*, literally *by means of*.

† After a verb of *fearing*, **nē** means *lest* or *that*.

‡ Translate freely by *under these circumstances*.

relictī sunt ad locum vēnit ; et sociōs frūstrā hortātus ut sponte suā redīrent, manibus eōrum post terga vinctīs, invitōs ad nāvem reportāvit. Tum, ancorīs sublātīs, quam celerrimē ē portū nāvem solvit.

### The Giant Polyphemus.

503. Posterō diē postquam tōtam noctem rēmīs contenderant, ad terram ignōtam pervēnērunt. Tum, quod nātūrā ejus regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duodecim ē sociīs in terram ēgressus loca explorāre cōstituit. Paulum ā lītore prōgressī specum ingentem invēnērunt, quem, etsī intellegēbant sē nōn sine periculō id factūrōs, intrāvērunt. Ibi māgnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt in vāsīs ingentibus conditam. Dum omnēs mīrantur quis eum locum incolet, subitō mōnstrum horribile cōspexērunt, humanā quidem speciē et figurā, sed ingentī māgnitūdine corporis. Hunc gigantem cum animadvertissent ūnum omnīnō oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam jam accēperant.\*

504. Graecī igitur, ubi mōnstrum vīdērunt, timōre perterritī in interiōrem partem spēluncae cōnfūgērunt. Polyphēmus autem (id enim gigantis nōmen erat) pecora sua in spēluncam ēgit ; tum cum saxō ingentī portam obstrūxisset, ignem in mediō specū fēcit. Mox cum Graccōs animadvertisset, māgnā vōce clāmāvit. “ Quī estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an† praedōnēs? ” Tum Ulixēs respondit sē† neque mercātōrēs esse neque praedandī causā vēnisse ; sed ē Trōjā redeuntēs vī tempestātum ā cursū dēpulsōs esse. Ōrāvit etiam ut sē sine

---

\* Translate by *had heard*.

† In **double questions** **an** is used with the force of *or*.

‡ Translate by *they*; Ulysses speaks for himself and his comrades.

injūriā discēdere paterētur. Tum Polyphēmus, nūllō datō respōnsō, duo ē Graecis manū corripuit et membrīs eōrum divulsīs carnem dēvorāre coepit.

505. Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit, ut, omnī spē salūtis dēpositā, mortem praesentem exspectārent. Polyphēmus autem humī prōstrātus, somnō sē dedit. Quod cum vīdisset Ulixēs, tantam occāsiōnem nōn āmittendam arbitrātus, in animō habēbat gladiō interficere. Sed cum saxum animadvertisset, quō introitus obstrūctus erat, nihil sē prōfectūrum\* intellēxit, sī Polyphēmum interfēcisset. Tanta enim erat ējus saxī māgnitūdō, ut nē decem quidem hominēs movēre possent. Primā lūce, Polyphēmus jam ē somnō excitātus idem quod superiōre diē fēcit ; cor-reptīs enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs, carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum remōvisset, ipse cum pecore ē specū prōgressus est, atque postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt, saxum in locum restituit.

#### The Device of Ulysses.

506. Ulixēs vērō quī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir māgnae fuit prūdentiae, etsī intellegēbat quantum esset periculum, nōndum omnīnō dēspērābat, sed hōc cēpit cōnsilium. Sub noctem cum Polyphēmus ad specum rediisset et eōdem modō quō† antea cēnāvisset, Ulixēs ūtrem vīnī prōmptit, quem forte sēcum habēbat, et gigantī dedit. Polyphēmus, quī numquam antea vīnum gustāverat, statim hausit. Hōc factō quaesivī quō nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur. Ille respondit sē Nēminem appellārī. Quod cum audīvisset, Polyphēmus ita locūtus est : “ Hanc tibi grātiam prō tantō beneficiō referam ;

\* From **prōficiō**, not from **proficiō** ; note the quantity.

† Translate by *as* ; compare 493, fn., §.



tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō.” Hīs dictīs, cibō vīnōque gravātus, brevī somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs sociīs convocātīs dixit: “Habēmus facultātem quam petimus.” Tum postquam quid fierī vellet ostendit, sudem praeacūtā conquīrēbat. Quam cum repperisset, ignī calefēcit, atque oculum Polyphēmī dum dormit trānsfōdit; hōc factō, omnēs in ultimās spēluncae partēs sē abdidērunt.

507. Tum ille subitō illō dolōre ē somnō excitātus, clāmōrem māximum sustulit, et dum per spēluncam errat, Ulixem et sociōs manū comprehendere cōnābātur. Cum tamen jam omnīnō caecus esset, nūllō modō hōc efficere potuit. Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs clāmōre auditō undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt et quid gererētur quaesivērunt, et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse; cum tamen cēterī quaesivissent quis eī vulnus intulisset, respondit ille Nēminem id fēcisse. Quibus rēbus audītis, ūnus ē Cyclōpibus dixit: “Sī nēmō tē vulnerāvit, appāret cōnsiliō deōrum, quibus resistere nec possumus nec volumus, hōc suppliciō tē afficī.” Hīs rēbus dictis discessērunt Cyclōpēs, eum in insāniam incidisse arbitrātī.

#### The Escape.

508. Polyphēmus, ubi sociōs suōs discessisse sēnsit, furōre atque āmentīā impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit. Tandem cum portam invēnisset, saxum remōvit, ut pecus ad agrōs exīret. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit et ut\* quacque ovis ad locum vēnerat, tergum ējus manibus trāctābat, nē virī inter ovēs effugere possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs, hōc iniit cōnsilium; intel-

---

\* Translate as in 491, fn.; although the clause here refers, not to manner, but to time (*ut=whenever*). The pluperfect following should be translated by the English simple past.

lēxit enim omnem spem salūtis in dolō magis quam in virtūte pōnī. Primum trēs pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit; quās cum inter sē\* cōnexuisset, ūnum sociōrum ventribus† eārum ita subjēcit, ut omninō latēret. Deinde ovēs, hominem sēcum ferentēs, ad portam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore‡ suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim, postquam manūs tergīs† eārum imposuit, ovēs exīre passus est. Eōdem modō Ulixēs omnēs sociōs ēmisit; ipse ultimus ēvāsit.

509. Hīs rēbus ita cōfectis, Ulixēs māgnopere veritus nē§ Polyphēmus dolum sentīret, celeriter cum sociīs ad lītus contendit; quō cum vēnissent, ab eīs, quī nāvī praesidiō relīctī erant, māgnā cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Tum Ulixēs nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus sī in eō locō manēret, quam celerrimē proficīscī cōstituit. Jussit igitur omnēs in nāvem cōnscondere et ancorīs sublātis paulum ā lītore in altum prōvectus est. Tum māgnā vōce clāmāvit, “Tū, Polyphēme, quī jūra hospitīi spernis, jūstam et dēbitam poenam solvistī.” Hāc vōce audītā, Polyphēmus irā incēnsus ad mare sē contulit et ubi intellēxit nāvem paulum ā lītore remōtam esse, saxum ingēns manū corripuit atque in eam partem conjēcit, unde vōcem venīre sēnsit. Graecī autem, nūllō acceptō incommodō, cursum tenuērunt.

#### The Island of Circe, the Enchantress.

510. Brevī intermissō spatiō, Graecī īnsulae cuidam appropinquāvērunt quam Circē, filia Sōlis, incolēbat.

---

\* Translate by *to one another*, literally *among themselves*.

† The dative, having the force of *with reference to*, is often used with compound verbs, where it is freely translated by the preposition suggested by the prefix, here *under* (**sub**), and *on* (**in**).

‡ Literally *would be*, freely *would occur*.

§ See 502, fn., †.

Eō cum pervēnissent, Ulixēs frūmentandī causā nāvī ēgredi cōstituit ; cōgnōverat enim frūmentum quēd in nāvī habērent jam dēficere. Sociīs igitur ad sē convocātis, quō in locō rēs esset\* et quid fierī vellet, ostendit. Cum tamen omnēs memoriam retinērent crūdēlis mortis eōrum quī nūper in terram Cyclōpum ēgressī erant, nēmō repertus est quī hōc negōtium suscipere vellet.† Tandem rēs ad sortem revocātur, atque Euryloclus cum duōbus et vīgintī sociīs in interiōrem partem insulae proficiscitur. Vix poterant eī quī in nāvī relictī erant lacrimās tenēre ; crēdebant enim sē sociōs suōs numquam iterum visūrōs.

511. Illī intereā aliquantum prōgressī ad villam quandam pervēnērunt, summā māgnificentīā aedificātam ; cūjus ad jānuam cum adiissent, ipsa Circē exiit et summā cum benīgnitāte omnēs invitāvit ut introīrent. Euryloclus autem, insidiās suspicātus, forīs exspectāre cōstituit ; reliquī reī novitāte adductī intrāvērunt, atque convīvium māgnificum invēnērunt omnibus rēbus instrūctum. Sed Circē vīnum medicāmentō quōdam miscuerat ; quod cum illī bibissent, gravī sopōre omnēs statim oppressī sunt. Tum Circē baculō aureō quod gerēbat capita eōrum tetigit ; quō factō‡, omnēs in porcōs subitō conversī sunt. Intereā Euryloclus ignārus quid agerētur ad§ jānuam sedēbat ; postquam tamen ad sōlis occāsum frustrā exspectāvit, ad nāvem sōlus revertī cōstituit.

---

\* Translate freely by *how matters stood*.

† Translate **quī vellet** by *who was willing or to be willing*. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to characterize the antecedent as belonging to a class.

‡ Translate by *whereupon*, more literally *this having been done*.

§ Translate here by *at*.



## Ulysses Comes to the Rescue.

512. Ulixēs cum intellēxisset sociōs suōs in periculō esse, gladiō correptō, Eurylochō imperāvit, ut sine morā viam ad illam domum mōnstrāret. Ille tamen multīs cum lacrimīs Ulixem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē tantum periculum susciperet. Ulixēs autem respondit sē nēminem invitum sēcum adductūrum; eī licēre, sī māllet, in nāvī manēre; sē ipsum sine ūllō auxiliō rem susceptūrum. Hōc cum māgnā vōce dīxisset, ē nāvī dēsiluit.

Aliquantum prōgressus subitō cōspexit adulēscētem fōrmā pulcherrimā, aureum baculum manū gerentem. Hīc rogat: "Quō proficīsceris? Nōne scīs hanc esse Circēs domum? Hīc inclūsī sunt amīcī tuī, ex hūmānā speciē in porcōs conversī. Num vīs ipse idem malum patī?" Ulixēs simul ac vōcem audīvit adulēscētem esse deum Mercurium sēnsit; nūllō tamen modō ab cōsiliō dēterrēri potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sēnsisset, herbam quandam eī dedit, quam contrā carmina plūrimū valēre dīcēbat. "Hanc cape," inquit, "et ubi Circē tē baculō tetigerit, dēstrictō gladiō, impetum in eam fac."

## The Enchantress Foiled.

513. Brevī intermissō spatiō, Ulixēs ad omnia pericula subeunda parātus ad villam pervēnit atque ab ipsā Circē benignē exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō quō antea facta sunt. Mox, ubi famēs cibō dēpulsa est, Circē pōculum aureum vinō replētum Ulixī dedit. Ille, etsī suspicātus est venēnum sibi parātum esse, pōculum exhaustit. Quō factō, Circē, postquam caput ējus baculō tetigit, ea verba locūta est quibus sociōs ējus antea in porcōs converterat. Rēs tamen omnīnō aliter ēvēnit atque illa spērāverat. Tanta enim vīs erat ējus herbae

quam dederat Mercurius, ut neque venēnum neque verba quidquam efficere possent. Deinde Ulixēs, sicut jusserat Mercurius, gladiō dēstrictō, impetum in eam fēcit et mortem minitābātur. Tum Circē, cum sēnsisset artem suam nihil valēre, multīs cum lacrimīs eum obsecrāre coepit, nē interficeret.

514. Ulixēs autem ubi sēnsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit ut sociōs sine morā in hūmānam speciem redūceret; sī minus\*, ostendit sē statim eam necātūrum. His rēbus Circē vehementer commōta ad pedēs ējus sē prōjēcit et multīs cum lacrimīs pollicita est sē, quae ille imperāvisset, omnia factūram. Ita sociīs receptīs Ulixēs nūntium ad nāvem mīsīt, quī reliquīs Graecīs quae facta essent nūntiāret.

Atque multa alia perīcula Ulixēs subiit; sed tandem in patriam suam ipse pervēnit incolumis, omnibus sociīs āmissīs, atque ibi uxōrem Pēnelopēn vīvam et salvam repperit, atque cupidē reditum suum exspectantem.

---

\* Translate **SI** minus by *otherwise* or *if not*.



Coin of Antoninus Pius.





# APPENDIX.

## TABLES OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS. NOUNS.

**515.**

**First Declension.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nominative.</i>	mēnsa, F.	mēnsae
<i>Genitive.</i>	mēnsae	mēnsārum
<i>Dative.</i>	mēnsae	mēnsīs
<i>Accusative.</i>	mēnsam	mēnsās
<i>Vocative.</i>	mēnsa	mēnsae
<i>Ablative.</i>	mēnsā	mēnsīs

**516.**

**Second Declension.**

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	servus, M.	puer, M.	ager, M.	templum, N.
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	puerī	agrī	templī
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	puerō	agrō	templō
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	puerum	agrum	templum
<i>Voc.</i>	serve	puer	ager	templum
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	puerō	agrō	templō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	servī	puerī	agrī	templa
<i>Gen.</i>	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	templōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	templīs
<i>Acc.</i>	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	templa
<i>Voc.</i>	servī	puerī	agrī	templa
<i>Abl.</i>	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	templīs

## 517. Third Declension.

CONSONANT STEMS.			I-STEMS.	
SINGULAR.				
<i>Nom.</i>	obses, M. F.	opus, N.	cīvis, M. F.	animal, N.
<i>Gen.</i>	obsidis	operis	cīvis	animālis
<i>Dat.</i>	obsidī	operī	cīvī	animālī
<i>Acc.</i>	obsidem	opus	cīvem	animal
<i>Voc.</i>	obses	opus	cīvis	animal
<i>Abl.</i>	obside	opere	cīve (ī)	animālī
PLURAL.				
<i>Nom.</i>	obsidēs	opera	cīvēs	animālia
<i>Gen.</i>	obsidum	operum	cīvium	animālium
<i>Dat.</i>	obsidibus	operibus	cīvibus	animālibus
<i>Acc.</i>	obsidēs	opera	cīvēs (īs)	animālia
<i>Voc.</i>	obsidēs	opera	cīvēs	animālia
<i>Abl.</i>	obsidibus	operibus	cīvibus	animālibus

See also 86, page 49 ; 94, page 55 ; 186, page 116 ; 189, page 117.

## 518. Fourth Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	fructus, M	fructūs	cornū, N.	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	fructūs	fructuum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	fructuī	fructibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fructum	fructūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Voc.</i>	fructus	fructūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	fructū	fructibus	cornū	cornibus

## 519. Fifth Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	rēs, F.	rēs	diēs, M.	diēs
<i>Gen.</i>	reī	rērum	diēī	diērum
<i>Dat.</i>	reī	rēbus	diēī	diēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	rem	rēs	diem	diēs
<i>Voc.</i>	rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rē	rēbus	diē	diēbus

## ADJECTIVES.

## 520. Adjectives of First and Second Declensions.

(a) bonus, bona, bonum	65, page 37
(b) liber, libera, liberum	72, " 41
(c) aeger, aegra, aegrum	72, " 41

## 521. Adjectives of Third Declension.

(a) ācer, ācris, ācre	113, page 67
(b) fortis, forte	113, " 68
(c) fēlix	113, " 68
(d) prūdēns	113, " 68

## 522. Declension of Comparatives.

(a) fortior, fortius	170, page 105
(b) plūs	197, " 121

## 523. Irregular Adjectives of First and Second Declensions.

(a) ūnus, ūna, ūnum	205, page 126
(b) neuter, neutra, neutrum	205, " 126

For list of adjectives with gen. in *-ius* and dat. in *-i*, see 207, page 128.

## 524. Numerals.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.
1. ūnus	prīmus
2. duo	secundus <i>or</i> alter
3. trēs	tertius
4. quattuor	quārtus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecim <sup>us</sup>



13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvigintī	duodēvīcēsīmus
19. ūndēvigintī	undēvīcēsīmus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsīmus
30. trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80. octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100. centum	centēsīmus
200. ducentī, ae, a	ducentēsīmus
300. trecentī, ae, a	trecentēsīmus
400. quadringentī, ae, a	quadringentēsīmus
500. quīngentī, ae, a	quīngentēsīmus
600. sescentī, ae, a	sescentēsīmus
700. septingentī, ae, a	septingentēsīmus
800. octingentī, ae, a	octingentēsīmus
900. nōngentī, ae, a	nōngentēsīmus
1000. mille	mīllēsīmus
2000. duo mīlia	bis mīllēsīmus

525.

Declension of Numerals.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria	mīlia
<i>Voc.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mīlia
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

For **ūnus** see 205, page 126.

For other numerals see 156, page 95 (ordinals) ; 216, page 134 (cardinals).

## PRONOUNS.

## 526. Personal, Reflexive and Possessive Pronouns.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	{ nostrum { nostri	tuī	{ vestrum { vestri	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	tū	vōs	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

For **meus**, **noster**, **tuus**, **vester** and **suus** see 279, page 175.

## 527.

## Demonstrative Pronouns.

	SING. MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
<i>Gen.</i>	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	illius	illius	illius
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
PLUR.						
<i>Nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
SING.						
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Gen.</i>	ējus	ējus	ējus	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
PLUR.						
<i>Nom.</i>	eī, iī	eae	ea	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	eadem	idem	{ēidem, īidem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{eīsdem, īisdem	eīsdem, īisdem	eīsdem, īisdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{eīsdem, īisdem	eīsdem, īisdem	eīsdem, īisdem

528.

Relative Pronoun.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

529.

Interrogative Pronoun.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

530.

Indefinite Pronouns.

(a) quis (quī)	qua (quae)	quid (quod)	455, page 307
(b) aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)	456, " 308
(c) quisquam		quidquam	456, " 308
(d) quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque)	456, " 308
(e) quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)	456, " 308
(f) quīvis	quaevīs	quidvis (quodvis)	456, " 308
(g) uterque	utraque	utrumque	456, " 308



## VERBS.

531.

## Indicative Active.

## PRESENT.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
amō	moneō	regō	audiō
amās	monēs	regis	audis
amat	monet	regit	audit
amāmus	monēmus	regimus	audimus
amātis	monētis	regitis	auditis
amant	monent	regunt	audiunt

## IMPERFECT.

amābam	monēbam	regēbam	audiēbam
[amā-bam, -bās, -bat, amā-bāmus, -bātis, -bant]			

## FUTURE.

amābō	monēbō	regam	audiam
amābis	monēbis	regēs	audiēs
amābit	monēbit	reget	audiet
amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	audiēmus
amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	audiētis
amābunt	monēbunt	regent	audient

## PERFECT.

amāvī	monuī	rēxī	audīvī
amāvistī	monuistī	rēxistī	audivistī
amāvit	monuit	rēxit	audivit
amāvimus	monuimus	rēximus	audivimus
amāvistis	monuistis	rēxistis	audivistis
amāvērunt*	monuērunt*	rēxērunt*	audivērunt*

## PLUPERFECT.

amāveram	monueram	rēxeram	audiveram
[amāv-eram, -erās, -erat, amāv-erāmus, -erātis, -erant]			

## FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō	monuerō	rēxerō	audiverō
[amāv-erō, -eris, -erit, amāv-erimus, -eritis, -erint]			

---

\* For -ērunt, -ēre also is found, especially in poetry.

## 532.

## Indicative Passive.

## PRESENT.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
amor	moneor	regor	audior
amāris*	monēris*	regeris*	audiris*
amātur	monētur	regitur	audītur
amāmur	monēmur	regimur	audīmur
amāmini	monēmini	regimini	audīmini
amantur	monentur	reguntur	audiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

amābar	monēbar	regēbar	audiēbar
[amā-bar, -bāris*, -bātur, amā-bāmur, -bāmini, -bantur]			

## FUTURE.

amābor	monēbor	regar	audiar
amāberis*	monēberis*	regēris*	audiēris*
amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	audiētur
amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	audiēmur
amābimini	monēbimini	regēmini	audiēmini
amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	audientur

## PERFECT.

amātus sum	monitus sum	rēctus sum	audītus sum
" es	" es	" es	" es
" est	" est	" est	" est
amātī sumus	monitī sumus	rēctī sumus	audītī sumus
" estis	" estis	" estis	" estis
" sunt	" sunt	" sunt	" sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

amātus eram	monitus eram	rēctus eram	audītus eram
[amātus eram, erās, erat, amātī erāmus, erātis, erant]			

## FUTURE PERFECT.

amātus erō	monitus erō	rēctus erō	audītus erō
[amātus erō, eris, erit, amātī erimus, eritis, erunt.]			

\* For -ris, -re also is found, especially in the imperfect and future tenses.

## 533.

## Subjunctive Active.

## PRESENT.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
amem	moneam	regam	audiam
amēs	moneās	regās	audiās
amet	moneat	regat	audiat
amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	audiāmus
amētis	moneātis	regātis	audiātis
ament	moneant	regant	audiant

## IMPERFECT.

amārem	monērem	regerem	audīrem
amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	audīrēs
amāret	monēret	regeret	audīret
amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	audīrēmus
amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	audīrētis
amārent	monērent	regerent	audīrent

## PERFECT.

amāverim	monuerim	rēxerim	audīverim
amāverīs	monuerīs	rēxerīs	audīverīs
amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit
amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
amāverītis	monuerītis	rēxerītis	audīverītis
amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

## PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	monuissē	rēxissem	audīvissem
amāvissēs	monuissēs	rēxissēs	audīvissēs
amāvisset	monuisset	rēxisset	audīvisset
amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rēxissēmus	audīvissēmus
amāvissētis	monuissētis	rēxissētis	audīvissētis
amāvissent	monuissent	rēxissent	audīvissent

## 535.

## Gerund.

<i>Gen.</i>	amandī	monendī	regendī	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	amandum	monendum	regendum	audiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō



534.

Subjunctive Passive.

PRESENT.

<i>First Conjug.</i>	<i>Second Conjug.</i>	<i>Third Conjug.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjug.</i>
amer	monear	regar	audiar
amēris*	moneāris*	regāris*	audiāris*
amētur	moneātur	regātur	audiātur
amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	audiāmur
amēminī	moneāminī	regāminī	audiāminī
amentur	moneantur	regantur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

amārer	monērer	regerer	audīrer
amārēris*	monērēris*	regerēris*	audīrēris*
amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	audīrētur
amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	audīrēmur
amārēminī	monērēminī	regerēminī	audīrēminī
amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

amātus sim	monitus sim	rēctus sim	auditus sim
" sis	" sis	" sis	" sis
" sit	" sit	" sit	" sit
amātī simus	monitī simus	rēctī simus	audītī simus
" sitis	" sitis	" sitis	" sitis
" sint	" sint	" sint	" sint

PLUPERFECT.

amātus essem	monitus essem	rēctus essem	auditus essem
" essēs	" essēs	" essēs	" essēs
" esset	" esset	" esset	" esset
amātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	rēctī essēmus	audītī essēmus
" essētis	" essētis	" essētis	" essētis
" essent	" essent	" essent	" essent

536.

Supine.

<i>Acc.</i> amātum	monitum	rēctum	audītum
<i>Abl.</i> amātū	monitū	rēctū	auditū

\* For -ris, -re also is found.

537.

## Imperative Active

## PRESENT.

<i>Sing. 2.</i>	<i>amā</i>	<i>monē</i>	<i>rege</i>	<i>audi</i>
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	<i>amāte</i>	<i>monēte</i>	<i>regite</i>	<i>audite</i>

## FUTURE.

<i>Sing. 2.</i>	<i>amātō</i>	<i>monētō</i>	<i>regitō</i>	<i>auditō</i>
	<i>3. amātō</i>	<i>monētō</i>	<i>regitō</i>	<i>auditō</i>
<i>Plur. 2.</i>	<i>amātōte</i>	<i>monētōte</i>	<i>regitōte</i>	<i>auditōte</i>
	<i>3. amantō</i>	<i>monentō</i>	<i>reguntō</i>	<i>audiuntō</i>

539.

## Infinitive Active.

## PRESENT.

<i>amāre</i>	<i>monēre</i>	<i>regere</i>	<i>audire</i>
--------------	---------------	---------------	---------------

## PERFECT.

<i>amāvisse</i>	<i>monuisse</i>	<i>rēxisse</i>	<i>audivisse</i>
-----------------	-----------------	----------------	------------------

## FUTURE.

<i>amātūrus esse</i>	<i>monitūrus esse</i>	<i>rēctūrus esse</i>	<i>auditūrus esse</i>
----------------------	-----------------------	----------------------	-----------------------

541.

## Participles Active.

## PRESENT.

<i>amāns</i>	<i>monēns</i>	<i>regēns</i>	<i>audiēns</i>
--------------	---------------	---------------	----------------

## FUTURE.

<i>amātūrus</i>	<i>monitūrus</i>	<i>rēctūrus</i>	<i>auditūrus</i>
-----------------	------------------	-----------------	------------------

543.

## Third Conjugation : Verbs in -iō.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<b>PRES.</b>	<i>capiō</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiar</i>
	<i>capis</i>	<i>caperis</i>	<i>capiās</i>	<i>capiāris</i>
	<i>capit</i>	<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiat</i>	<i>capiātur</i>
	<i>capimus</i>	<i>capimur</i>	<i>capiamus</i>	<i>capiamur</i>
	<i>capitis</i>	<i>capimini</i>	<i>capiatīs</i>	<i>capiamini</i>
	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>	<i>capiant</i>	<i>capiantur</i>
<b>IMPERF.</b>	<i>capiebam</i>	<i>capiebar</i>	<i>caperem</i>	<i>caperer</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiar</i>		
<b>PERF.</b>	<i>cēpī</i>	<i>captus sum</i>	<i>cēperim</i>	<i>captus sim</i>
<b>PLUPERF.</b>	<i>cēperam</i>	<i>captus eram</i>	<i>cēpissem</i>	<i>captus essem</i>
<b>FUT. PERF.</b>	<i>cēperō</i>	<i>captus erō</i>		

538.

## Imperative Passive.

## PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. amāre	monēre	regere	audire
<i>Plur.</i> 2. amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audīminī

## FUTURE.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. amātor	monētor	regitor	auditor
3. amātor	monētor	regitor	auditor
<i>Plur.</i> 3. amantor	monentor	reguntor	audiuntor

540.

## Infinitive Passive.

## PRESENT.

amārī	monērī	regī	audīrī
-------	--------	------	--------

## PERFECT.

amātus esse	monitus esse	rēctus esse	auditus esse
-------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

## FUTURE.

amātum īrī	monitum īrī	rēctum īrī	audītum īrī
------------	-------------	------------	-------------

542.

## Participles Passive.

## PERFECT.

amātus	monitus	rēctus	auditus
--------	---------	--------	---------

## GERUNDIVE.

amandus	monendus	regendus	audiendus
---------	----------	----------	-----------

 544. Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō (*continued*).

## IMPERATIVE.

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
PRES.	cape	capere
FUT.	capitō	capitor

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	capere	capī
PERF.	cēpisse	captus esse
FUT.	captūrus esse	captum īrī

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	capiēns	PERF.	captus
FUT.	captūrus	GER.	captiendus

## GERUND.

capiendī

## SUPINE.

captum



## 545.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

Indicative, 314, page 199. Subjunctive, 370, page 241.

Infinitive, 334, page 213.

## IMPERATIVE.

	<i>First Conj.</i>	<i>Second Conj.</i>	<i>Third Conj.</i>	<i>Fourth Conj.</i>
PRES.	cōnāre	verēre	sequere	sortīre
FUT.	conātor	verētor	sequitor	sortītor

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	cōnāns	verēns	sequēns	sortiēns
FUT.	cōnātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	sortitūrus
PERF.	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	sortitus
GER.	cōnandus	verendus	sequendus	sortiendus

## GERUND.

cōnandī	verendī	sequendī	sortiendī
---------	---------	----------	-----------

## SUPINE.

cōnātum	veritum	secūtum	sortitum
---------	---------	---------	----------

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

## 546.

## Sum, esse, fuī.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT

sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint

## IMPERFECT.

eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
erat	erant	esset	essent

## FUTURE.

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

## PERFECT.

fuī	fuimus	fuerim	fuerīmus
fuistī	fuistis	fuerīs	fuerītis
fuit	fuērunt	fuerit	fuerint

## PLUPERFECT.

fuera <sup>m</sup>	fuerā <sup>m</sup> us	fuissem	fuissē <sup>m</sup> us
fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent

## FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	esse
PERF.	fuisse
FUT.	futūrus esse <i>or</i> fore

## PARTICIPLE.

FUT.	futūrus
------	---------

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>Sing.</i> 2. es
	<i>Plur.</i> 2. este
FUT.	<i>Sing.</i> 2. estō
	3. estō
	<i>Plur.</i> 2. estōte
	3. suntō

547.

Possum, posse, potuī.

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	possum	possumus
	potes	potestis
	potest	possunt
IMPERF.	poteram	
FUT.	poterō	
PERF.	potuī	
PLUPERF.	potueram	
FUT. PERF.	potuerō	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

possim	possimus
possīs	possitis
possit	possint
possem	

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	posse
PERF.	potuisse

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	potēns ( <i>adj.</i> )
-------	---------------------------

548. Volō, velle, voluī. Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

Mālō, mālle, mālūī.

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

IMPERF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUPERF.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUT. PERF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
IMPERF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUPERF.	voluissē	nōluissē	māluissē

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns
-------	--------	--------

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	nōlī, nōlīte
FUT.	nōlitō

549.

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

## INDICATIVE.

*Active.**Passive.*

PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
	ferb	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUPERF.	tuleram		lātus eram	
FUT. PERF.	tulerō		lātus erō	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPERF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUPERF.	tulissem	lātus essem

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fer, ferte	ferre
FUT.	fertō	fertor



INFINITIVE.		
PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES.		
PRES.	ferēns	PERF. lātus
FUT.	lāturus	GER. ferendus
	GERUND.	SUPINE.
	ferendī	lātum

550. Eō, ire, iī, itum.

551. Fīō, fieri, factus sum.

INDICATIVE.				
PRES.	eō	īmus	fīō	(fīmus)
	īs	ītis	fīs	(fītis)
	it	eunt	fit	fiunt
IMPERF.	ībam		fīēbam	
FUT.	ībō		fīam	
PERF.	iī		factus sum	
PLUPERF.	ieram		factus eram	
FUT. PERF.	ierō		factus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRES.	eam	fīam
IMPERF.	īrem	fīerem
PERF.	ierim	factus sim
PLUPERF.	iissem	factus essem

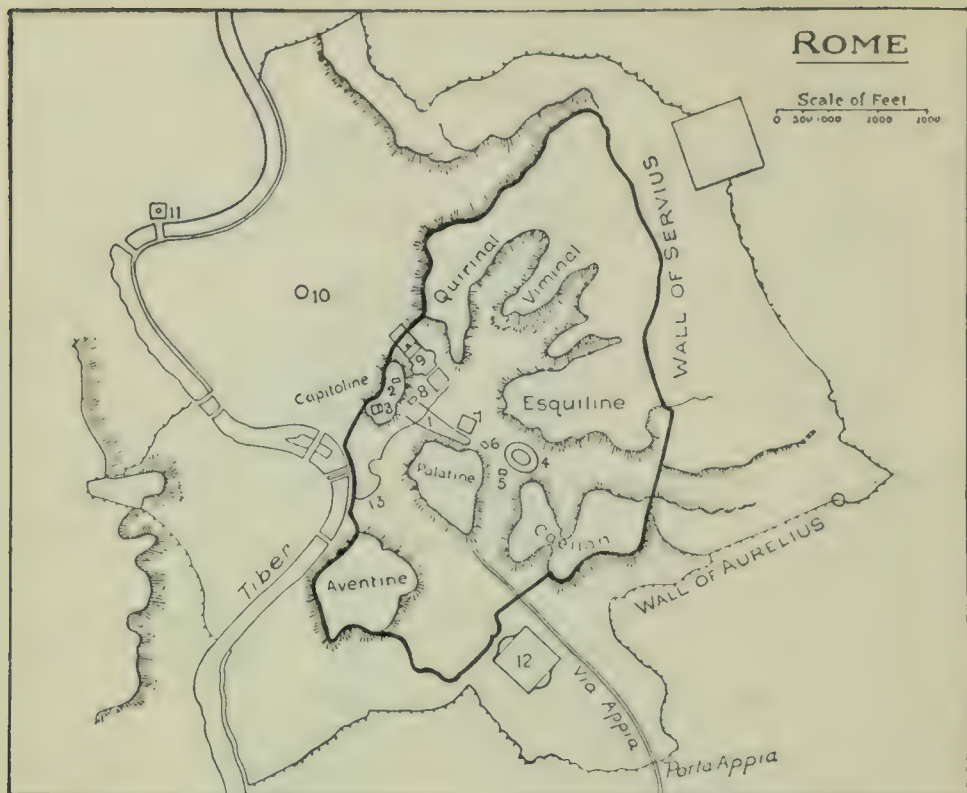
IMPERATIVE.		
PRES.	ī, īte	fī, fīte
FUT.	itō	

INFINITIVE.		
PRES.	īre	fieri
PERF.	iisse	factus esse
FUT.	itūrus esse	factum iri

PARTICIPLES.		
PRES.	iēns, <i>Gen.</i> euntis	PERF. factus
FUT.	itūrus	GER. faciendus

 GERUND.  
eundī

 SUPINE.  
itum



- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Forum.               | 7. Basilica of Constantine. |
| 2. Arx (Citadel).       | 8. Arch of Severus.         |
| 3. Capitol.             | 9. Trajan's Column.         |
| 4. Colosseum.           | 10. Pantheon.               |
| 5. Arch of Constantine. | 11. Tomb of Hadrian.        |
| 6. Arch of Titus.       | 12. Baths of Caracalla.     |
| 13. Cloaca Maxima.      |                             |

## DESCRIPTION OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

### 552. The Tomb of Hadrian (Moles Hadriani). (*Frontispiece.*)

*"The Mole which Hadrian rear'd on high,  
Imperial mimic of Old Egypt's piles."*

This tomb, now known as the Castle of St. Angelo, was begun by the Emperor Hadrian (*Publius Aelius Hadrianus*) and completed about 140 A.D. In it were buried Hadrian and several other Roman emperors. The circular portion is more than 80 yards in diameter and the total height was about 165 feet. It is on the right bank of the Tiber and is connected with the city by the bridge of St. Angelo, formerly called *Pons Aelius*, after Hadrian, by whom it was built 136 A.D.

553. The Appian Way (Via Appia). (Page 17.)

*"He drove abroad, in furious guise,  
Along the Appian Way."*

The Romans were the most skilful builders of enduring roads the world has ever known. The most celebrated highway constructed by them is the Appian Way, which even at the present day well merits its ancient title "Queen of Roads." It was built by Appius Claudius Caecus about 312 B.C. and extends some 350 miles south-east from Rome to Brindisi, the ancient Brundisium, the regular port of departure for Greece. The road-bed is paved with stones, and is about 16 feet wide.

554. Tomb of Caecilia Metella. (Page 32.)

*"Thus much alone we know—Metella died,  
The wealthiest Roman's wife: Behold his love or pride."*

On each side of the Appian Way, near Rome, were tombs of famous citizens. One of these tombs is that built in the time of Julius Caesar in honour of Caecilia Metella, the wife of the triumvir Crassus. It stands about two or three miles from the city gate, and is an immense circular pile about 70 feet in diameter, built of great blocks of hewn stone on a quadrangular foundation. The marble with which the basement was formerly coated was removed about three centuries ago to make the fountain of Trevi in Rome.

555. The Pantheon. (Page 64.)

*"Sanctuary and home  
Of art and piety—Pantheon!—pride of Rome."*

The Pantheon (the temple of all the gods), the best preserved edifice of the ancient Romans, was built by Marcus Agrippa 27 B.C., as an inscription on the portico still bears witness. It is now the Church of Sta. Maria della Rotonda. Its diameter is about 140 feet and its height practically the same. The vast rotunda is lighted by a circular opening, 27 feet in diameter, at the apex of the dome. In front is a splendid portico, 110 feet wide and 45 feet deep, composed of 16 Corinthian columns of granite 13 feet in circumference and 39 feet high.

556. The Colosseum (Flavian Amphitheatre). (Page 81.)

*"While stands the Coliseum, Rome shall stand,  
When falls the Coliseum, Rome shall fall."*

The Colosseum, of which only about one-third remains, is the largest theatre and one of the most imposing structures in the world. It was begun by the Emperor Flavius Vespasianus, and completed by his son Titus in the year 80 A.D. Since the 8th century it has generally been called the Colosseum, after the colossal statue of Nero



which formerly stood close by. It is more than 600 feet long and 500 wide. The arena was about 280 feet by 175. The encircling wall rises in four stories to the height of 156 feet. In the Colosseum took place gladiatorial combats and fights with wild beasts. It was capable of holding 87,000 spectators, seated, or about 100,000 in all.

**557. The Claudian Aqueduct. (Page 113.)**

This famous aqueduct was built by the Emperor Claudius about 50 A.D. It was constructed for the purpose of conveying water to Rome from the lakes and springs in the Alban hills, a distance of about 45 miles. Its ruins are now a striking feature of the Roman Campagna. Between 300 B.C. and 300 A.D. fourteen aqueducts were built to supply Rome, and others were constructed in various parts of the Empire, such as the one at Nemausus (now Nîmes, or Nîmes) in southern Gaul (page 239).

**558. Cloaca Maxima. (Page 113.)**

"The Great Drain," which is about half a mile in length, was constructed in the time of Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king of Rome (about 600 B.C.), for the purpose of rendering habitable the low ground which formed the site of the Roman Forum. After an extremely tortuous course it empties into the Tiber a little below the Island. Several natural streams of water are collected in this drain and still run through it. Near its mouth it is formed by three tiers of arches, one within the other, the innermost being a semicircular vault about 12 feet high; elsewhere it has a single arch with occasional bands.

**559. Trajan's Column. (Page 128.)**

This column, which stands in Trajan's Forum, is of marble, and was erected in 114 A.D. It is about 130 feet high, including the base, with a diameter of 11 feet at the bottom and 10 feet at the top. It was formerly crowned by a statue of Trajan, but this was replaced in the 16th century by one of St. Peter. A series of bas-reliefs representing scenes in Trajan's Dacian campaign, forms a spiral, 3 feet wide and 660 feet long, round the shaft of the pillar. The reliefs are 2 feet high at the bottom and gradually increase in size as they go upward, thus making the figures at the top and bottom seem of equal size. One of these scenes is represented on page 269. It is said that the bones of Trajan were buried under the column.

**560. Triumphal Arches. (Pages 160, 273.)**

These arches, so characteristic of the ancient Romans, were erected in the most frequented streets to commemorate the victories of generals or emperors. According to the space available, they had a single arch, or three arches, a large one in the centre for carriages, and two smaller ones for foot-passengers. Ancient writers mention 21 such arches in Rome. The arch of Septimius Severus (75 feet high and 82 feet broad) was erected in honour of that emperor and his two



sons in A.D. 203 to commemorate his victories over the Parthians and Arabians. The arch of Constantine, the best preserved of these structures, was erected by the Senate and the people of Rome after the defeat of Maxentius in 311 A.D., when Constantine declared himself in favour of Christianity.

**561. The Baths of Caracalla. (Page 177.)**

Many magnificent baths (*thermae*) were constructed at Rome by various emperors, among them those built by Caracalla about 215 A.D. These were of such extent as to accommodate 1,600 bathers at one time. The magnificent suite of marble halls devoted to the various baths, gymnasia and galleries, was surrounded by a belt of gardens; the halls were richly decorated with statues, columns, bas-reliefs and mosaics. These baths covered a space 360 yards square; to-day they form the largest mass of ruins in Rome, except the Colosseum.

**562. The Roman Forum. (Pages 209, 224, 256.)**

*"Now thy Forum roars no longer,  
fallen every purple Caesar's dome."*

The Forum, originally the open tract lying between the Capitoline and Palatine hills, was afterwards closely surrounded by temples, shops and basilicas. In the Forum the citizens assembled to discuss affairs of state and to transact private business; there justice was administered, and there, from the rostra, orators harangued the people. It was, in a word, the heart of the Roman Empire. According to an old tradition, it was in the Forum that the Sabine women, in the days of Romulus, intervened to make peace between the Romans and the Sabines (page 65).

**563. The Basilica of Constantine. (Page 321.)**

The Basilicas of ancient Rome were splendid public buildings (commonly adorned with columns and statues) which served both as halls of justice and as business exchanges. The basilica became the type of the earliest buildings for Christian worship, and the name is still given to the larger churches in Rome. The Basilica of Constantine, built about 312 A.D., had a nave and two aisles, and was 320 feet in length and 235 feet in breadth. There remain now only three gigantic arches of the north aisle.

**564. The Spoils of Jerusalem. (Page 326.)**

Spanning the Sacred Way is the arch of Titus, erected to commemorate the conquest of Judea by Vespasian and his son Titus in 70 B.C. On the inner side of the single arch are bas-reliefs, representing on the one side the triumph of Titus, and on the other the spoils taken from the temple at Jerusalem, including the seven-branched golden candlestick, the golden table and the silver trumpets, spoils which had been brought to Rome and deposited in one of its temples.

# VOCABULARIES.

## LATIN-ENGLISH.

[The numbers refer to sections.]

### A

- ā, ab, prep. with abl.,** from ; by ; on.  
**abdō, ere -didī, -ditum,** hide, conceal.  
**adducō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,** carry away, carry off.  
**abjiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,** throw away.  
**abstineō, ēre, uī, -tentum,** hold aloof, abstain.  
**absum, abesse, āfuī,** be away, be distant, be absent.  
**ac, conj.,** and, and also.  
**accēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum,** approach, draw near.  
**accidō, ere, -cidī,** happen, befall.  
**accipio, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** receive ; suffer.  
**Achillēs, is, M.,** Achilles, *the hero of Homer's Iliad.*  
**aciēs, ēī, F.,** line (of battle).  
**ācriter, adv.,** fiercely, vigorously.  
**ad, prep. with acc.,** to, towards, against ; with a view to, for ; until.  
**adducō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,** bring ; influence, induce, move.  
**adeō, īre, -īī, -itum,** advance ; approach, visit.  
**aditus, ūs, M.,** approach, means of approach.  
**administrō, āre, āvī, ātum,** manage, attend to.  
**adorior, īrī, -ortus sum,** attack, assault.  
**adsum, -esse, -fuī,** be present, be at hand.  
**adulēscēns, -entis, M.,** young man.  
**adventus, ūs, M.,** arrival, approach.  
**aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum,** build.  
**Aeduī, ōrum, M. plur.,** the Aedui, *a tribe in central Gaul.*  
**aegrē, adv.,** with difficulty, scarcely.  
**aequus, a, um,** fair, right.  
**aestās, -tātis, F.,** summer.  
**afficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** affect, visit, overcome.  
**affirmō, āre, āvī, ātum,** declare.  
**Agamemnon, -onis, M.,** Agamemnon, *a Grecian king.*  
**ager, agrī, M.,** land, field, territory.  
**agger, -eris, M.,** mound.  
**aggredior, ī, -gressus sum,** attack.  
**agmen, -mētis, N.,** line of march, column.  
**agō, ere, ēgī, āctum,** drive, move forward ; do ; treat, confer.  
**alacritās, -tātis, F.,** ardour, activity.  
**aliquantum, adv.,** some distance.  
**aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod),** someone, something [456].  
**aliter, adv.,** in another way ; **aliter atque,** otherwise than.  
**altus, a, ud,** other, another [207].  
**Alpēs, ium, F. plur.,** the Alps.  
**alter, era, erum,** the other [207].  
**altitūdō, -dinis, F.,** height, depth.  
**altus, a, um,** high, deep ; **N., altum, ī, as noun,** the sea.  
**āmentia, ae, F.,** frenzy, madness.  
**amicitia, ae, F.,** friendship.  
**amicus, a, um,** friendly ; *superl.,* closest or dearest friend.

**amicus, I, M.,** friend.  
**āmittō, ere, -mīsi, -misum,** lose.  
**amplius, adv., comparative,** further, any more.  
**ancora, ae, F.,** anchor.  
**angustus, a, um,** narrow, scanty.  
**animadvertō, ere, -tī, -sum,** notice, observe.  
**animus, I, M.,** spirit, heart.  
**annus, I, M.,** year.  
**ante, prep. with acc.,** before.  
**anteā, adv.,** before, previously.  
**antequam, conj.,** before.  
**apertus, a, um,** open, clear; unprotected.  
**appāreō, ēre, uī, itum,** be clear, be evident.  
**appellō, āre, āvī, ātum,** name, call.  
**appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum,** approach, *with dat.*  
**apud, prep. with acc.,** with, among.  
**aqua, ae, F.,** water.  
**Arar, Araris, M.,** Arar, *a river in Gaul.*  
**arbitror, ārī, ātus sum,** think, consider.  
**ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsu, burn,** be fired.  
**Arlovistus, I, M.,** Ariovistus, *a German king.*  
**arma, ōrum, N. plur.,** arms.  
**armātus, a, um,** armed.  
**ars, artis, F.,** art.  
**atque, conj.,** and, and also.  
**auctor, -tōris, M.,** advocate, adviser.  
**auctoritās, -tātis, F.,** influence, weight.  
**audācter, adv.,** boldly.  
**audāx, -ācis, bold,** daring.  
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum,** venture, dare [313].  
**audiō, īre, īvī, itum,** hear.

**augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum,** increase [225. N.B.].  
**aureus, a, um,** golden.  
**aut, conj.,** or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.  
**autem, conj.,** but, however.  
**autumnus, I, M.,** autumn.  
**auxillum, I, N.,** aid, help; *plur.,* auxiliaries, reinforcements.  
**āvertō, ere, -tī, -sum,** turn aside.

## B

**baculum, I, N.,** staff, wand.  
**barbarus, I, M.,** barbarian.  
**Belga, ae, M.,** Belgian.  
**bellicōsus, a, um,** warlike.  
**bellō, āre, āvī, ātum,** make war.  
**bellum, I, N.,** war.  
**bene, adv.,** well.  
**beneficium, I, N.,** kindness, favour.  
**benīgnē, adv.,** courteously, with kindness.  
**benīgnitās, -tātis, F.,** kindness, courtesy.  
**bibō, ere, bibī, drink.**  
**bonus, a, um,** good.  
**brevī, adv.,** soon, in a short time.  
**brevis, e, short,** brief.  
**Britannia, ae, F.,** Britain.  
**Britannus, I, M.,** Briton.

## C

**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum,** fall.  
**caecus, a, um,** blind.  
**Caesar, -aris, M.,** Caesar, *especially* Caius Julius Caesar, 100-44 B.C.  
**calamitās, -tātis, F.,** disaster, defeat.  
**calefaciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum,** heat.  
**captō, ere, cēpī, captum,** take, capture; take up; adopt, form.  
**captīvus, I, M.,** prisoner, captive.  
**caput, capitlis, N.,** head.



**carmen, -minis, N.**, song; charm, incantation.

**carō, carnis, F.**, flesh.

**carrus, I, M.**, cart, wagon.

**castra, ōrum, N. plur.**, camp.

**causa, ac, F.**, cause, reason; *abl.* **causā**, for the sake (of), for the purpose (of) [181].

**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum**, give way, retire.

**celer, eris, ere**, swift, speedy.

**celeritās, -tātis, F.**, swiftness, speed.

**celeriter, adv.**, quickly, swiftly, speedily, soon.

**cēnō, āre, āvī, ātum**, dine.

**centum**, a hundred.

**centuriō, -ōnis, M.**, centurion.

**certus, a, um**, fixed, certain; **certiōrem faciō**, inform.

**cēterī, ac, a**, the others, the rest.

**cibus, I, M.**, food.

**Circē, ēs, F.**, Circe, *a sea-nymph and sorceress*.

**circiter, adv. and prep. with acc.**, about.

**circum, prep. with acc.**, around, about.

**circumdō, dare, -dedī, -datum**, surround, enclose.

**circumvenīō, īre, -vērī, -ventum**, surround.

**citerior, -ōris**, nearer; **Citerior Gallia**, hither Gaul, *south of the Alps and north of Italy*.

**civis, is, M.**, citizen.

**civitās, -tātis, F.**, citizenship; state, country.

**clāmītō, āre, āvī, ātum**, cry out.

**clāmō, āre, āvī, ātum**, shout, cry out.

**clāmor, -ōris, M.**, shout, shouting, outcry.

**classis, is, F.**, fleet.

**coeptī, isse**, began [125].

**cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitum**, learn, find out, ascertain; *perfect*, know.

**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum**, collect; compel, force.

**cohors, cohortis, F.**, cohort.

**cohortor, ārī, ātus sum**, encourage, urge, exhort.

**collis, is, M.**, hill.

**collocō, āre, āvī, ātum**, station.

**colloquium, I, N.**, interview, conference.

**colloquor, ī, -locūtus sum**, have an interview, confer.

**commeātus, ūs, M.**, supplies, provisions.

**comminus, adv.**, hand to hand, at close range.

**committō, ere, -mīsī, -missum**, join, engage; entrust.

**commoveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**, alarm, dismay, disturb, excite.

**communis, e**, common, general, public.

**comparō, āre, āvī, ātum**, get together, procure.

**compellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum**, drive.

**complector, ī, -plexus sum**, embrace.

**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum**, fill.

**complūrēs, a (gen. -lum)**, several.

**comportō, āre, āvī, ātum**, bring together, collect.

**comprehendō, ere, -hendī, -hēsum**, seize, catch.

**concēdō, -ere, -cessī, cessum**, grant, yield.

**concillium, I, N.**, meeting, council.

**condō, ere, -didī, -ditum**, store, put away; found.

**cōnectō, ere, -nexuī, -nexum**, fasten together.



**cōnferō, ferre, contulī, collātum,**  
collect, gather, convey; **se cōn-**  
**ferre,** betake one's self, go.

**cōnficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** finish,  
accomplish; **cōnfectus,** exhausted.

**cōnfidō, ere, -fīsus sum,** trust, *with*  
*dat.* [313].

**cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum,** strength-  
en; encourage, arouse; establish;  
declare.

**cōnfugiō, ere, -fūgī, flee.**

**congregior, ī, -gressus sum,** en-  
gage, fight.

**conjiō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,** hurl,  
throw.

**conjungō, ere, -jūnxī, -junctum,**  
unite, join [282, N.B.].

**cōnor, ārī, ātus sum,** try, attempt.

**conquirō, ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum,**  
look about for.

**cōnscendō, ere, -scendī, -scēsum,**  
climb; embark.

**cōnscrībō, ere, -scripsī, -scrīptum,**  
enrol, enlist.

**cōnsequor, ī, -secūtus sum,** over-  
take; attain, acquire.

**cōnslō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum,** en-  
camp.

**cōnsiliū, ī, N.,** plan, design, pur-  
pose; **commūnī cōnsiliō,** by com-  
mon consent.

**cōnsistō, ere, -stītī, take up posi-**  
tion; halt.

**cōnspectus, ūs, M.,** sight, view.

**cōnspiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum,**  
see, observe.

**cōnstituō, ere, -uī, -ūtum,** deter-  
mine; fix, appoint.

**cōnsuēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum,**  
become accustomed [243, N.B.].

**cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, F.,** custom.

**cōnsulō, ere, -uī, -tum,** consult;  
take thought.

**cōnsūmō, ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum,**  
spend; exhaust, destroy.

**contendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum,**  
strive; hasten; contend.

**continēns, -entis,** incessant, con-  
tinual; unbroken, continuous.

**continēns, -entis, F.,** mainland, con-  
tinent.

**continenter, adv.,** continually, con-  
tinuously.

**contineō, ēre, uī, -tentum,** confine,  
restrain, hem in; enclose, bound.

**continuus, a, um,** successive.

**contrā, prep. with acc.,** against.

**contrōversia, ae, F.,** quarrel, dis-  
pute.

**conveniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum,**  
come together, assemble.

**convertō, ere, -vertī, -versum,**  
turn, change [282, N.B.].

**convīviū, ī, N.,** feast, banquet.

**convocō, āre, āvī, ātum,** call to-  
gether, summon.

**coorior, īrī, -ortus sum,** arise, break  
out.

**cōpia, ae, F.,** plenty, supply, abund-  
ance; *plur.,* forces, troops.

**cōpiōsus, a, um,** rich.

**cornū, ūs, N.,** horn; wing.

**corpus, -oris, N.,** body.

**corripiō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum**  
snatch up, seize.

**cotīdliānus, a, um,** daily.

**cotīdliē, adv.,** daily, every day.

**Crassus, ī, M.,** Crassus, *a Roman*  
*name.*

**crēber, bra, brum,** frequent, numer-  
ous.

**crēdō, ere, -didī, -ditum,** believe.

**crūdēlis, e,** cruel.

**crūdēlīter, adv.,** cruelly, with  
cruelty.

**cum, prep. with abl.,** with.

**cum**, *conj.*, when; since, as.  
**cupidē**, *adv.*, eagerly.  
**cupiditās**, -tātis, *F.*, eagerness, longing.  
**cupidus**, *a, um*, desirous, eager, fond.  
**cūr**, *adv.*, why.  
**cursus**, ūs, *M.*, course.  
**custōs**, -ōdis, *M.*, guard, keeper.  
**Cyclōps**, -ōpis, *M.*, Cyclops, *one of a fabulous race of giants, in Sicily.*

## D

**dē**, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from, down; concerning, about, of.  
**dēbitus**, *a, um*, due, proper, well deserved.  
**dēcēdō**, *ere*, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw.  
**decem**, ten.  
**dēcernō**, *ere*, -crēvī, -crētum, decree, assign.  
**decimus**, *a, um*, tenth.  
**dēditō**, -ōnis, *F.*, surrender [263].  
**dēdō**, *ere*, -didī, -ditum, surrender [282, N.B.].  
**dēdūcō**, *ere*, -dūxī, -ductum, lead off, withdraw; draw down, launch.  
**dēfendō**, *ere*, -fendī, -fēsum, defend.  
**dēfēnsor**, -ōris, *M.*, defender.  
**dēferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry down; bring; report.  
**dēficiō**, *ere*, -fēcī, -fectum, fail, give out.  
**deinde**, *adv.*, then, next.  
**dējiciō**, *ere*, -jēcī, -jectum, cast down; dislodge; disappoint.  
**dēllgō**, āre, āvī, ātum, tie, moor.  
**dēllgō**, *ere*, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose.  
**dēmōnstrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, point out, explain; mention, make mention.

**dēmum**, *adv.*, at length.  
**dēnsus**, *a, um*, thick, dense.  
**dēpellō**, *ere*, -pullī, -pulsum, drive away, drive, remove.  
**dēpōnō**, *ere*, -posuī, -positum, lay down; deposit; put away, abandon.  
**dēsillō**, īrē, -sillū, -sultum, leap down.  
**dēsistō**, *ere*, -stitī, -stitum, cease, abandon.  
**dēspērō**, āre, āvī, ātum, despair.  
**dēstringō**, *ere*, -strinxī, -strictum, draw, unsheathe.  
**dēsum**, deesse, **dēfui**, be wanting, be lacking.  
**dēterreō**, ēre, uī, itum, deter, hinder.  
**dētineō**, ēre, uī, -tentum, detain, delay.  
**deus**, ī, *M.*, a god.  
**dēvorō**, āre, āvī, ātum, devour, eat.  
**dexter**, tra, trum, right.  
**dīcō**, *ere*, dīxī, dictum, say, speak; appoint, fix.  
**dīēs**, ēī, *M.*, day.  
**difficilis**, *e*, difficult, hard.  
**difficultās**, -tātis, *F.*, difficulty.  
**diligēns**, -entis, careful, diligent.  
**diligenter**, *adv.*, carefully.  
**diligentia**, ac, *F.*, care, diligence.  
**dīmicō**, āre, āvī, ātum, fight, engage.  
**dīmittō**, *ere*, -misi, -missum, send out, despatch; dismiss.  
**dīscēdō**, *ere*, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, depart, leave.  
**dīscensus**, ūs, *M.*, departure, withdrawal.  
**dīsijciō**, *ere*, -jēcī, -jectum, scatter.  
**dīspōnō**, *ere*, -posuī, -positum, place (at intervals), post.  
**dissimilis**, *e*, dissimilar, unlike.



**distō, āre**, be apart.

**distribuō, ere, -uī, -ūtum**, assign, distribute, allot; divide.

**diū, adv.**, long, for a long time.

**divellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum**, tear asunder.

**dividō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum**, divide, separate.

**dō, dare, dedi, datum**, give.

**doceō, ēre, uī, doctum**, teach, explain.

**dolor, -ōris, M.**, pain, grief.

**dolus, ī, M.**, craft, cunning; trick.

**domus, ūs, F.**, house, home; **domum**, home, towards home; **domō**, from home.

**dormiō, īre, īvī, ītum**, sleep.

**dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum**, hesitate; have doubts.

**ducentī, ae, a**, two hundred.

**dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum**, lead.

**dulcis, e**, sweet, pleasant.

**dum, conj.**, while [273].

**duo, ae, o**, two.

**duodecim**, twelve.

**duodēvigintī**, eighteen.

**duplex, -icis**, twofold, double.

**dux, ducis, M.**, leader, guide.

## E

**ē, ex, prep. with abl.**, out of, from, of.

**ēbrius, a, um**, drunken.

**ēdūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum**, lead out.

**efficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum**, effect, accomplish, make; construct, build.

**effugiō, ere, -fūgī**, escape.

**egī, from agō**.

**ego, meī, I**.

**egredior, ī, -gressus sum**, go forth, issue forth; leave; disembark, land.

**ēgregiē, adv.**, excellently.

**ējiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum**, throw out; **sē ējicere**, rush out.

**ēmittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum**, send out.

**enim, conj.**, for.

**eō, īre, īī (ivī), itum**, go.

**eō, adv.**, thither, there, thereon.

**eques, equitis, M.**, horse-soldier; *plur.*, cavalry.

**equester, tris, tre**, of cavalry, cavalry.

**equitātus, ūs, M.**, cavalry.

**equus, ī, M.**, horse.

**errō, āre, āvī, ātum**, wander.

**ērampō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum**, break out, sally out.

**ēruptiō, -ōnis, F.**, sally, sortie.

**et, conj.**, and; **et . . et**, both . . and.

**etiam, adv.**, even, also.

**etsī, conj.**, although.

**Eurylochus, ī, M.**, Eurylochus, a companion of Ulysses.

**ēvādō, ere, -vāsī, -vāsum**, escape.

**ēveniō, īre, -vēmī, -ventum**, turn out.

**ex, prep. with abl.**, out of, from, of.

**excēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum**, withdraw.

**excipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**, receive, welcome.

**excitō, āre, āvī, ātum**, arouse.

**exeō, īre, -īī, -itum**, go out, go forth, leave.

**exercitus, ūs, M.**, army.

**exhauriō, īre, -hausī, -haustum**, drain.

**existimō, āre, āvī, ātum**, think, consider.

**expediō, īre, īvī, ītum**, set free, make ready; **expeditus**, in light marching order.

**expellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum**, drive out.

**explōrātor**, -tōris, M., scout.  
**explōrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, examine, reconnoitre.  
**expōnō**, ere, -posuī, -positum, put out; **in terram expōnō**, land, put ashore.  
**expūgnō**, āre, āvī, ātum, storm, take by storm.  
**exsiliū**, I, N., exile.  
**exspectō**, āre, āvī, ātum, await, wait (for); expect; wait.  
**extrēmus**, a, um, outermost; most distant, remotest.

## F

**facile**, *adv.*, easily.  
**facilis**, e, easy.  
**faciō**, ere, fēcī, factum, do; make, build.  
**facultās**, -tātis, F., opportunity; abundance.  
**falsus**, a, um, false.  
**fāma**, ae, F., rumour, report.  
**famēs**, is, F., hunger.  
**ferē**, *adv.*, almost, nearly.  
**ferō**, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, carry, bring; endure, stand.  
**fessus**, a, um, wearied.  
**fidēlis**, e, faithful.  
**fidēs**, eī, F., faith, faithfulness, fidelity.  
**figūra**, ae, F., shape, figure.  
**fīlīa**, ae, F., daughter.  
**fīllus**, I, M., son.  
**fīnis**, is, M., end; *plur.*, borders, territory.  
**fīnitimus**, a, um, neighbouring, adjacent; *as noun*, neighbour.  
**fīō**, fierī, factus sum, be made; be done; happen.  
**fīrmō**, āre, āvī, ātum, strengthen.  
**fīrmus**, a, um, strong.

**fleō**, ēre, ēvī, ētum, weep, be in tears.  
**fluctus**, ūs, M., wave.  
**flūmen**, -minis, N., river.  
**fluō**, ere, flūxī, fluxum, flow.  
**fluvius**, I, M., river.  
**fōns**, fontis, M., spring, fountain.  
**forīs**, *adv.*, out of doors, outside.  
**fōrma**, ae, F., form, appearance.  
**fōrmōsus**, a, um, beautiful.  
**forte**, *adv.*, by chance, as it happened.  
**fortis**, e, brave.  
**fortiter**, *adv.*, bravely, gallantly.  
**fortitūdō**, -dinis, F., bravery.  
**fortūna**, ae, F., fortune; *plur.*, resources, possessions, property.  
**fossa**, ae, F., trench.  
**frangō**, ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, shatter; crush.  
**frāter**, -tris, M., brother.  
**frōns**, frontis, F., forehead.  
**fructus**, ūs, M., fruit.  
**frūmentārius**, a, um, of grain [274].  
**frūmentor**, āri, ātus sum, forage, get provisions.  
**frūmentum**, I, N., grain, corn.  
**fruor**, I, fructus sum, enjoy, *with abl.*  
**frūstrā**, *adv.*, in vain.  
**fuga**, ae, F., flight [211, 289].  
**fuglō**, ere, fūgī, fugitum, flee, escape.  
**furor**, -ōris, M., rage, frenzy.

## G

**Gallia**, ae, F., Gaul.  
**Gallus**, I, M., a Gaul.  
**gaudium**, I, N., joy, rejoicing.  
**genus**, -eris, N., kind, sort.  
**Germānia**, ae, F., Germany.  
**Germānus**, I, M., German.



**gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, carry,**  
conduct; carry on, wage; *passive*,  
be done, take place; **rēs gesta,**  
exploit, deed.

**gigās, -antis, M., giant.**

**gladius, ī, M., sword.**

**Graecia, ae, F., Greece.**

**Graecus, ī, M., Greek.**

**grātia, ae, F., gratitude; grātiam**  
**referō, make a return.**

**gravis, e, heavy, severe, serious;**  
deep.

**graviter, adv., seriously, severely.**

**gravō, āre, āvī, ātum, overcome;**  
**gravātus, heavy.**

**gustō, āre, āvī, ātum, taste.**

## H

**habeō, ēre, uī, itum, have; hold.**

**habitō, āre, āvī, ātum, dwell.**

**hasta, ae, F., spear.**

**hauriō, īre, hausī, haustum, drink**  
off.

**Hector, -oris, M., Hector, the greatest**  
*of the Trojan warriors.*

**Helena, ae, F., Helen, the fairest**  
*woman of Greece.*

**Helvētīī, ōrum, M. plur., the Helve-**  
tians.

**herba, ae, F., plant, herb.**

**hīberna, ōrum, N. plur., winter**  
camp, winter quarters.

**hic, haec, hōc, this; the following;**  
he.

**hic, adv., here.**

**hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, winter, pass**  
the winter.

**hiems, hiemis, F., winter.**

**homō, -inis, M., man; plur., people.**

**hōra, ae, F., hour.**

**horribilis, e, terrible, dreadful.**

**hortor, ārī, ātus sum, encourage,**  
urge.

**hospitium, ī, N., hospitality.**

**hostis, is, M., enemy.**

**hūc, adv., hither, here.**

**hūmānus, a, um, human.**

**humī, adv., on the ground.**

## I

**ibi, adv., there.**

**īdem, eadem, īdem, the same.**

**īdōneus, a, um, fit, suitable.**

**igitur, adv., accordingly, therefore.**

**īgnārus, a, um, ignorant, not know-**  
ing.

**īgnis, is, M., fire.**

**īgnōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, not know,**  
be ignorant (of).

**īgnōtus, a, um, unknown, strange.**

**ille, a, ud, that, he.**

**impedīmentum, ī, N., hindrance;**  
*plur., baggage.*

**impediō, īre, īvī, itum, hinder, im-**  
pede.

**im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, in-**  
cite, drive, impel.

**imperātor, -tōris, M., commander**  
(in chief).

**imperātum, ī, N., command, order,**  
bidding.

**imperītus, a, um, inexperienced,**  
unacquainted.

**imperium, ī, N., command, control,**  
rule, sway, supremacy, sovereignty.

**imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, give orders,**  
command, order, rule, govern, *with*  
*dat.*; require, demand [181, N.B.].

**impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, obtain (a**  
request).

**impetus, ūs, M., attack, onset.**

**implōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, beseech.**

**impōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum,**  
place upon, place.

**in, prep. with abl., in, on, among;**  
*with acc., into, to, on.*

**Incendō, ere, -cendī, -cēsum,** burn; inflame.

**Incidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsūm,** fall into.

**Inclūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsūm,** shut up, imprison.

**Incōgnitus, a, um,** unknown.

**Incola, ae, m.,** inhabitant.

**Incolō, ere, -coluī,** dwell, inhabit.

**Incolumis, e,** safe, unharmed, intact.

**Incommodum, ī, n.,** misfortune, loss, damage.

**Incrēdibilis, e,** incredible.

**Inde, adv.,** thence; then.

**Ineō, -īre, -īī, -ītum,** enter; enter upon, begin; adopt, form [421].

**Infectus, a, um,** not done; **rē Infectā, abl. absol.,** without accomplishing one's purpose.

**Inferior, -ōris,** lower.

**Inferō, ferre, -intulī, -llātum,** bring; cause, inflict [394].

**Ingēns, -entis,** huge, vast.

**Inimicus, a, um,** unfriendly, hostile; **m., as noun,** enemy.

**Iniquus, a, um,** unfair, unjust.

**Initium, ī, n.,** beginning [445].

**Injiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,** put in; impart (to), inspire, arouse (in), *with dat.*

**Injūria, ae, f.,** wrong doing, wrong, injury, violence.

**Innāscor, ī, -nātus sum,** spring up, be aroused.

**Inopia, ae, f.,** want, scarcity.

**Inquit, defective verb,** said he.

**Insānia, ae, f.,** madness; **in Insāniam Incidō,** become mad.

**Insequor, ī, -secūtus sum,** follow up, pursue.

**Insidiae, ārum, f. plur.,** ambush, treachery; **per Insidiās,** treacherously.

**Instituō, ere, -ui, -ūtum,** undertake; set about [398]; build, establish.

**Instruō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum,** draw up, arrange; equip, furnish.

**Insula, ae, f.,** island.

**Intellegō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum,** understand, be aware, perceive.

**Integer, gra, grum,** fresh.

**Inter, prep. with acc.,** between, among.

**Intercludō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsūm,** cut off [438].

**Intereā, adv.,** meanwhile.

**Interficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** kill, slay, put to death.

**Interim, adv.,** meanwhile, in the meantime.

**Interior, -ōris,** inner, interior.

**Intermittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum** put between; *passive,* elapse.

**Intervallum, ī, n.,** interval, distance.

**Intrā, prep. with acc.,** within.

**Intrō, āre, -āvī, -ātum,** enter.

**Introeō, -īre, -īī (-īvī) -ītum,** enter.

**Introitus, ūs, m.,** entrance.

**Inūtilis, e,** useless.

**Inveniō, īre, -vēmī, -ventum,** find, come upon.

**Invictus, a, um,** unconquered, invincible.

**Invitō, āre, -āvī, -ātum,** invite, urge.

**Invītus, a, um,** unwilling, against (one's) will.

**Ipse, a, um,** himself, he himself.

**Īra, ae, f.,** anger, wrath.

**Irrumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** burst in, rush (in).

**Irruō, ere, -ruī, rush (in).**

**Is, ea, id, he; that, this, the.**

**Ita, adv.,** thus, so, in such a way.

**Ītalia, ae, f.,** Italy.

**itaque**, *adv.*, accordingly, therefore.  
**iter**, **itineris**, *N.*, road, route; march; passage, right of passing.  
**iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time.  
**Ithaca**, *ac, F.*, Ithaca, *an island west of Greece.*

## J

**iaciō**, *ere, jēcī, jactum*, hurl, throw, cast.  
**jam**, *adv.*, now, by this time, already.  
**jānuā**, *ac, F.*, door, entrance.  
**jubeō**, *ēre, jussī, jussum*, order.  
**jungō**, *ere, jūnxī, jūnctum*, join [349].  
**Jūra**, *ac, M.*, Jura, *a range of mountains in Gaul.*  
**jūs**, **jūris**, *N.*, right, law.  
**jūstus**, *a, um*, just.

## L

**Lablēnus**, *ī, M.*, Labienus, *one of Caesar's staff in Gaul.*  
**labor**, *-ōris, M.*, toil, labour.  
**labōrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*, toil, struggle, be in distress.  
**lāc**, **lactis**, *N.*, milk.  
**laccessō**, *ere, -ivī, -itum*, harass.  
**lacrīma**, *ac, F.*, tear.  
**lacus**, *ūs, M.*, lake.  
**lactitia**, *ac, F.*, joy, rejoicing.  
**lapis**, *-idis, M.*, stone.  
**lātē**, *adv.*, widely, extensively.  
**lateō**, *ēre, uī*, be hidden.  
**lātītūdō**, *-dinis, F.*, width.  
**lātus**, *a, um*, broad, wide.  
**latus**, *-cris, N.*, side, flank.  
**lēgātīō**, *-ōnis, F.*, embassy.  
**lēgātus**, *ī, M.*, lieutenant, staff-officer; ambassador, envoy.  
**legiō**, *-ōnis, F.*, legion (*6000 men*).  
**legiōnārius**, *a, um*, legionary.

**levis**, *e*, light, slight, unimportant.  
**liber**, *era, erum*, free; undisturbed.  
**liberē**, *adv.*, freely.  
**liberī**, *ōrum, M. plur.*, children  
**liberō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*, free.  
**libertās**, *-tātis, F.*, freedom.  
**Libya**, *ac, F.*, Libya, North Africa.  
**licet**, *ēre, licuit*, it is permitted, *with dat. and infin.*; *render freely by may, might.*  
**līgneus**, *a, um*, wooden.  
**littera**, *ac, F.*, letter; *plur.*, despatch, letter.  
**lītus**, *-oris, N.*, shore, coast.  
**locus**, *ī, M.*, place, position; *plur.* **loca**, *N.*, places, ground, district.  
**locūtus**, from **loquor**.  
**longē**, *adv.*, far.  
**longitūdō**, *-dinis, F.*, length.  
**longus**, *a, um*, long.  
**loquor**, *ī, locūtus sum*, speak, say.  
**lōtus**, *ī, F.*, lotus.  
**Lūcius**, *ī, M.*, Lucius, *a Roman name.*  
**lūx**, **lūcis**, *F.*, light; **prīma lūx**, daybreak, dawn.

## M

**magis**, *adv.*, more; rather.  
**magistrātus**, *ūs, M.*, magistrate.  
**māgnificentia**, *ac, F.*, splendour.  
**māgnificus**, *a, um*, splendid, sumptuous.  
**māgnitūdō**, *-dinis, F.*, greatness, extent, size.  
**māgnopere**, *adv.*, greatly, exceedingly.  
**māgnus**, *a, um*, great, large; forced [95]; loud [416]; strong [500].  
**male**, *adv.*, badly.  
**mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī**, prefer, had rather [401].



**malum**, **I**, **N.**, evil, mishap, misfortune.

**malus**, **a**, **um**, bad, evil.

**maneō**, **ēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsum**, remain.

**manus**, **ūs**, **F.**, hand; band, force.

**Mārcus**, **I**, **M.**, Marcus, *a Roman name*.

**mare**, **maris**, **N.**, sea.

**māter**, **mātris**, **F.**, mother.

**mātrimōnium**, **I**, **N.**, marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcō**, marry.

**mātūrē**, *adv.*, early, soon.

**mātūrō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, make haste.

**medicāmentum**, **I**, **N.**, drug.

**medlocris**, **e**, moderate.

**medius**, **a**, **um**, middle, mid [175].

**membrum**, **I**, **N.**, limb.

**meminī**, **isse**, remember [268].

**memor**, **-oris**, mindful.

**memoria**, **ae**, **F.**, memory [268].

**Menelāus**, **I**, **M.**, Menelaus, *king of Sparta in Greece*.

**mercātor**, **-tōris**, **M.**, trader.

**Mercurius**, **I**, **M.**, Mercury, *the messenger of the gods*.

**merīdiēs**, **ēī**, **M.**, midday, noon; south.

**meus**, **a**, **um**, my, mine.

**mīles**, **mīlitis**, **M.**, soldier.

**mīltāris**, **e**, military; of war.

**minimē**, *adv.*, least, by no means.

**minitor**, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, threaten.

**minus**, *adv.*, less; **sī minus**, if not.

**mīror**, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, wonder.

**mīrus**, **a**, **um**, wonderful.

**miscēō**, **ēre**, **miscuī**, **mixtum**, mix.

**mittō**, **ere**, **mīsī**, **missum**, send.

**modus**, **I**, **M.**, manner, fashion; kind, sort; means.

**moneō**, **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, advise, warn.

**mōns**, **montis**, **M.**, mountain.

**mōnstrō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, point out, show.

**mōnstrum**, **I**, **N.**, monster.

**mora**, **ae**, **F.**, delay.

**moror**, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, delay, wait.

**mors**, **mortis**, **F.**, death.

**moveō**, **ēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, move.

**mox**, *adv.*, soon.

**muller**, **-cris**, **F.**, woman.

**multitūdō**, **-dinis**, **F.**, large number, amount.

**multō**, *adv.*, much.

**multum**, *adv.*, much.

**multus**, **a**, **um**, much; *plur.*, many.

**mūnlō**, **ire**, **ivī**, **itum**, fortify, protect.

**mūnitiō**, **-ōnis**, **F.**, fortification, fortifying.

**mūnus**, **-eris**, **N.**, gift, offering.

**mūrus**, **I**, **M.**, wall.

## N

**nam**, *conj.*, for.

**nancīscor**, **I**, **nactus sum**, get, obtain, meet with.

**nātiō**, **-ōnis**, **F.**, tribe, nation.

**nātūra**, **ae**, **F.**, nature.

**nauta**, **ae**, **M.**, sailor.

**nāvicula**, **ae**, **F.**, boat.

**nāvigō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, sail.

**nāvis**, **is**, **F.**, ship.

**nē**, *adv.*, lest, that . . not; not.

**nec**, *conj.*, nor, and not; **nec . . nec**, neither . . nor.

**necessāriō**, *adv.*, necessarily, of necessity.

**necō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, kill, slay.

**negō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, deny, say . . not.

**negōtium**, **I**, **N.**, business, affair.

**nēmō** (**nēmīnis**), **M.**, no one, nobody; *in 506, 507, Noman [349].*



**neque**, *conj.*, nor, and not; **neque . . neque**, neither . . nor.

**neuter**, *tra*, *trum*, neither [205].

**nēve**, *conj.*, and not.

**nihil**, *indeclinable*, *N.*, nothing.

**nisi**, *conj.*, if not; unless, except.

**nōbīlis**, *e*, well-born, noble; famous.

**noceō**, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*, harm, injure, damage, *with dat.*

**noctū**, *adv.*, by night.

**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, be unwilling, do not wish [401].

**nōmen**, *-mīnis*, *N.*, name.

**nōn**, *adv.*, not.

**nōndum**, *adv.*, not yet.

**nōnne**, not, *in questions* [342].

**nōnnūllī**, *ac*, *a*, some, some few.

**nōs**, *nostrum*, we.

**noster**, *tra*, *trum*, our [282].

**nōtūs**, *a*, *um*, known, familiar.

**novem**, nine.

**novitās**, *-tātis*, *F.*, novelty.

**novus**, *a*, *um*, new; **novae rēs**, change, revolution.

**nox**, *noctis*, *F.*, night.

**nūllus**, *a*, *um*, no, none, not one [205].

**num**, *in questions* [342].

**numerus**, *I*, *M.*, number.

**numquam**, *adv.*, never.

**nunc**, *adv.*, now.

**nūntiō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, announce, report; **nūntiātum est**, word was brought.

**nūntius**, *I*, *M.*, messenger.

**nāper**, *adv.*, lately.

O

**ob**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of.

**oblīvīscor**, *I*, **oblītus sum**, forget, be forgetful, *with gen.*

**obsecrō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, beg, beseech.

**obses**, **obsidīs**, *M.*, hostage.

**obstruō**, *ere*, *-strūxī*, *-strūctum*, barricade.

**obtemperō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, obey.

**obtineō**, *ēre*, *uī*, **obtentum**, hold, possess.

**occāsiō**, *-ōnis*, *F.*, opportunity.

**occāsus**, *ūs*, *M.*, setting.

**occīdō**, *ere*, *-cīdī*, *-cīsum*, slay, kill.

**occupātus**, *a*, *um*, occupied, busy, engaged.

**occupō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, seize, take possession of.

**occurrō**, *ere*, *-currī*, *-cursum*, meet, *with dat.*

**ōceanus**, *I*, *M.*, ocean.

**octō**, eight.

**oculus**, *I*, *M.*, eye.

**ōlim**, *adv.*, once upon a time.

**omnīnō**, *adv.*, in all, altogether; entirely; only; at all.

**omnis**, *e*, all, every.

**onerārius**, *a*, *um*, for burdens; **nāvis onerāria**, transport.

**onus**, *-eris*, *N.*, burden, weight.

**oppidum**, *I*, *N.*, town.

**opprimō**, *ere*, *-pressī*, *-pressum*, overpower, overcome, burden.

**oppūgnātiō**, *-ōnis*, *F.*, attack, assault.

**oppūgnō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, attack, assault.

**optimus**, *a*, *um*, best [195].

**opus**, *-eris*, *N.*, work, task.

**ōrātiō**, *-ōnis*, *F.*, speech [300].

**ōrdō**, *-dīnis*, *M.*, order; rank, line.

**orior**, *īrī*, **ortus sum**, arise, rise.

**ōrō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, beg, entreat.

**ostendō**, *ere*, *-tendī*, *-tēsum* or *-tentum*, show, disclose, declare.

**ovīs**, *is*, *F.*, sheep.

## P

**palūs, -ūdis**, *F.*, marsh.

**pār, parls**, equal [176].

**parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum**, spare, *with dat.*

**pāreō, ēre, uī, itum**, be obedient, obey, *with dat.*

**Paris, -idis**, *M.*, Paris, *a prince of Troy.*

**parō, āre, āvī, ātum**, prepare, procure [349]; **parātus, a, um**, ready.

**pars, partis**, *F.*, part; side, direction [365].

**parvus, a, um**, small.

**passim, adv.**, in every direction.

**passus, ūs**, *M.*, pace; **mille passūs**, mile [231, fn.].

**pater, patris**, *M.*, father.

**patior, ī, passus sum**, allow; endure, suffer.

**patria, ae**, *F.*, native land.

**Patroclus, ī**, *M.*, Patroclus, *a Greek warrior.*

**paucī, ae, a**, few.

**paucitās, -tātis**, *F.*, small number.

**paulō, adv.**, a little, shortly, somewhat.

**paulum, adv.**, a little, a short distance.

**pāx, pācis**, *F.*, peace.

**pecus, -oris**, *N.*, cattle, herd; flock.

**pedes, peditis**, *M.*, foot-soldier; *plur.*, infantry.

**pedester, -tris, -tre**, of infantry.

**peditātus, ūs**, *M.*, infantry.

**pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum**, drive; defeat.

**Pēnelopē, ēs**, *F.*, Penelope, *the wife of Ulysses.*

**per, prep. with acc.**, through, throughout; about [507].

**perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum**, bring; report; bear, submit to.

**perficlō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum**, finish.

**periculōsus, a, um**, dangerous.

**periculum, ī**, *N.*, danger, risk.

**perītus, a, um**, skilful, skilled, acquainted, *with gen.* [432].

**permoveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**, influence, affect, alarm.

**perpaucī, ae, a**, very few.

**perpetuus, a, um**, unbroken, lasting; *in perpetuum*, for ever.

**perrumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum**, break through.

**perspiclō, ere, -spexī, -spectum**, see clearly, perceive.

**persuādeō, ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum**, persuade, induce, *with dat.*

**perterreō, ēre, uī, itum**, terrify, frighten.

**pertineō, ēre, uī**, extend; tend.

**perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum**, throw into confusion, confuse; alarm.

**pervenlō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum**, come, arrive, reach [125].

**pēs, pedis**, *M.*, foot [394].

**petō, ere, petivī, petītum**, seek; ask, request.

**pīlum, ī**, *N.*, javelin.

**pinguis, e**, fat.

**plānitīēs, ēī**, *F.*, plain.

**plūrimum, adv.**, most, very much.

**plūs, plūris**, more [197].

**pōculum, ī**, *N.*, cup, goblet.

**poena, ae**, *F.*, penalty.

**polliceor, ērī, itus sum**, promise.

**Polyphēmus, ī**, *N.*, Polyphemus, *the famous Cyclops.*

**pōnō, ere, posuī, positum**, place; pitch (camp); *passive*, depend (on).

**pōns, pontis**, *M.*, bridge [349].

**populor, ārī, ātus sum**, devastate, lay waste.

**populus, ī**, *M.*, people, nation.

**porcus, ī**, *M.*, pig, swine.

**porta**, *ac*, *F.*, gate.

**portō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, carry, bear.

**portus**, *ūs*, *M.*, harbour.

**poscō**, *ere*, *poposcī*, demand.

**possessio**, *-ōnis*, *F.*, possession, occupation.

**possum**, *posse*, *potuī*, be able, can [377].

**post**, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind.

**postea**, *adv.*, afterwards.

**posterus**, *a*, *um*, next, following.

**postquam**, *conj.*, after, when.

**postulō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, demand, require, ask.

**potēns**, *-entis*, powerful.

**potestas**, *-tātis*, *F.*, power, opportunity [445].

**praeacutus**, *a*, *um*, sharpened at the end.

**praeceđō**, *ere*, *-cessī*, *-cessum*, surpass.

**praeda**, *ac*, *F.*, plunder, booty [452].

**praedicō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, announce, assert.

**praedō**, *-dōnis*, *M.*, robber, pirate.

**praedor**, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, plunder, pillage.

**praefectus**, *ī*, *M.*, officer, commander.

**praeficiō**, *ere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*, set over, put in command (charge) of [378. N.B.].

**praemittō**, *ere*, *-misi*, *-misum*, send in advance.

**praesēns**, *-entis*, immediate, instant.

**praesidium**, *ī*, *N.*, garrison, guard.

**praestō**, *āre*, *-stitī*, *-stātum* or *-stitum*, be superior, surpass, *with dat.*; **praestat**, it is preferable or better.

**praesum**, *-esse*, *-fui*, be over, be in command (charge) of, command, *with dat.*

**praeter**, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, past; except.

**praeterea**, *adv.*, besides, else.

**premō**, *ere*, *pressī*, *pressum*, press; harass, beset; *pass.*, be hard pressed.

**Priamus**, *ī*, *M.*, Priam, the last king of Troy.

**primō**, *adv.*, at first.

**primum**, *adv.*, first, in the first place.

**primus**, *a*, *um*, first [308].

**princeps**, *-cipis*, *M.*, leading man, chief man, chief.

**principatus**, *ūs*, *M.*, leadership.

**prius**, *adv.*, earlier; **prius . . quam** until (*literally*, sooner . . than).

**prō**, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; instead of, in return for.

**probō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, test; approve, favour.

**prōceđō**, *ere*, *-cessī*, *-cessum*, advance, proceed.

**procurrō**, *ere*, *-currī*, *-cursum*, run forward, charge.

**prōdeō**, *īre*, *-iī*, *-itum*, come forth, come out.

**prōdūcō**, *ere*, *-dūxī*, *-ductum*, lead forth.

**proellum**, *ī*, *N.*, battle.

**profectiō**, *-ōnis*, *F.*, setting out, departure.

**prōficiō**, *ere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*, accomplish.

**proficiscor**, *ī*, *-fectus sum*, set out.

**profuglō**, *ere*, *-fūgī*, flee, make one's escape.

**prōgredior**, *ī*, *-gressus sum*, advance, proceed.

**prohibeō**, *ēre*, *nī*, *itum*, keep, prevent [167. N.B.].

**prōjiciō**, *ere*, *-jēcī*, *-jectum*, throw down, throw.



**prōmō**, ere, **prōmpsī**, **prōmptum**, bring out.

**prope**, *adv.*, nearly, almost, near; *prep. with acc.*, near.

**propter**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.

**prōpulsō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, repel.

**prōspiciō**, ere, **-spexī**, **-spectum**, provide (for), attend (to), secure.

**prōsternō**, ere, **-strāvī**, **-strātum**, stretch prostrate.

**prōvehō**, ere, **-vexī**, **-vectum**, carry forward; *passive*, proceed.

**prōvideō**, ēre, **-vidī**, **-vīsum**, foresee; provide, secure.

**prōvincia**, ae, f., province.

**proximus**, a, um, nearest, next [196].

**prūdēns**, -entis, discreet, prudent.

**prūdētia**, ae, f., prudence, sagacity.

**pūblicus**, a, um, public, of the state.

**Pūblius**, ī, m., Publius, a Roman name.

**puella**, ae, f., girl, maiden.

**puer**, erī, m., boy.

**pūgna**, ae, f., flight, fighting, battle.

**pūgnō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, fight.

**pulcher**, ehra, ehrum, beautiful.

### Q

**quacrō**, ere, **quacsivī**, **quacsitum**, ask, inquire (**ab**=of); seek.

**quālis**, e, of what sort, what.

**quam**, *adv.*, than; *with superlatives* as — as possible [219].

**quantus**, a, um, how great, how large.

**quārtus**, a, um, fourth.

**quasi**, *adv.*, as if, as it were.

**quattuor**, four.

**-que**, *enclitic conj.*, and [62].

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, who, which, what, that [254].

**quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** or **quoddam**, certain [458].

**quidem**, *adv.*, to be sure, indeed; **nē . . quidem**, not even.

**quīndecim**, fifteen.

**quīngentī**, ae, a, five hundred.

**quīnquāgintā**, fifty.

**quīnque**, five.

**quīntus**, a, um, fifth.

**quī**, **quae**, **quid**, who, which, what [341].

**quī**, **qua**, **quid** or **quod**, any [457].

**quisquam**, **quidquam**, any [457].

**quīsque**, **quaeque**, **quidque** or **quodque**, each [459].

**quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quidvis** or **quodvis**, any [457].

**quō**, *adv.*, whither, where [343, N.B.].

**quod**, *conj.*, because.

### R

**ratio**, -ōnis, f., method; manner, way.

**recēns**, -entis, recent, new.

**recipiō**, ere, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, regain, recover; *with sē*, betake one's self, retreat, recover, rally.

**rēda**, ae, f., wagon.

**reddō**, ere, **reddidī**, **redditum**, give back, restore.

**redeō**, īre, **-iī**, **-itum**, return.

**reditus**, ūs, m., return.

**redūcō**, ere, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, lead back; restore.

**referō**, -ferre, **rettulī**, **relātum**, bring back, carry back; report [394].

**regiō**, -ōnis, f., district, country, region.

**rēgnum**, ī, n., kingdom, rule, sovereignty.

**reiciō**, ere, **-jēcī**, **-jectum**, hurl back; throw away.



**relinquō, ere, -liquī, -lictum,**  
leave behind, leave.

**reliquus, a, um,** remaining, rest  
[75. fn.].

**removeō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** re-  
move, withdraw.

**rēmus, ī, M.,** oar.

**renovō, āre, āvī, ātum,** renew.

**renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum,** report,  
bring back word.

**repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum,**  
drive back, repulse.

**reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum,**  
find, discover.

**replētus, a, um,** filled.

**reportō, āre, āvī, ātum,** carry back,  
bring back.

**rēs, rei, F.,** thing, matter, affair,  
circumstance; **rēs pūblica,** public  
interest, state, public business.

**resistō, ere, -stītī, resist, oppose,**  
*with dat.*

**respondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōn-  
sum,** reply; answer.

**respōnsū, ī, N.,** answer, reply.

**restituō, ere, -uī, -ūtum,** put back,  
restore, replace; renew; rebuild.

**retineō, ēre, uī, -tentum,** restrain.

**revertor, ī,** return.

**revocō, āre, āvī, ātum,** recall.

**rēx, rēgis, M.,** king.

**Rhēnus, ī, M.,** the Rhine.

**Rhodanus, ī, M.,** the Rhone.

**rīpa, ae, F.,** bank.

**rogō, āre, āvī, ātum,** ask.

**Rōmānus, a, um,** Roman.

**Rōmānus, ī, M.,** a Roman.

**rūmor, -ōris, M.,** rumour, report.

**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum,** break.

**rūrsus, adv.,** again.

## S

**saepe, adv.,** often.

**salūs, -ūtis, F.,** safety [409].

**salvus, a, um,** safe, well.

**Santonēs, um, M. plur.,** the San-  
tones, *a tribe on the west coast of  
Gaul.*

**satis, adv. and indeclinable adj.,**  
enough, sufficiently; **satis faciō,**  
satisfy, apologize, *with dat.*

**saxum, ī, N.,** stone.

**sciō, īre, īvī, ītum,** know.

**scribō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum,**  
write.

**sed, conj.,** but.

**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum,** sit, sit  
down.

**semper, adv.,** always.

**senātus, ūs, M.,** senate.

**sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēsum,** feel, per-  
ceive.

**septem,** seven.

**septimus, a, um,** seventh.

**Sēquanī, ōrum, M. plur.,** the Se-  
quani, *a tribe of east central Gaul.*

**sequor, ī, secūtus sum,** follow.

**servitūs, -ūtis, F.,** slavery.

**servus, ī, M.,** slave.

**sescentī, ae, a,** six hundred.

**sexāgintā,** sixty.

**sī, conj.,** if.

**sic, adv.,** thus, so.

**sicut, adv.,** as.

**signum, ī, N.,** signal; standard [282].

**silva, ae, F.,** wood, forest.

**similis, e,** like, similar.

**simul, adv.,** at the same time;  
**simul ac,** as soon as.

**simulō, āre, āvī, ātum,** pretend.

**sine, prep. with abl.,** without.

**sinister, tra, trum,** left.

**socius, ī, M.**, ally; comrade.  
**sōl, sōllis, M.**, sun; the Sun-god.  
**sōlum, adv.**, only.  
**sōlus, a, um**, only, alone [205].  
**solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum**, loose, release; **nāvem solvō**, set sail; **poenam solvō**, pay a penalty.  
**somnus, ī, M.**, sleep.  
**sopor, -ōris, M.**, sleep, stupor.  
**soror, -ōris, F.**, sister.  
**sors, sortis, F.**, lot; **ad sortem revocārī**, be decided by lot.  
**Sparta, ae, F.**, Sparta, *a famous city of Greece*.  
**spatium, ī, N.**, space, distance; time.  
**speciēs, ēī, F.**, appearance, form.  
**spectō, āre, āvī, ātum**, look, face.  
**specus, ūs, M.**, cave, cavern.  
**spēlunca, ae, F.**, cave, cavern.  
**spernō, ere, sprēvī, sprētum**, despise, scorn.  
**spērō, āre, āvī, ātum**, hope.  
**spēs, eī, F.**, hope.  
**sponte, F.**, *only in abl. sing.*, of (one's) own accord.  
**statim, adv.**, at once, immediately.  
**statiō, -ōnis, F.**, outpost, guard.  
**stō, āre, stetī, statum**, stand.  
**studeō, ēre, uī**, be eager, be zealous.  
**studium, ī, N.**, zeal, eagerness.  
**sub, prep. with acc. and abl.**, under; close to [438].  
**subducō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum**, draw off.  
**subeō, īre, -īī, -itum**, undergo.  
**subitō, adv.**, suddenly.  
**subjiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum**, place beneath, *with acc. and dat.*  
**sublātus, a, um, from tollō**.  
**subsequor, ī, -secūtus sum**, follow closely, follow after.  
**subsidium, ī, N.**, support, reinforcements.

**succēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum**, come close up, advance.  
**sudis, is, F.**, stake.  
**Suēbī, ōrum, M. plur.**, the Suebi, *a tribe of north-western Germany*.  
**suī, sibi**, himself, him [278].  
**summus, a, um**, greatest, utmost, extreme, signal; top [175].  
**superior, -ōris**, higher, upper; former [198].  
**superō, āre, āvī, ātum**, conquer; surpass, excel.  
**supplicium, ī, N.**, punishment.  
**suprā, adv.**, above.  
**susciplō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**, undertake, incur.  
**suspīcor, ārī, ātus sum**, suspect.  
**sustineō, ēre, uī, -tentum**, withstand, sustain, endure.  
**sustulī, from tollō**.  
**suus, a, um**, his, his own; their, their own [281, b].

## T

**tam, adv.**, so.  
**tamen, adv.**, still, yet, however.  
**Tamesis, is, M.**, Thames.  
**tandem, adv.**, at length, at last.  
**tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctum**, touch.  
**tantus, a, um**, so great, such great, such.  
**tēlum, ī, N.**, weapon, missile.  
**tempestās, -tātis, F.**, storm, weather.  
**tempus, -oris, N.**, time.  
**teneō, ēre, uī, tentum**, hold, keep, restrain.  
**tergum, ī, N.**, back, rear [282].  
**terra, ae, F.**, land; country.  
**terreō, ēre, uī, itum**, frighten, terrify.  
**terror, -ōris, M.**, terror, panic.  
**tetigī, from tangō**.  
**Tiberis, is, M.**, Tiber.

**timeō, ēre, uī,** fear, have fears.  
**timor, -ōris, M.,** fear.  
**tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum,** raise;  
 remove, take away; *with ancora,*  
 weigh [502].  
**tōtus, a, um,** whole, all [205].  
**trāctō, āre, āvī, ātum,** handle, feel.  
**trādō, ere, -didī, -ditum,** give up,  
 surrender.  
**trādūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,** lead  
 across, take across, lead, bring.  
**trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum,** draw.  
**trāns, prep. with acc.,** across.  
**trānsdūcō, see trādūcō.**  
**trānseō, ire, -ī, -itum,** cross.  
**trānsfodiō, ire, -fodī, -fossam,**  
 pierce.  
**trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum,** carry  
 across, bring over.  
**trecentī, ae, a,** three hundred.  
**tribūnus, ī, M.,** tribune.  
**trīdnum, ī, N.,** three days.  
**triplex, -plēis,** triple.  
**Trōja, ae, F.,** Troy, *a city in the*  
*north-west of Asia Minor.*  
**Trōjānus, ī, M.,** Trojan, *an in-*  
*habitant of Troy.*  
**tū, tuī,** you, thou.  
**tum, adv.,** then, thereupon.  
**tumultus, ūs, M.,** noise, uproar, com-  
 motion.  
**turris, is, F.,** tower.  
**tūtus, a, um,** safe.  
**tuus, a, um,** your, thy.

## U

**ubi, adv.,** where; when [343, N.B.].  
**ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum,** avenge.  
**Ulixēs, is, M.,** Ulysses, *the shrewdest*  
*of the Greek kings before Troy,*  
*and the hero of Homer's Odyssey.*  
**ullus, a, um,** any [205, 457].

**ultimus, a, um,** most distant, re-  
 motest; last.  
**ultrā, prep. with acc.,** beyond.  
**ūnā, adv.,** along, together.  
**unde, adv.,** whence, from which  
 (what) place [343, N.B.].  
**undique, adv.,** on all sides, from all  
 sides.  
**ūnus, a, um,** one; alone, only [205].  
**urbs, urbis, F.,** city, *especially*  
*Rome.*  
**usque, adv.,** even (to), right up (to).  
**ūsus, ūs, M.,** experience; use, ser-  
 vice [432].  
**ut, conj.,** that, in order that; so that  
*with indicative, as; when.*  
**uter, utra, utrum,** which (of two)  
 [205].  
**ūter, ūtris, M.,** skin, leather bottle.  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque,** each  
 (of two) [205, 459].  
**ūtilis, e,** useful.  
**ūtor, ī, ūsus sum,** use, *with abl.* [356].  
**uxor, -ōris, F.,** wife.

## V

**vagor, ārī, ātus sum,** wander, roam  
 about.  
**valeō, ēre, vā, itum,** be strong [416];  
 have power, be efficacious [512].  
**vāllum, ī, N.,** wall, rampart.  
**vās, vāsis, N.,** vessel, jar.  
**vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum,** lay waste  
 ravage.  
**vehementer, adv.,** exceedingly,  
 greatly; vigorously.  
**vehō, ere, vexī, vectum,** carry,  
*passive, sail.*  
**venēnum, ī, N.,** drug; poison.  
**venlō, ire, vēnī, ventum,** come.  
**venter, tris, M.,** belly.  
**vēr, vēris, N.,** spring.  
**verbum, ī, N.,** word.



**vereor, ērī, itus sum,** fear.

**vērō, adv.,** but, however.

**vertō, ere, -tī, -sum,** turn [282].

**Vesontīō, -ōnis, F.,** Vesontio, *a town in eastern Gaul.*

**vesper, erī, M.,** evening.

**vester, tra, trum,** your.

**vetus, veteris,** old.

**via, ae, F.,** way, road, route, journey.

**vīcī, from vincō.**

**victōria, ae, F.,** victory.

**vīcus, ī, M.,** village.

**videō, ēre, vidī, vīsum,** see; **videor,** seem.

**vigilia, ae, F.,** watch.

**vīginti, twenty.**

**vīlla, ae, F.,** country-house.

**vinciō, īre, vīxī, vinctum,** bind.

**vincō, ere, vīcī, vīctum,** conquer.

**vīnum, ī, N.,** wine.

**vir, virī, M.,** man.

**virtūs, -tūtis, F.,** valour.

**vīs, vim, vī, F.,** force, violence, might; power, virtue [513]; *pour.*

**vīrēs, ium,** strength, vigour [472].

**vīsūrus, from videō.**

**vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum,** live.

**vīvus, a, um,** alive.

**vix, adv.,** scarcely, hardly.

**vocō, āre, āvī, ātum,** call.

**volō, velle, voluī,** wish, be willing [401].

**vōs, vestrum,** you.

**vōx, vōcis, F.,** voice; cry.

**vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum,** wound.

**vulnus, -eris, N.,** wound.

## ENGLISH-LATIN.

[For the principal parts of the verbs reference may be made to the Latin-English Vocabulary, and for numerals to 524, page 348. The numbers refer to sections.]

## A

**abandon**, dēsistō, ere.  
**able**, be, possum, posse, potuī.  
**about** (=concerning), dē (abl.);  
 (=around), circum (acc.);  
 (with numerals), circiter.  
**above**, adv., suprā.  
**absent**, be, absum, abesse, āfuī.  
**abundance**, cōpia, ae, f.  
**account**, on—of, propter, ob (acc.).  
**accustomed**, be, cōnsuēvī [243].  
**acquire**, cōnsequor, ī.  
**across**, trāns (acc.).  
**adjacent**, finitimus, a, um.  
**adopt (plan)**, capiō, ere; ineō, ire.  
**advance**, prōgredior, ī.  
**advance**, send in, praemittō, ere.  
**advise**, moneō, ēre.  
**advocate**, auctor, -tōris, m.  
**after**, post (acc.).  
**again**, rursus.  
**against**, contrā (acc.).  
**aid**, auxilium, ī, n.  
**alarm**, commoveō, ēre; permoveō, ēre.  
**all**, omnis, e; **at all**, in all, omnīnō.  
**allow**, patior, ī.  
**ally**, socius, ī, m.  
**almost**, ferē.  
**alone**, sōlus, a, um; ūnus, a, um.  
**along (with)**, ūnā (cum).  
**already**, jam.  
**also**, etiam.

**altogether**, omnīnō.  
**always**, semper.  
**ambassador**, lēgātus, ī, m.  
**among**, inter, apud (acc.).  
**amount**, multitūdō -dinis, f.  
**and**, et, -que, atque, ac [426]; **and not**, neque.  
**announce**, nūntiō, āre.  
**another**, alius, a, ud [205].  
**answer**, respondeō, ēre.  
**any** [457].  
**apart**, be, distō, āre.  
**appoint**, cōstituō, ere.  
**approach (noun)**, adventus, ūs, m.  
 (=means of approach), aditus, ūs, m.  
**approach (verb)**, accēdō, ere; ap-  
 propinquō, āre (dat.).  
**approve**, probō, āre.  
**arise**, orior, irī; coorior, irī.  
**arms**, arma, ōrum, n.  
**army**, exercitus, ūs, m.  
**arrival**, adventus, ūs, m.  
**art of war**, rēs militāris, f.  
**as** (=since), cum; (=while), dum or  
 cum.  
**ascertain**, cōgnōscō, ere.  
**ask** (=inquire), quaerō, ere; rogō,  
 āre.  
**ask** (=request), petō, ere; rogō, āre  
**assault**, oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f.  
**assemble**, conveniō, ire.  
**assign**, distribuō, ere.  
**assistance**, auxilium, ī, n.

**attack** (*noun*), impetus, ūs, M.; oppugnātiō, -ōnis, F.

**attack** (*verb*), oppugnō, āre; adior, iri.

**attain**, cōsequor, I.

**attempt**, cōnor, āri.

**attend to**, administrō, āre (*acc.*).

**autumn**, autumnus, ī, M.

**auxillaries**, auxilia, ōrum, N.

**await**, exspectō, āre.

**aware, be**, intellegō, ere.

**away, be far**, absum, abesse.

## B

**bad**, malus, a, um.

**baggage**, impedimenta, ōrum, N.

**bank**, ripa, ae, F.

**barbarian**, barbarus, ī, M.

**battle**, pūgna, ae, F.; proelium, ī, N.

**be**, sum, esse, fui.

**bear**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; perferō.

**because**, quod.

**because of**, propter, ob (*acc.*).

**become**, fiō, fieri, factus sum.

**before** (*of time or place*), ante (*acc.*); (*of place*) prō (*abl.*).

**beg**, ōrō, āre.

**began**, coepi [125].

**begin battle**, proelium committō, ere.

**beginning**, initium, ī, N. [308, 421].

**Belgian**, Belga, ae, M.

**believe**, crēdō, ere (*dat.*).

**best**, optimus, a, um.

**betake one's self**, sē recipere.

**better, it is**, praestat.

**between**, inter (*acc.*).

**body**, corpus, -oris, N.

**bold**, audāx, -ācis.

**boldly**, audācter.

**booty**, praeda, ae, F.

**both . . and**, et . . et.

**both** [459].

**boy**, puer, erī, M.

**brave**, fortis, e.

**bravely**, fortiter.

**bravery**, fortitūdō, -dinis, F.

**break**, rumpō, ere; frangō, ere.

**break out** (= *arise*), coorior, iri.

**break through**, perrumpō, ere.

**bridge**, pōns, pontis, M. [349].

**bring**, ferō, ferre.

**bring back word**, renūntiō, āre.

**bring over**, trānsportō, āre.

**Britain**, Britannia, ae, F.

**Briton**, Britannus, ī, M.

**brother**, frāter, -tris, M.

**build**, efficiō, ere.

**burden** (*noun*), onus, -eris, N.

**burden** (*verb*), opprimō, ere.

**burn**, incendō, ere,

**business**, negōtium, ī, N.

**but**, sed.

## C

**call**, vocō, āre; appellō, āre.

**camp**, castra, ōrum, N.

**can**, possum, posse, potui.

**capture**, capiō, ere.

**care**, diligentia, ae, F.

**carefully**, diligenter.

**carry**, portō, āre.

**carry across**, trānsportō, āre.

**carry back**, reportō, āre; referō, ferre.

**carry down**, dēferō, ferre

**carry out** (*plans*), (rēs) cōficiō, ere.

**cattle**, pecus, -oris, N.

**cause** (*noun*), causa, ae, F.

**cause** (*verb*), inferō, ferre.

**cavalry** (*noun*), equitēs, um, M.; equitātus, ūs, M.



**cavalry** (*adj.*), equester, tris, tre.  
**cease**, dēsistō, ere.  
**centurion**, centuriō, -ōnis, M.  
**certain**, quīdam [458].  
**change**, novae rēs.  
**charge, put in—of**, praeficiō, ere (*dat.*) [378, N.B.].  
**chief, chief man**, princeps, -cipis, M.  
**children**, liberī, -ōrum, M.  
**choose**, dēligō, ere.  
**circumstance**, rēs, rei, F.  
**citizen**, cīvis, is, M.  
**citizenship**, cīvitās, -tātis, F.  
**cohort**, cohors, -tis, F.  
**collect**, cōgō, ere; cōferō, ferre.  
**column**, agmen, -minis, N.  
**come**, veniō, ire.  
**command** (*noun*), imperium, I, N.  
**command** (*verb*), imperō, āre (*dat.*); praesum, esse (*dat.*).  
**command, be in—of**, praesum, esse (*dat.*); **put in—of**, praeficiō, ere (*dat.*) [378, N.B.].  
**commander**, praefectus, I, M., imperātor, -tōris, M.; **commander-in-chief**, imperātor, -tōris, M.  
**common**, communis, e.  
**commotion**, tumultus, ūs, M.  
**compel**, cōgō, ere.  
**confusion, throw into**, perturbō, āre.  
**conquer**, superō, āre.  
**consent, by common**, communīcōnsiliō.  
**consider**, arbitror, ārī.  
**consult**, cōsulō, ere.  
**continent**, continēns, -entis, F.  
**continually**, continenter.  
**corn**, frūmentum, I, N.  
**cross, cross over**, trānseō, ire.  
**crush**, opprimō, ere.

**custom**, cōsuētūdō, -dinis, F. [243]  
**cut off**, intercludō, ere.

**D**

**daily**, cotidiē.  
**danger**, periculum, I, N.  
**dangerous**, periculōsus, a, um.  
**dare**, audeō, ēre, ausus sum [313].  
**daring**, audāx, -ācis.  
**daughter**, filia, ae, F.  
**dawn**, prima lūx; **just before dawn**, sub lūcem.  
**day**, diēs, ēī, M.  
**daybreak**, *see dawn*.  
**death**, mors, mortis, F.; **put to death**, interficiō, ere.  
**declare**, ostendō, ere.  
**deed**, rēs gesta, F.  
**deep**, altus, a, um.  
**defeat** (*noun*), calamitās, -tātis, F.  
**defeat** (*verb*), pellō, ere.  
**defend**, dēfendō, ere.  
**defender**, dēfēnsor, -ōris, M.  
**delay**, moror, ārī.  
**demand**, postulō. āre; imperō, āre [181, N.B.].  
**dense**, dēnsus, a, um.  
**deny**, negō, āre.  
**depart**, discēdō, ere.  
**departure**, discessus, ūs, M.  
**depth**, altitūdō, -dinis, F.  
**design**, cōnsilium, I, N.  
**desirous**, cupidus, a, um.  
**despair**, dēspērō, āre (dē).  
**despatch** (*noun*), litterae, ārum, F.  
**despatch** (*verb*), dīmittō, ere.  
**detain**, dētineō, ēre.  
**determine**, cōstituō, ere.  
**difficult**, difficilis, e.  
**difficulty**, difficultās, -tātis, F.; **with difficulty**, aegrē, (*adv.*).

**direction**, pars, partis, F.  
**disappoint**, spē dējiciō, ere.  
**disaster**, calamitās, -tātis, F.  
**disclose**, ostendō, ere.  
**discover**, reperiō, ire.  
**discreet**, prūdēns, -entis.  
**disembark**, nāvi ēgredior, I.  
**dislodge**, dējiciō, ere.  
**distance**, spatium, I, N.  
**distant**, be, absum, esse.  
**distant, most**, ultimus, a, um; extrēmus, a, um.  
**distress**, be in, labōrō, āre.  
**district**, regiō, -ōnis, F.  
**divide**, dividō, ere.  
**do**, faciō, ere; agō, ere; **be done**, fiō, fieri; geror, I.  
**double**, duplex, -icis.  
**draw (sword)**, dēstringō, ere.  
**draw up**, instruō, ere.  
**drive**, compellō, ere.  
**drive back**, repellō, ere.  
**drive out**, expellō, ere.  
**dwell**, habitō, āre; incolō, ere.

## E

**each** [459].  
**eager**, cupidus, a, um (*gen.*); **be eager**, studeō, ēre.  
**easily**, facile.  
**easy**, facilis, e.  
**either . . or**, aut . . aut.  
**else** (*adj.*), alius, a, ud.  
**embassy**, lēgatiō, -ōnis, F.  
**encamp**, cōnsidō, ere.  
**enclose**, circumdō, dare.  
**encourage**, hortor, āri; cohortor, āri.  
**end** (*noun*), finis, is, M. [445].  
**end** (*verb*), cōficiō, ere.  
**endure**, ferō, ferre.

**enemy**, hostis, is, M.  
**engage**, dīmicō, āre.  
**enough**, satis.  
**enter**, ineō, ire.  
**entreat**, ōrō, āre.  
**envoy**, lēgātus, I, M.  
**equal**, pār, paris.  
**escape**, fugiō, ere.  
**even**, etiam; **not even**, nē . . quidem.  
**every**, omnis, e.  
**example**, set an, initium faciō, ere.  
**excel**, superō, āre.  
**except**, praeter (*acc.*); nisi.  
**exhort**, cohortor, āri.  
**exhausted**, cōfectus, a, um.  
**experience**, ūsus, ūs, M.  
**explain**, doceō, ēre; dēmōnstrō, āre.  
**exploit**, rēs gesta, F.  
**extend**, pertineō, ēre.  
**extent**, māgnitūdō, -dinis, F.

## F

**face**, spectō, āre (ad).  
**faith**, fidēs, ei, F.  
**faithful**, fidēlis, e.  
**fall**, cadō, ere.  
**fall back**, pedem referō, ferre.  
**famous**, nobilis, e.  
**far**, longē.  
**far, be**, absum, abesse.  
**father**, pater, -tris, M.  
**fear** (*noun*), timor, -ōris, M.  
**fear** (*verb*), timeō, ēre; vereor, ēri.  
**feel**, sentiō, ire.  
**few**, pauci, ae, a.  
**field**, ager, agrī, M.  
**fiercely**, ācriter.  
**fight**, pūgnō, āre; dīmicō, -āre; **fight a battle**, proelium faciō, ere.  
**fighting**, pūgna, ae, F.  
**fill**, compleō, ēre.

**find**, *inveniō*, *ire* ; *reperiō*, *ire*.  
**find out**, *cōgnōscō*, *ere*.  
**finish**, *cōnficiō*, *ere*.  
**fire**, *ignis*, *is*, *M*.  
**first** (*adv.*), *prīmum* ; **at first**, *prīmō*.  
**fix**, *cōstituō*, *ere*.  
**flank**, *latus*, *-eris*, *N*.  
**flee**, *fugiō*, *ere* ; **turn and flee**, *terga vertō*, *ere*.  
**fleet**, *classis*, *is*, *F*.  
**flight**, *fuga*, *ae*, *F*. ; **put to flight**, *in fugam dō*, *dare* ; **take to flight**, *terga vertō*, *ere*.  
**follow**, *sequor*, *ī* ; **follow closely**, *subsequor*, *ī*.  
**following**, *posterus*, *a*, *um*.  
**fond**, *cupidus*, *a*, *um*.  
**foot**, *pēs*, *pedis*, *M*. ; **foot** (*of hill, etc.*) [175] ; **at foot of**, *sub* (*abl.*).  
**foot-soldier**, *pedes*, *-peditis*, *M*.  
**forage**, *frūmentor*, *ārī*.  
**force**, *vis*, *F*. [472].  
**forced** (*marches*), *māgnus*.  
**forces**, *cōpiae*, *ārum*, *F*.  
**foresee**, *prōvideō*, *ēre*.  
**forest**, *silva*, *ae*, *F*.  
**forget**, *memoriam dēpōnō*, *ere*.  
**form** (*plan*), *capiō*, *ere* ; *ineō*, *ire*.  
**fortification**, *mūnitiō*, *-ōnis*, *F*.  
**fortify**, *mūniō*, *ire*.  
**free** (*adj.*), *liber*, *era*, *erum*.  
**free** (*verb*), *liberō*, *āre*.  
**freedom**, *libertās*, *-tātis*, *F*.  
**freely**, *liberē*.  
**frequent**, *crēber*, *bra*, *brum*.  
**fresh**, *integer*, *gra*, *grum*.  
**friend**, *amicus*, *ī*, *M*.  
**friendly**, *amicus*, *a*, *um*.  
**friendship**, *amīctia*, *ae*, *F*.  
**frighten**, *terreō*, *ēre*.

## G

**garrison**, *praesidium*, *ī*, *N*.  
**gate**, *porta*, *ae*, *F*.  
**gather**, *cōferō*, *ferre*.  
**Gaul** (*country*), *Gallia*, *ae*, *F*.  
**Gaul** (*native*), *Gallus*, *ī*, *M*.  
**German**, *Germānus*, *ī*, *M*.  
**Germany**, *Germānia*, *ae*, *F*.  
**get**, *nancīscor*, *ī*.  
**girl**, *puella*, *ae*, *F*.  
**give**, *dō*, *dare*.  
**give back**, *reddō*, *ere*.  
**give up**, *trādō*, *ere*.  
**go**, *eō*, *ire*, *īī* (*ivī*), *itum* [550].  
**go forth**, *exeō*, *ire*.  
**good**, *bonus*, *a*, *um*.  
**govern**, *imperō*, *āre* (*dat.*).  
**grain**, *frūmentum*, *ī*, *N*.  
**grant**, *concēdō*, *ere*.  
**great**, *māgnus*, *a*, *um* ; **so great**, **such great**, *tantus*, *a*, *um* ; **how great**, **what great**, *quantus*, *a*, *um*.  
**greatly**, *māgnopere*.  
**greatness**, *māgnitūdō*, *-dinis*, *F*.  
**ground**, *locus*, *ōrum*, *N*. ; **open ground**, *apertus locus*, *M*.  
**guard**, *statiō*, *-ōnis*, *F*.  
**guide**, *dux*, *ducis*, *M*.

## H

**halt**, *cōsistō*, *ere*.  
**hand**, **be at**, *adsum*, *esse*.  
**happen**, *accidō*, *ere* ; *fiō*, *fierī*.  
**harass**, *premō*, *ere*.  
**harbor**, *portus*, *ūs*, *M*.  
**hard**, *difficilis*, *e*.  
**harm**, *noceō*, *ēre* (*dat.*).  
**hasten**, *contendō*, *ere*.  
**have**, *habeō*, *ēre*.  
**hear**, *audiō*, *ire*.  
**heart**, *animus*, *ī*, *M*.



**heavy**, gravis, e.  
**height**, altitūdō, -dinis, f.  
**heights**, superiōra loca, n.  
**help**, auxilium, i, n.  
**Helvetians**, Helvētī, ōrum, m.  
**here**, hīc ; hūc [343].  
**hesitate**, dubitō, āre.  
**hide**, abdō, ere [282, N.B.].  
**high**, altus, a, um.  
**higher ground**, superiōra loca, n.  
**hill**, collis, is, m.  
**hinder**, impediō, ire.  
**hither**, hūc.  
**hold**, teneō, ēre ; obtineō, ēre.  
**hope** (*noun*), spēs, ei, f.  
**hope** (*verb*), spērō, āre [328].  
**horse**, equus, i, m.  
**horseman, horse-soldier**, eques, equitis, m.  
**hostage**, obses, obsidis, m.  
**hour**, hōra, ae, f.  
**how great, how large, how much**, quantus, a, um.  
**huge**, ingēns, -entis.  
**hurl**, conjiciō, ere.

## I

**if, si ; if not, nisi**.  
**immediately**, statim.  
**incessant**, continēns, -entis.  
**increase**, augeō, ēre [225, N.B.].  
**incredible**, incredibilis, e.  
**induce**, persuādeō, ēre (*dat*).  
**inexperienced**, imperitus, a, um (*gen.*).  
**infantry** (*noun*), peditēs, um, m. ; peditātus, ūs, m.  
**infantry** (*adj.*), pedester, tris, tre.  
**influence** (*noun*), auctōritās, -tātis, f.  
**influence** (*verb*), permovereō, ēre ; adducō, ere.

**inform**, certiōrem faciō, ere [171].  
**inhabit**, incolō, ere.  
**inhabitant**, incola, ae, m.  
**injure**, noceō, ēre (*dat.*).  
**inquire**, quaerō, ere.  
**interval of time**, spatium, i, n.  
**island**, insula, ae, f.  
**Italy**, Ītalia, ae, f.

## J

**join**, jungō, ere ; conjungō, ere [282] ;  
**join battle**, proelium committō.  
**journey**, iter, itineris, n.

## K

**keep**, teneō, ēre ; **keep (from)**, prohibeō, ēre [167].  
**kill**, necō, āre ; interficiō, ere.  
**kind**, genus, -eris, n. ; modus, i, m.  
**king**, rēx, rēgis, m.  
**know**, sciō, ire ; cōgnōvī [243, N.B.]  
**known**, nōtus, a, um.

## L

**lacking, be**, dēsum, deesse.  
**lake**, lacus, ūs, m.  
**land**, terra, ae, f. ; ager, agrī, m.  
**large**, māgnus, a, um ; **so large**, tantus, a, um ; **how large**, quantus, a, um.  
**lay down**, dēpōnō, ere.  
**lead**, dūcō, ere.  
**lead back**, redūcō, ere.  
**lead out**, ēdūcō, ere.  
**lead across**, trādūcō, ere.  
**leader**, dux, ducis, m.  
**leadership**, principātus, ūs, m.  
**leading man**, princeps, -cipis, m.  
**leap down**, dēsiliō, ire.  
**learn**, cōgnōscō, ere.  
**leave**, relinqūō, ere ; (= *depart from*) discēdō, ere ; exeō, ire.  
**left**, sinister, tra, trum.

**legion**, legiō, -ōnis, F.  
**legionary**, legiōnārius, a, um.  
**length**, longitūdō, -dinis, F.  
**less**, minor minus.  
**lest**, nē.  
**letter**, litterae, ārum, F. [130].  
**lieutenant**, lēgātus, ī, M.  
**light** (*noun*), lūx, lūcis, F.  
**light** (*adj.*), levis, e.  
**light**, *in*—**marching order**, expeditus, a, um.  
**like**, similis, e (*dat.*).  
**line of march**, agmen, -minis, N.  
**line of battle**, aciēs, ēī, F.  
**long** (*adj.*), longus, a, um.  
**long** (*adv.*), **for a long time**, diū.  
**lose**, āmittō, ere.  
**loss**, incommodum, ī, N.  
**loud** (*voice*), māgnus, a, um.  
**lower**, inferior, ius.

## M

**made**, be, fiō, fierī, factus sum [551].  
**magistrate**, magistrātus, ūs, M.  
**mainland**, continēns, -entis, F.  
**make**, faciō, ere.  
**man**, vir, virī, M. ; homō, -inis, M. ;  
**his men**, suī, ōrum, M. ; **our men**,  
 nostrī, ōrum, M.  
**manage**, administrō, āre.  
**manner**, modus, ī, M. ; ratiō, -ōnis, F.  
**many**, multī, ae, a.  
**march** (*noun*), iter, itineris, N. ; **line**  
**of march**, agmen, -minis, N.  
**march** (*verb*), iter faciō, ere.  
**marsh**, palūs, -ūdis, F.  
**matter**, rēs, rei, F.  
**means**, modus, ī, M.  
**meanwhile**, interim.  
**meet**, occurrō, ere (*dat.*).  
**meeting**, concilium, ī, N.

**memory**, memoria, ae, F.  
**mention**, dēmōnstrō, āre.  
**messenger**, nūntius, ī, M.  
**method**, ratiō, -ōnis, F.  
**middle**, medius, a, um [175].  
**midnight**, media nox.  
**midst**, medius, a, um [175].  
**might**, vīs, F. [472].  
**mile**, mille passūs [231].  
**military**, militāris, e.  
**mindful**, memor, -oris.  
**misfortune**, incommodum, ī, N.  
**missile**, tēlum, ī, N.  
**more**, plūs, plūris.  
**mother**, māter, -tris, F.  
**mound**, agger, -eris, M.  
**mountain**, mōns, montis, M.  
**move**, moveō, ēre.  
**much** (*adv.*), multum.  
**much, how**, quantus, a, um.  
**multitude**, multitūdō, -dinis, F.

## N

**name** (*noun*), nōmen, -minis, N.  
**name** (*verb*), appellō, āre.  
**nation**, nātiō, -ōnis, F. ; **populus**, ī, M.  
**nature**, nātūra, ae, F.  
**near**, prope, propior, proximus.  
**nearly**, prope.  
**neighboring**, finitimus, a, um.  
**neighbors**, finitimī, ōrum, M.  
**neither . . nor**, neque . . neque.  
**neither** (*adj.*), neuter, tra, trum [205].  
**never**, numquam.  
**new**, novus, a, um ; recēns, -entis.  
**next**, posterus, a, um ; proximus,  
 a, um.  
**night**, nox, noctis, F. ; **by night**,  
 noctū.  
**nightfall**, at, sub noctem.  
**no**, nūllus, a, um [205].

**nobody, no one**, nēmō [349, N.B.].

**noble**, nōbilis, e.

**none**, nūllus, a, um [205].

**noon**, merīdiēs, ēī, M.

**nor**, neque.

**not**, nōn ; nē.

**nothing**, nihil, *indeclinable*, N.

**notice**, animadvertō, ere.

**number**, numerus, ī, M. ; **small**

**number**, paucitās, -tātis, F. ; **large**

**number**, multitūdō, -dinis, F.

**numbers**, crēber, bra, brum.

### O

**obedient**, be, pāreō, ēre.

**obey**, pāreō, ēre (*dat.*).

**observe**, cōspiciō, ere ; **animadvert**, ere.

**obtain**, nancīscor, ī ; **obtain a request**, impetrō, āre.

**occupied**, occupātus, a, um.

**ocean**, oceanus, ī, M.

**officer**, praefectus, ī, M.

**often**, saepe.

**once**, at, statim.

**only**, solum.

**onset**, impetus, ūs, M.

**open**, apertus, a, um.

**opportunity**, facultās, -tātis, F. ; potestās, -tātis, F. [445].

**oppose**, resistō, ere (*dat.*).

**or**, aut.

**order** (*noun* = rank), ōrdō, -dinis, M.

**order** (*verb*), jubeō, ēre ; imperō, āre (*dat.*).

**orders**, give, imperō, āre.

**other**, alius, a, ud [205] ; **the other**, alter, era, erum ; **the others**, ceterī, ae, a.

**outpost**, statio, -ōnis, F.

**over**, be, praesum, esse (*dat.*) ; **set over**, praeficiō, ere (*dat.*) [378, N.B.].

**overpower**, opprimō, ere.

**overtake**, cōsequor, ī.

### P

**pace**, passus, ūs, M.

**part**, pars, partis, F.

**peace**, pāx, pācis, F.

**people** (=nation), populus, ī, M. ; (=persons), hominēs.

**perceive**, sentiō, īre ; perspicio, ere.

**persuade**, persuādeō, ēre (*dat.*).

**pillage**, praedor, āri.

**pitch camp**, castra pōnō, ere.

**place** (*noun*), locus, ī, M.

**place** (*verb*), pōnō, ere.

**plan**, cōsiliū, ī, N.

**plenty**, cōpia, ae, F.

**plunder**, praeda, ae, F. ; **obtain plunder**, praedam faciō.

**point out**, dēmōnstrō, āre.

**position**, take up, cōsidō, ere.

**possess**, obtineō, ēre.

**possible**, be, possum, posse ; **as— as possible** [249].

**post**, dispōnō, ere.

**power**, potestās, -tātis, F.

**powerful**, potēns, -entis.

**preceding**, superior, ius.

**prefer**, mālō, mālle, mālui.

**preferable**, it is, praestat [243].

**prepare**, parō, āre.

**present**, be, adsum, adesse.

**press**, premō, ere ; **be hard pressed**, premor, ī.

**prevent**, prohibeō, ēre [167].

**previous**, superior, ius.

**prisoner**, captivus, ī, M.

**proceed**, prōgredior, ī.

**procure**, parō, āre ; comparō, āre.

**promise**, polliceor, ēri [328].

**property**, their, sua, ōrum, N. [281].



**provide**, provideō, ēre.  
**province**, prōvincia, ae, f.  
**provisions**, rēs frūmentāria, f.;  
 commeātus, ūs, m.  
**prudent**, prūdēns, -entis.  
**public business**, rēs pūblica, f.  
**purpose**, cōsiliū, i, n.; **for the**  
 —of, causā (*gen.*).  
**pursue**, īnsequor, i.

**Q**

**quickly**, celeriter.

**R**

**raise**, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum.  
**rampart**, vāllum, i, n.  
**rank**, ōrdō, -dinis, m.  
**rather**, had, mālō, mälle.  
**reach**, perveniō, ire (ad).  
**ready**, parātus, a, um; **make ready**,  
 expediō, ire.  
**rear**, novissimum agmen [171]; **in**  
**the rear**, post tergum.  
**reason**, causa, ae, f.  
**recall**, revocō, āre.  
**receive**, accipiō, ere.  
**recent**, recēns, -entis.  
**reconnoltre**, explōrō, āre.  
**recover**, recipiō, ere.  
**regain**, recipiō, ere.  
**region**, regiō, -ōnis, f.  
**reinforcements**, auxilia, ōrum, n.;  
 subsidium, i, n.  
**release**, solvō, ere.  
**remaining**, reliquus, a, um.  
**remember**, meminī [268]; memoria  
 retineō, ēre.  
**remove**, removeō, ēre; tollō, ere.  
**renew**, renovō, āre.  
**reply**, respondeō, ēre.  
**report** (*noun*), fāma, ae, f.; **bear**  
**(bring) a report**, fāmam perferō,  
 ferre.

**report** (*verb*), renūntiō, āre; dēferō,  
 ferre; referō, ferre [394].  
**repulse**, repellō, ere.  
**request**, petō, ere.  
**require**, imperō, āre [181, N.B.].  
**resist**, resistō, ere (*dat.*).  
**rest, the—of**, reliquus, a, um [175].  
**restore**, reddō, ere.  
**restrain**, retineō, ēre; contineō, ēre.  
**retire**, cēdō, ere.  
**retreat**, sē recipere.  
**return**, redeō, ire; revertor, i.  
**revolution**, novae res, f.  
**Rhine**, Rhēnus, i, m.  
**right** (*of direction*), dexter, tra,  
 trum; (=just) aequus, a, um.  
**rise**, orior, irī.  
**risk**, periculum, i, n.  
**river**, flūmen, -minis, n.; fluvius,  
 i, m.  
**road**, iter, itineris, n.; via, ae, f.  
**Roman** (*noun*), Rōmānus, i, m.  
**Roman** (*adj.*), Rōmānus, a, um.  
**route**, via, ae, f.  
**rule**, imperium, i, n.  
**rumor**, fāma, ae, f.  
**rush** (*out*), sē ējicere.

**S**

**safe**, incolumis, e.  
**safety**, salūs, -ūtis, f.  
**sail**, nāvigō, āre; **set sail**, nāvem or  
 nāvēs solvō, ere.  
**sailor**, nauta, ae, m.  
**sake, for the—of**, causā (*gen.*).  
**sally**, ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.  
**sally out**, ērumpō, ere.  
**same, the**, idem, eadem, idem; **at**  
**the same time**, simul.  
**satisfy**, satisfaciō, ere (*dat.*).  
**say**, dīcō, ere; **say . . not**, negō, āre.

- scarcely**, vix ; aegrē.  
**scarcity**, inopia, ae, f.  
**scout**, explorātor, -tōris, m.  
**sea**, mare, is, n.  
**season**, tempus annī, n.  
**secure**, provideō, ēre.  
**see**, videō, ēre ; cōspiciō, ere.  
**seek**, petō, ere.  
**seem**, videor, ērī.  
**seize**, occupō, āre.  
**senate**, senātus, ūs, m.  
**send**, mittō, ere.  
**send out**, ēmittō, ere.  
**send in advance**, praemittō, ere.  
**seriously**, graviter.  
**service, be of**, ūsuī sum [432].  
**set about**, instituō, ere [398].  
**set out**, proficīscor, ī.  
**set over**, praeiciō, ere [378, N.B.].  
**several**, complūrēs, a.  
**severe**, gravis, e.  
**severely**, graviter.  
**shatter**, frangō, ere.  
**ship**, nāvis, is, f.  
**short**, brevis, e ; **in a short time**, brevī.  
**shout, shouting**, clāmor, -ōris, m.  
**show**, ostendō, ere.  
**side**, latus, -eris, n. ; **on . . side**, ex . . parte ; **from (on) all sides**, undique.  
**sight**, cōspectus, ūs, m.  
**signal**, sīgnum, ī, n.  
**similar**, similis, e.  
**since**, cum.  
**sister**, soror, -ōris, f.  
**size**, māgnitūdō, -dinis, f.  
**skillful, skilled**, peritus, a, um (gen.).  
**slave**, servus, ī, m.  
**slavery**, servitūs, -tūtis, f.  
**slay**, necō, āre ; interficiō, ere.  
**small**, parvus, a, um ; **small number**, paucitās, -tātis, f.  
**so**, sic, ita, tam [372].  
**so great**, tantus, a, um.  
**soldier**, miles, militis, m.  
**some, some one**, aliquis [458].  
**son**, filius, ī, m.  
**sort**, genus, -eris, n.  
**sortle**, ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.  
**spare**, parcō, ere (dat.).  
**spear**, hasta, ae, f.  
**speech**, ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. ; **deliver (make) a speech**, ōrātiōnem habēō.  
**speed**, celeritās, -tātis, f.  
**spirit**, animus, ī, m.  
**spring**, vēr, vēris, n.  
**staff officer**, lēgātus, ī, m.  
**stand**, stō, stāre ; (=endure) ferō, ferre.  
**standard**, sīgnum, ī, n.  
**state**, civitās, -tātis, f. ; rēs publica, rei publicae, f.  
**station**, collocō, āre.  
**stature**, māgnitūdō corporis, f.  
**storm (noun)**, tempestās, -tātis, f.  
**storm (verb), take by storm**, expugnō, āre.  
**strength**, vīrēs, ium, f.  
**strengthen**, firmō, āre ; cōfirmō, āre.  
**strong**, firmus, a, um ; **be strong** valeō, ēre [416].  
**submit to**, perferō, ferre.  
**such, such great**, tantus, a, um.  
**suddenly**, subitō.  
**suffer (loss, defeat)**, accipiō, ere.  
**sufficient, sufficiently**, satis.  
**suitable**, idōneus, a, um.

**summer**, aestās, -tātis, F.  
**summon**, convocō, āre.  
**superior**, be, praestō, āre.  
**supply**, cōpia, ae, F.; **supplies**, rēs frūmentāria, F.; commeātus, ūs, M.  
**support**, subsidium, I, N.  
**surpass**, praestō, āre (*dat.*); superō, āre.  
**surrender** (*noun*), dēditio, -ōnis, F.  
**surrender** (*verb*), dēdō, ere [282, N.B.]; dēditionem faciō, ere.  
**surround**, circumveniō, īre; circumdō dare.  
**suspect**, suspicor, āri.  
**sustain**, sustineō, ēre.  
**swift**, celer, eris, ere.  
**swiftly**, celeriter.  
**swiftness**, celeritās, -tātis, F.  
**sword**, gladius, I, M.

T

**take**, capiō, ere.  
**take across**, trādūcō, ere.  
**take away**, tollō, ere.  
**take place**, geror, ī.  
**take up (arms)**, capiō, ere.  
**teach**, doceō, ēre.  
**tend**, pertineō, ēre.  
**terrify**, terreō, ēre; perterreō, ēre.  
**territory**, ager, agrī, M.; finēs, ium, M.  
**Thames**, Tamesis, is, M.  
**than**, quam.  
**there**, ibi, eō [343].  
**there** (*introductory*) [118].  
**thick**, dēnsus, a, um.  
**thing**, rēs, rei, F.  
**think**, existimō, āre; arbitror, āri.  
**thither**, eō.  
**thought**, take, cōsulō, ere.  
**three days**, trīduum, I, N.

**through**, per (*acc.*).  
**throw**, jaciō, ere; conjiciō, ere.  
**throw away**, abjiciō, ere.  
**thus**, sic, ita.  
**Tiber**, Tiberis, is, M.  
**time**, tempus, -oris, N.; spatium, I, N.  
**together (with)**, ūnā (cum).  
**toll**, labor, -ōris, M.  
**top**, summus, a, um [175].  
**towards**, ad (*acc.*).  
**tower**, turris, is, F.  
**town**, oppidum, I, N.  
**transport**, nāvis onerāria, F.  
**treat (with)**, agō, ere (cum).  
**treat, to—for**, dē [99].  
**trench**, fossa, ae, F.  
**tribe**, nātiō, -ōnis, F.  
**tribune**, tribūnus, I, M.  
**troops**, cōpiae, ārum, F.  
**trust**, cōfidō, ere (*dat.*).  
**try**, cōnor, āri.  
**turn**, vertō, ere; convertō [282, N.B.];  
**turn and flee**, terga vertō.

U

**unable**, be, nōn possum, posse.  
**unbroken**, continēns, -entis.  
**unfriendly**, inimicus, a, um.  
**understand**, intellegō, ere.  
**unknown**, incōgnitus, a, um.  
**unless**, nisi.  
**unlike**, dissimilis, e (*dat.*).  
**unprotected (flank)**, apertus, a, um.  
**unwilling**, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.  
**urge**, hortor, āri; cohortor, āri.  
**use**, ūtor, I (*abl.*).  
**useful**, ūtilis, e.  
**useless**, inūtilis, e.

V

**valor**, virtūs, -tūtis, F.  
**vast**, ingēns, -entis.



**venture**, audeō, ēre, ausus sum [313].

**victory**, victōria, ae, f.

**vigor**, virēs, ium, f.

**vigorously**, ācriter.

**village**, vicus, ī, m.

**violence**, vis, f. [472].

**visit**, adeō, īre.

**voice**, vōx, vōcis, f.

## W

**wage (war)**, gerō, ere.

**walt**, moror, āri.

**wall**, mūrus, ī, m. ; vāllum, ī, n.

**wanting**, be, dēsum, deesse.

**war**, bellum, ī, n. ; **make war**, bellō, āre ; **make war on**, bellum inferō, ferre (*with dat.*).

**war-ship**, nāvis longa, f.

**warn**, moneō, ēre.

**waste**, lay, vāstō, āre.

**watch**, vigilia, ae, f.

**water**, aqua, ae, f.

**wave**, fluctus, ūs, m.

**way**, via, ae, f.

**way**, glve, cēdō, ere ; pedem referō, ferre.

**weapon**, tēlum, ī, n.

**weather**, tempestās, -tātis, f.

**weep**, fleō, ēre.

**weight**, onus, -eris, n.

**wheel about**, signa convertō, ere.

**when**, cum.

**whence**, unde.

**where**, ubi, quō [343].

**which (of two)**, uter, tra, trum [205].

**while**, dum, cum, *or pres. partic.*

**whither**, quō.

**whole**, tōtus, a, um [205].

**why**, cūr.

**wide (adj.)**, lātus, a, um.

**wide (adv.)**, **widely**, lātē.

**width**, lātitudō, -dinis, f.

**willing**, be, volō, velle, voluī.

**wing (of army)**, cornū, ūs, n.

**winter (noun)**, hiems, hiemis, f.

**winter (verb)**, **pass the winter**, hiemō, āre.

**winter quarters**, hiberna, ōrum, n.

**wish**, volō, velle, voluī.

**with**, cum (*abl.*) ; apud (*acc.*).

**withdraw (trans.)**, dēdūcō, ere ; removeō, ēre ; (*intrans.*) excēdō, ere ; discēdō, ere.

**within**, intrā (*acc.*).

**without**, sine (*abl.*).

**withstand**, sustineō, ēre.

**wood**, silva, ae, f.

**work**, opus, -eris, n.

**wound (noun)**, vulnus, -eris, n.

**wound (verb)**, vulnerō, āre.

**write**, scribō, ere.

**wrong**, **wrong-doing**, injūria, ae, f.

## Y

**year**, annus, ī, m.

**yet**, **not**, nōndum (*adv.*).

**yield**, concēdō, ere.

**young man**, adulēscēns, -entis, m.

## Z

**zeal**, studium, ī, n.

# INDEX.

[*The numbers refer to sections.*]

- Ablative**, threefold force, 48 fn.; with prepositions, 97, 98; 436; of means, 47; 145; of agent, 144; of time, 159; of comparison, 242; absolute, 298, 299; 303-305; with **ut**, 356; of quality, 383; of specification, 414; of manner, 415; of separation, 437.
- Accent**, 14, 15.
- Accusative and infinitive construction**, 320-335.
- Accusative**, of direct object, 32; predicate, 54; with prepositions, 97, 98; 435; subject of infinitive, 123, 124; 320; of time, 159; of extent of space, 231.
- Adjectives**, agreement, 64; of first and second decl., 65, 72; of third decl., 112, 113; irregular, with gen. in **-ius**, 205, 207; as substantives, 180; with dative, 173; with genitive, 429; instead of partitive gen., 175.
- Adverbs**, formation, 237; 246-248; comparison, 238.
- Agent**, ablative of, 144; dative of, 354.
- Apposition**, 54.
- Causal clauses**, with **quod**, 256; with **cum**, 397.
- Commands**, 464.
- Comparatives**, declension of, 170.
- Comparison**, of adjectives, regular, 169; irregular, 193-196; of adverbs, 238.
- Complementary infinitive**, 123.
- Composition**, vowels weakened in, 289.
- Conditional sentences**, 224; 475-479.
- Cum clauses**, 224; 397.
- Dative**, of indirect object, 39; with adjectives, 173; with special verbs, 355; of agent, 354; of interest, 404, 431; of purpose, 404, 431.
- Declension**, combinations for practice in, 116; 204; 209; 359.
- Deponent verbs**, 311, 312; 545.
- Dō**, compounds of, 409, N.B.
- Dum clauses**, 273.
- Enclitics**, 342, fn.
- Eō**, conjugation of, 419; 550.
- Ferō**, conjugation of, 392-394; 549.
- Fiō**, conjugation of, 420; 551.
- For**, introductory, 124.
- Gender**, natural and grammatical, 61; in third declension, 95, N.B.; 190.
- Genitive**, partitive, 174; of quality, 383; possessive, 429; subjective, 429; objective, 429; 432, N.B.; with adjectives 429; 432.
- Gerund**, 443, 444.
- Gerundive construction**, 448-450.
- Gerundive with sum**, 346-348.
- I-stems of third decl.**, 185-189.
- Imperative**, 463, 464; 537, 538.
- Indirect discourse**, 320-335; 408.
- Indirect questions**, 362.
- Infinitive**, formation, 539, 540; complementary, 123; as substantive, 124; with accusative in indirect discourse, 320-335; various ways of rendering English infinitive, 425.
- iō**, verbs of third conjugation in, 287-288; 543, 544.
- It**, as representative subject, 124.
- ius**, adjectives with genitive in, 205, 207.
- Mālō**, conjugation of, 401; 548.
- Mille, mīlla**, declension and syntax of, 228-231.

- Nōlō**, conjugation of, 401; 548.  
 Nouns, declension of, 515-519; changes in consonant stems of third declension, 84.  
 Numerals, list of, 524; cardinal, 214-216; 228-230; ordinal, 156.  
 Participles, present, 271-273; perfect, 261, 262; 303, 304; future, 322, *a.*, 346; gerundive, 346; perfect participle of deponents, 312.  
 Perfect stem, formation of, 105, 106.  
 Periphrastic conjugations, active and passive, 346-348.  
 Personal endings, 164.  
**Plūs**, declension of, 197.  
 Possessive pronominal adjectives, 279-281.  
**Possum**, conjugation and use of, 376, 377; 547.  
 Predicate nouns, 54; 146.  
 Prefixes, 41; 49; 120; 125; 147; 181; 225; 243; 251; 378; 409 fn.  
 Prepositions, 97, 98; 435, 436, 438.  
 Principal parts, 138; 469.  
 Prohibitions, 464.  
 Pronouns, personal, 266, 267; reflexive, 277, 278; possessive, 279-281; demonstrative (**hic**, **ille**, **is**), 292, 293; (**ipse**, **idem**) 306, 307; relative, 254, 255; interrogative, 340, 341; indefinite, 455-459; **sē** and **is** in indirect discourse, 323 *b.*  
 Pronunciation, 6-9; English method, 18, 19.  
 Purpose clauses, adverbial, 386; relative, 388; substantive, 424; expressed by gerund or gerundive, 451; by supine, 470.  
**Quam**, with comparatives, 242; with superlatives, 249.  
 Questions, direct, 339-342; indirect, 362.  
**Quod** clauses, 256.  
 Result clauses, 371.  
 Semi-deponents, 313.  
 Sequence of tenses, 387.  
 Subjunctive, *a.*, independent uses: volitive (jussive, hortatory), 465; optative, 466; *b.*, dependent uses: in indirect questions, 362; of result, 371; of purpose, 386, 388, 424; in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 408; with **cum**, 397; conditional, 477, 478.  
 Suffixes, 130; 202; 232; 263; 274.  
**Sum**, conjugation of, 546; compounds of, 375, 378.  
 Superlative, force of, 169 *b.*  
 Supine, 469, 470.  
 Tenses, historical present, 59 fn.; imperfect and perfect representing English simple past, 119; perfect translated by English present, 243; future or future perfect translated by English present, 224; sequence, 387.  
*There*, introductory, 118.  
**Ūtor**, ablative with, 356.  
 Verbs, conjugation of, 471; 531-551.  
 Vocative, 53.  
**Volō**, conjugation of, 401; 548.  
 Word lists, Latin, 58; 110; 162; 220; 285; 352; 412; 483.  
 Word lists, English, 81; 136; 183; 252; 318; 381; 441.











